

Table of Contents

Page

Chapter A: Protocol/organization of events

Protocol	A.1 - 1
Introduction	A.1 - 1
Precedence	A.2 - 1
Table of precedence (As revised on November 4, 1993)	A.2 - 1
Precedence at activities involving representatives of the Government of Canada and a provincial government	A.2 - 4
Precedence accorded to representatives of dignitaries	A.2 - 6
Grace / benediction	A.3 - 1
Table plans	A.4 - 1
Head table	A.4 - 1
Seating plans	A.4 - 1
Titles	A.5 - 1
Table of titles to be used in Canada (As revised on February 7, 1997)	A.5 - 1
Dress code	A.6 - 1
Styles of address	A.7 - 1
Receptions	A.8 - 1
Dietary restrictions	A.8 - 1
Invitations	A.9 - 1
Invitation cards	A.9 - 1
Notes on invitations cards	A.9 - 2
Place cards	A.9 - 4
Use of post-nominal letters	A.9 - 5
Times of arrival and departure at receptions	A.9 - 6
Protocol offices	A.10 - 1
List	A.10 - 1

Table of Contents

Page

Chapter A: Protocol/Organization of Events (cont'd)

Honours and salutes	A.11 - 1
Definition	A.11 - 1
Background	A.11 - 1
Considerations	A.11 - 1
Who is entitled	A.11 - 2
When are they accorded	A.11 - 2
Guard of honour	A.11 - 3
Musical salute	A.11 - 4
Military salute	A.11 - 4
Salute to the Governor General / Lieutenant Governor (commonly referred to as Vice Regal Salute)	A.11 - 5
Notes for preparation of "Canada Badge"	A.12 - 1
Gift bank	A.13 - 1
Purchases	A.13 - 1
Inventory	A.13 - 1
Check list	A.14 - 1
When and how to conduct special events	A.14 - 1
Provincial and territorial orders of precedence	A.15 - 1
Precedence list for Government of Ontario officials	A.15 - 1
Order of precedence of the authorities individually convened to public ceremonies organized by the Government of Quebec	A.15 - 4
Official precedence list of Nova Scotia	A.15 - 7
Table of precedence for New Brunswick	A.15 - 9
Order of precedence for the Province of Manitoba	A.15 - 12
Table of precedence for British Columbia	A.15 - 14
Table of precedence for Prince Edward Island	A.15 - 17
Table of precedence for Saskatchewan	A.15 - 19
Table of precedence for Alberta	A.15 - 22
Order of precedence/Government of Newfoundland and Labrador	A.15 - 25
Table of precedence for the Yukon	A.15 - 27

Table of Contents

Page

Chapter B: Emblems

The Arms of Canada	B.1 - 1
The royal grant	B.1 - 1
Description	B.1 - 3
The Use of the arms	B.1 - 8
National anthem: O Canada	B.2 - 1
History of " O Canada "	B.2 - 1
Music and lyrics	B.2 -11
Playing of anthems at events	B.2 - 15
Etiquette during the playing of the national anthem	B.2 - 15
Commercial use	B.2 - 15
Anthems and patriotic songs	B.3 - 1
Anthems	B.3 - 1
Patriotic songs	B.3 - 5
Regional songs	B.3 - 7
Royal anthem "God Save The Queen"	B.4 - 1
History of "God Save The Queen"	B.4 - 1
Lyrics	B.4 - 2
Playing of "God Save The Queen" at events	B.4 - 2
Commercial use	B.4 - 2
National flag	B.5 - 1
A symbol of Canadian identity	B.5 - 1
The birth of the Canadian flag	B.5 - 1
The first "Canadian flags"	B.5 - 3
Elements of the national flag of Canada	B.5 - 4
You were asking	B.5 - 5
Dipping the flag	B.5 - 7
Colour specifications	B.5 - 7
Flying of flags on federal establishments	B.5 - 8
Flying on marine-type mast	B.5 - 8
Pledge to the Canadian flag	B.5 - 9
Half-masting of flag	B.5 - 10
Commercial use	B.5 - 14
Sources for flags, banners and pins	B.5 - 14

Table of Contents

Page



Chapter B: Emblems (cont'd)

The Royal Union flag	B.6 - 1
Commonwealth flag	B.7 - 1
Other national emblems	B.8 - 1
Beaver	B.8 - 1
Maple tree	B.8 - 3
Maple leaf	B.8 - 4
Canada's national colours – red and white	B.8 - 5
Commercial use and protection of Canadian symbols and emblems	B.8 - 5
Tartans	B.8 -10
Personal flags and standards	B.8 -14
The great seal of Canada	B.8 -17
Protection of emblems outside Canada	B.9 -1
Use of "Canada" and derivation thereof and Canadian symbols abroad	B.9 -1
Convention for the protection of industrial property	B.9 - 4
Emblems of the provinces and territories	B.10 -1
Arms	B.10 -1
Flags	B.10 -3
Other emblems	B.10 -4



Chapter C: Heraldry

Development of heraldry	C.1 -1
The Canadian Heraldic Authority	C.2 - 1



Table of Contents

Page

Chapter D: Holidays/Special Holidays

Act respecting Holidays	D.1 - 1
Public holidays	D.2 - 1
Canada Day	D.3 - 1
Background	D.3 - 1
Dominion Day	D.3 - 3
Commonwealth Day	D.4 - 1
International days, weeks, years and decades as declared by the United Nations	D.5 - 1
National days, weeks and months	D.6 - 1
Thanksgiving and Remembrance Day	D.7 - 1
Victoria Day	D.8 - 1
Proclamation of 1957	D.8 - 4
Boxing Day	D.9 - 1

Chapter E: Orders, Decorations and Medals

The Canadian honours system	E.1- 1
Royal Victorian Order	E.2 -1
The Canadian order of precedence of orders, decorations and medals	E.3 - 1
Wearing of orders, decorations and medals	E.4 - 1
Provincial orders and medals	E.5 - 1
Ontario	E.5 - 1
Quebec	E.5 - 5
British Columbia	E.5 - 9
Prince Edward Island	E.5 -10
Saskatchewan	E.5 -12
Alberta	E.5 -20 -
Newfoundland	E.5 -21

Table of Contents

	Page
Chapter F: Royal Family	
Sovereigns, since Confederation (1867)	F.1 -1
Royal Family (list)	F.2 -1
List of members of the Royal Family	F.2 -1
Personal information on members of the Royal Family	F.2 -2
Line of succession	F.2 -6
Royal styles and titles	F.3 - 1
Statute	F.3 - 1
Proclamation of 1953	F.3 - 3
The Royal Family	F.4 - 1
The Sovereign's official name	F.4 - 1
Numbering our sovereigns	F.4 - 1
The Royal surname	F.4 - 2
Titles and peerages of The Prince of Wales	F.4 - 5
Peerages of other members of The Royal Family	F.4 - 6
The titles and styles of members of The Royal Family	F.4 - 9
The Act of Settlement	F.4 -10
The Royal Marriages Act	F.4 -11
Royal visits	F.5 - 1
Procedure for invitations	F.5 - 1
Coordination phase	F.5 - 2
Execution phase	F.5 - 4
Private and official visits	F.5 - 5
Guidance notes for meeting The Sovereign and members of the Royal Family	F.6 - 1
Protocol in toasting The Queen	F.6 - 4
Royal images	F.7 - 1
Royal emblems	F.8 - 1
Evolution since 1189 to the Present Day	F.8 - 1
Design of the crown	F.8 - 5
Royal cypher	F.8 - 5
Royal patronage	F.9 - 1
Criteria	F.9 - 1
List of Canadian organizations which have received royal patronage	F.9 - 2

Table of Contents

*Document communiqué en vertu de
la Loi sur l'accès à l'information.
Document released pursuant to
the Access to Information Act.*

Page

Chapter F: Royal Family (cont'd)

Prefix "royal"	F.10 -1
Criteria	F.10 -1
List of civilian organizations with the prefix "royal"	F.10 -2
Royal households	F.11 -1
Offices of the royal households	F.12 -1

Chapter G: Governor General

List of governors general since 1867	G.1 - 1
List of governors, governors general and administrators since Samuel de Champlain ...	G.2 - 1
Letters Patent	G.3 - 1
Role and responsibilities of the Governor General	G.4 - 1
Introduction	G.4 - 1
The themes of the Governor General	G.4 - 2
The Administrator of the Government of Canada	G.5 - 1

Chapter H: Prime Ministers

List of prime ministers since 1867	H.1 - 1
--	---------

Chapter I: Lieutenant Governors

List and addresses of lieutenant governors	I.1 - 1
List of lieutenant governors	I.1 - 1
Addresses of lieutenant governors	I.1 - 3
List and addresses of secretaries	I.2 - 1
Notes on the office	I.3 - 1

Table of Contents

*Document communiqué en vertu de
la Loi sur l'accès à l'information.
Document released pursuant to
the Access to Information Act.*

Page

Chapter I: Lieutenant Governors (cont'd)

Titles	I.4 - 1
Term of office	I.5 - 1
Salary	I.6 - 1
Pension plan	I.7 - 1
Personal standard	I.8 - 1
Aides-de-camp	I.9 - 1

Chapter J: Provincial Matters

Names of provinces and territories	J.1 - 1
Official abbreviation of names of provinces and territories	J.2 - 1
Precedence of provinces and territories	J.3 - 1
Queen's Commission for police officers	J.4 - 1

Chapter K: Patron Saints

Patron saints of Canada	K.1 - 1
-------------------------------	---------

Chapter L: Bibliography for Protocol, Precedence, Etiquette

Bibliography for protocol, precedence, etiquette	L.1 - 1
--	---------



Chapter A

Protocol/Organization of Events

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.1

Protocol

A.1.1

Introduction

There is no official manual of protocol or ceremonial published by the government of Canada. Protocol, by definition, has to be flexible and adapt to the various actors on the political or social stage: an official manual would quickly become the "Protocol Bible" and inflexibility would follow.

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.2

Precedence

A.2.1

Table of precedence for Canada (As revised on November 4, 1993)

1. The Governor General of Canada or the Administrator of the Government of Canada (Notes 1, 2 and 2.1)
2. The Prime Minister of Canada (Note 3)
3. The Chief Justice of Canada (Note 4)
4. The Speaker of the Senate
5. The Speaker of the House of Commons
6. Ambassadors, High Commissioners, Ministers Plenipotentiary (Note 5)
7. Members of the Canadian Ministry:
 - (a) Members of the Cabinet; and
 - (b) Secretaries of State;with relative precedence within sub-categories (a) and (b) governed by the date of their appointment to the Queen's Privy Council for Canada
8. The Leader of the Opposition (Subject to Note 3)
9. The Lieutenant Governor of Ontario
The Lieutenant Governor of Quebec
The Lieutenant Governor of Nova Scotia
The Lieutenant Governor of New Brunswick
The Lieutenant Governor of Manitoba
The Lieutenant Governor of British Columbia
The Lieutenant Governor of Prince Edward Island
The Lieutenant Governor of Saskatchewan
The Lieutenant Governor of Alberta
The Lieutenant Governor of Newfoundland (Note 6)

10. Members of the Queen's Privy Council for Canada, not of the Canadian Ministry, in accordance with the date of their appointment to the Privy Council
11. Premiers of the Provinces of Canada in the same order as Lieutenant Governors (Note 6)
12. The Commissioner of the Northwest Territories
The Commissioner of the Yukon Territory
13. The Government Leader of the Northwest Territories
The Government Leader of the Yukon Territory
14. Representatives of faith communities (Note 7)
15. Puisne Judges of the Supreme Court of Canada
16. The Chief Justice and the Associate Chief Justice of the Federal Court of Canada
17. (a) Chief Justices of the highest court of each Province and Territory; and
(b) Chief Justices and Associate Chief Justices of the other superior courts of the Provinces and Territories; with precedence within sub-categories (a) and (b) governed by the date of appointment as Chief Justice
18. (a) Judges of the Federal Court of Canada;
(b) Puisne Judges of the superior courts of the Provinces and Territories;
(c) the Chief Judge of the Tax Court of Canada;
(d) the Associate Chief Judge of the Tax Court of Canada; and
(e) Judges of the Tax Court of Canada; with precedence within each sub-category governed by the date of appointment
19. Senators of Canada
20. Members of the House of Commons
21. Consuls General of countries without diplomatic representation

22. The Chief of the Defence Staff and the Commissioner of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police (Note 8)
23. Speakers of Legislative Assemblies, within their Province and Territory
24. Members of Executive Councils, within their Province and Territory
25. Judges of Provincial and Territorial Courts, within their Province and Territory
26. Members of Legislative Assemblies, within their Province and Territory

NOTES

1. The presence of the Sovereign in Canada does not impair or supersede the authority of the Governor General to perform the functions delegated to him under the Letters Patent constituting the office of the Governor General. The Governor General, under all circumstances, should be accorded precedence immediately after the Sovereign.
2. Precedence to be given immediately after the Chief Justice of Canada to former Governors General, with relative precedence among them governed by the date of their leaving office.
 - 2.1 Precedence to be given immediately after the former Governors General to surviving spouses of deceased former Governors General (applicable only where the spouse was married to the Governor General during the latter's term of office), with relative precedence among them governed by the dates on which the deceased former Governors General left office.
3. Precedence to be given immediately after the surviving spouses of deceased former Governors General referred to in Note 2.1 to former Prime Ministers, with relative precedence among them governed by the dates of their first assumption of office.
4. Precedence to be given immediately after former Prime Ministers to former Chief Justices of Canada, with relative precedence among them governed by the dates of their appointment as Chief Justice of Canada.
5. Precedence among Ambassadors and High Commissioners, who rank equally, to be determined by the date of the presentation of their credentials. Precedence to be given to Chargés d'Affaires immediately after Ministers Plenipotentiary.

6. This provision does not apply to such ceremonies and occasions which are of a provincial nature.
7. The religious dignitaries will be senior Canadian representatives of faith communities having a significant presence in a relevant jurisdiction. The relative precedence of the representatives of faith communities is to be governed by the date of their assumption in their present office, their representatives being given the same relative precedence.
8. This precedence to be given to the Chief of the Defence Staff and the Commissioner of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police on occasions when they have official functions to perform, otherwise they are to have equal precedence with Deputy Ministers, with their relative position to be determined according to the respective dates of their appointments to office. The relative precedence of Deputy Ministers and other high officials of the public service of Canada is to be determined from time to time by the Minister of Canadian Heritage in consultation with the Prime Minister.

A.2.2

Precedence at activities involving representatives of the Government of Canada and a provincial Government

OFFICIAL PRECEDENCE

The federal and provincial governments have adopted protocol instruments that govern the relative precedence of various officials at ceremonies or activities under their jurisdiction.

The *Table of precedence for Canada* (A.2.1) governs the precedence of dignitaries at federal ceremonies or activities, while each province has its own table which applies to ceremonies or occasions of a provincial nature.

The federal table comes under the royal prerogative and is issued by the Governor General on behalf of The Queen, on the advice of the Prime Minister of Canada, as recommended by the Minister of Canadian Heritage, responsible for State ceremonial. At the provincial level, precedence is established by order of the Lieutenant Governor in Council. Both the federal and provincial tables of precedence are therefore official.

JOINT ACTIVITIES

On many occasions, the Government of Canada and a provincial government work together to implement a program, such as building a factory or funding a project.

The hosts and organizers of the event marking the announcement of a project, opening of a building or launching of an activity wish to ensure that the two levels of government are duly recognized and that the main players are given the precedence they deserve.

Some principles are applied in this regard:

- if an activity under federal jurisdiction is involved, the federal table applies; for an activity under provincial jurisdiction, the provincial table is used;
- if an activity is neither strictly federal nor entirely provincial, priority is given to the level of government that provides the highest level of funding;
- in all cases, office holders (MPs, senators, mayors or municipal councillors) will be given precedence over similar-level public officials (deputy ministers, public servants or departmental advisers);
- representatives receive the same relative precedence that would be granted to the dignitaries they represent, if they are at similar levels (the Prime Minister will be represented by a minister or parliamentary secretary; a minister will be represented by a colleague, MP or senator; a mayor will be represented by a municipal councillor; but a back-bencher who represents the Prime Minister should not expect to be given precedence over a minister, a departmental adviser over an MP, or a public servant over an MP or a mayor);
- in all cases, the organizers give precedence to the Prime Minister of Canada or the Lieutenant Governor and the Premier of the province when participating in an activity in their province.

The order of presentation of the main participants and the order of the speeches in the program of the event are two separate things:

- the host or master of ceremonies will announce the names of the dignitaries according to the order of precedence established;
- speeches are usually given in ascending order, with the most important dignitary (according to the order of precedence established) being the last to speak: the ribbon cutting, unveiling of a plaque or model, opening of a building or inauguration of a factory normally comes at the end of the series of speeches, and a momentum is created by the speeches by the representatives of various participants, in order of their relative importance;
- the program for the ceremony or activity may place the important moment at the very beginning; the speeches would then be given in descending order, with the most important dignitary being the first to speak.

Those in charge of State Ceremonial at the Department of Canadian Heritage, who are regularly requested to explain how activities or occasions are organized and how precedence is applied, cannot give specific instructions until they are sure they fully understand the various nuances of the event (occasion, players, funding, program for the activity).

MINISTERS AND SECRETARIES OF STATE

Secretaries of State are members of the Canadian Ministry and, in this capacity, rank immediately after the members of Cabinet (who are designated as ministers). They are appointed to the Queen's Privy Council for Canada, as are the Cabinet members, and, like them, retain the title "Honourable" for life; they are also given precedence, according to the *Table of Precedence for Canada*, over the premiers of the provinces.

Secretaries of State must not be confused with parliamentary secretaries, who are entrusted with specific duties by the Prime Minister to assist the ministers; no particular precedence is attached to the position of parliamentary secretary.

It should also be noted that, at the provincial/territorial level, the ministers belong to the province's Executive Council, of which they are members only for the duration of their duties; the title "Honourable" is used only while they are members of the Executive Council.

A.2.3

Precedence accorded to representatives of dignitaries

It is a long established practice in Canada for the representative of a dignitary to be accorded the same relative precedence as would have been accorded to the dignitary himself/herself.

That rule applies only when the dignitary is represented by a person of a similar or comparable quality: for example, at a ceremonial event, the Deputy Governor General [not an Honorary Aide-de-Camp or a member of His Excellency's Household] would be accorded the Governor General's precedence when acting on behalf of His Excellency; a member of the Canadian Ministry [not an "ordinary" (if we may use that word) Member of the Parliament of Canada] would receive the same precedence as the Prime Minister when acting in his stead.

In some instances, the Parliamentary Secretary to the Prime Minister could be asked to represent the Prime Minister when no federal Cabinet Minister is available.

Along the same lines, a Minister's representative would be accorded the Minister's relative precedence only if that representative is a Senator or a Member of the House of Commons; a public servant or a Minister's Assistant could not be accorded that precedence: he/she could represent the Minister but would not outrank other dignitaries or officials listed on the *Table of Precedence for Canada* or other elected officials, such as a mayor.

A

A.3

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

Grace / benediction

At a public function, grace is said before the meal with the guests standing up.

In a private home, grace is usually said after everyone is seated and before anything is touched on the table. It is recommended that grace be short. Here is the most familiar grace, acceptable to all religion:

For what we are about to receive,
Lord, make us truly thankful. Amen.

A clergyman who is a guest either at a public function or in a home is usually asked to say grace.

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.4

Table plans

A.4.1

Head table

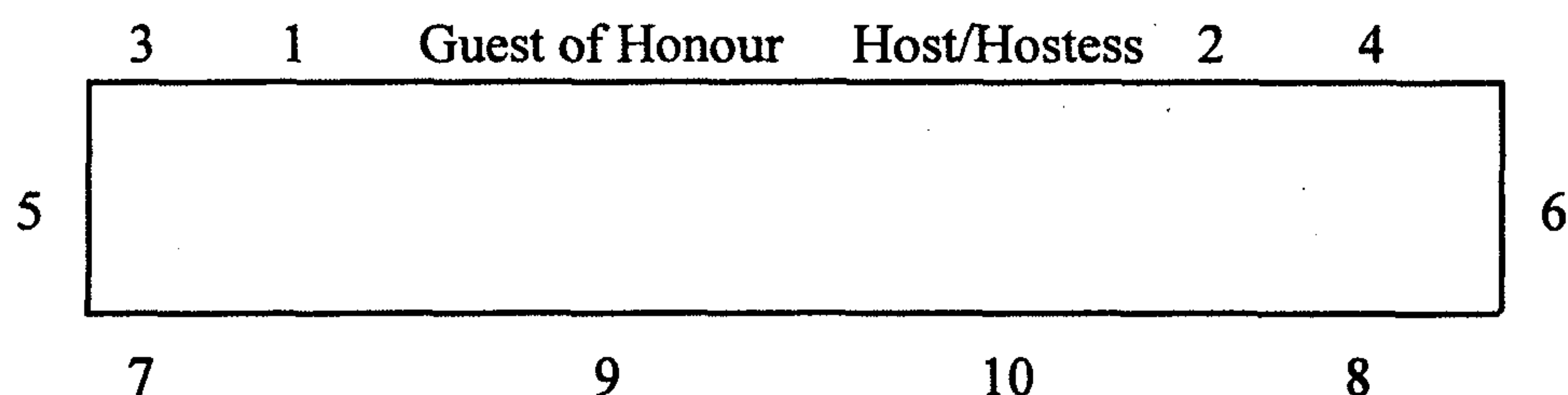
The host and hostess of an event decide who, among the guests, will be seated at the head table. If the number of guests exceed the number of places at that table, it is correct to have two head tables presided respectively by the host and hostess. This practice, of course, applies when head tables are round.

A.4.2

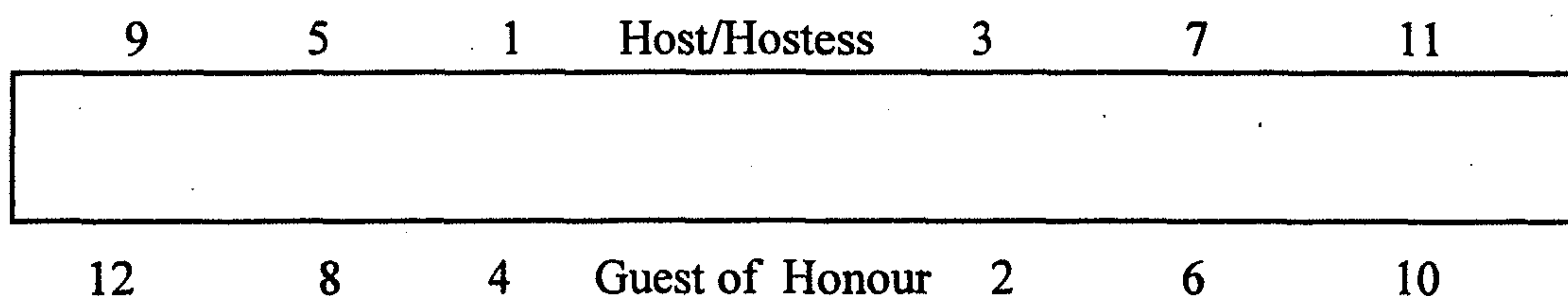
Seating plans

Here are a few examples of different seating plans, according to different hypothesis.

(a) Meal with men/women only (host presides alone)

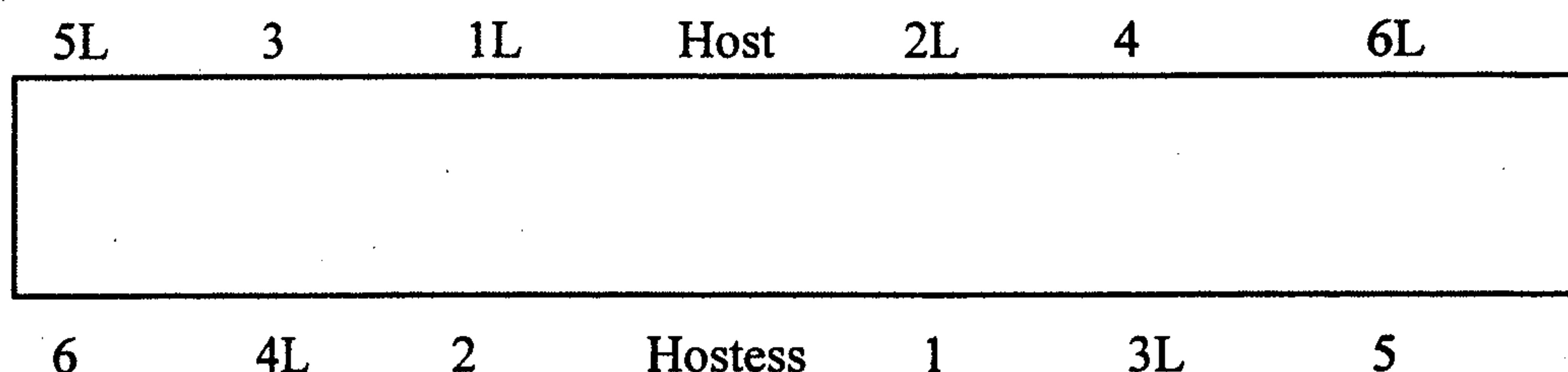


(b) Meal with men/women only (to honour one of the guests; this guest presides with the host).



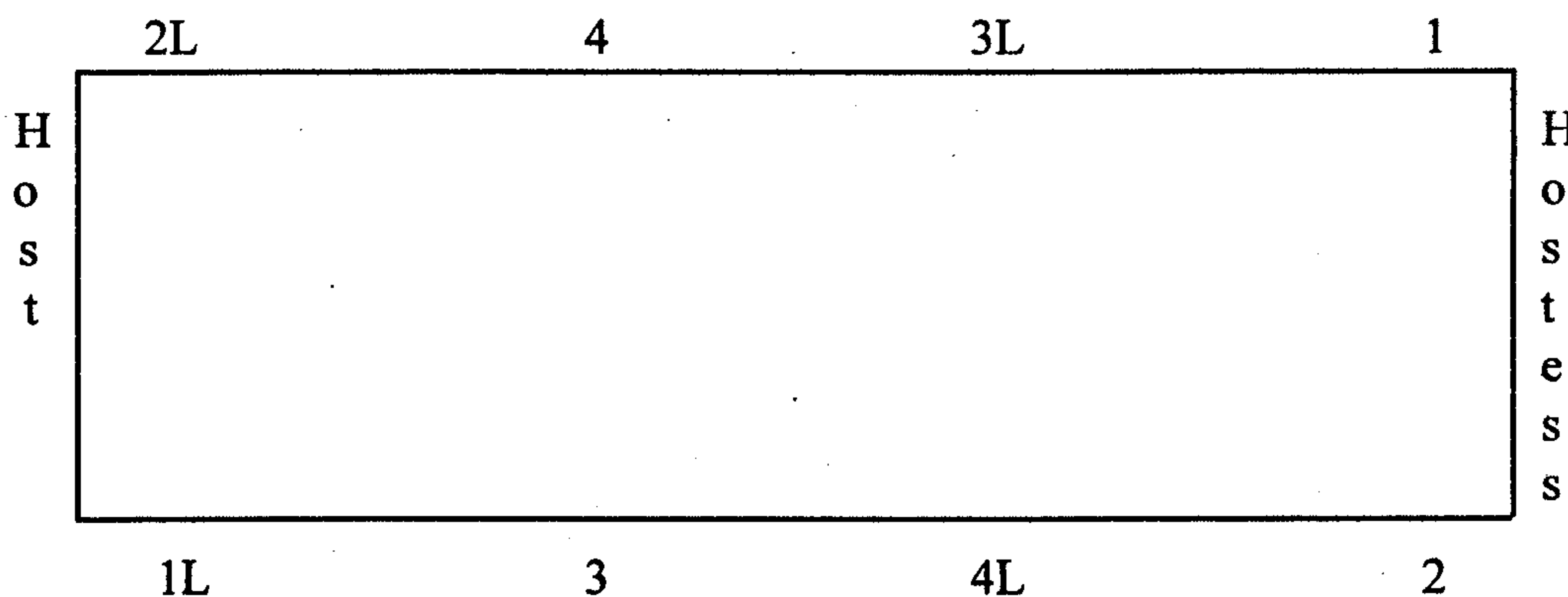
A.4 - 2

- (c) Meal with men and women (oblong table with the host and hostess facing each other). Conversation is, this way, directed toward the centre of the table.

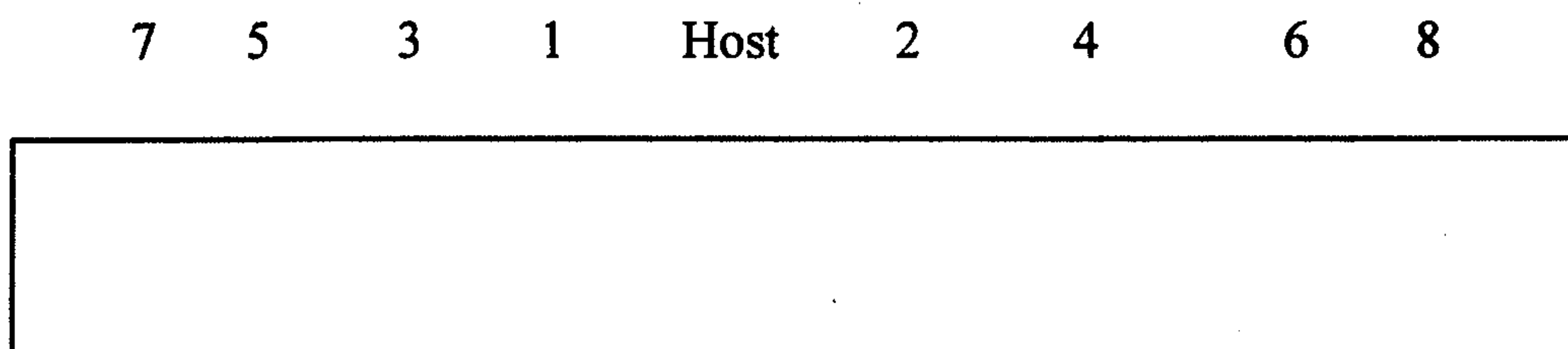


Numbers followed by the letter L represent the ladies.

- (d) Mixed meal (oblong table with the host and hostess positioned at each end of the table). This disposition may be used when there is a chance that guests would be insulted to be placed at an end of the table. This seating plan is often used in Britain. There are therefore two conversation nucleus.



- (e) It is preferable that two women not be seated together. On the other hand it is sometimes inevitable, especially when the officials are women.
- (f) Meal at an oblong head table with the guests facing the other guests.



A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.5

Titles

A.5.1

Table of titles to be used in Canada *(as revised on February 7, 1997)*

1. The Governor General of Canada to be styled "Right Honourable" for life and to be styled "His Excellency" and his wife "Her Excellency", or "Her Excellency" and her husband "His Excellency", as the case may be, while in office
2. The Lieutenant Governor of a Province to be styled "Honourable" for life and to be styled "His Honour" and his wife "Her Honour", or "Her Honour" and her husband "His Honour", as the case may be, while in office
3. The Prime Minister of Canada to be styled "Right Honourable" for life
4. The Chief Justice of Canada to be styled "Right Honourable" for life
5. Privy Councillors of Canada to be styled "Honourable" for life
6. Senators of Canada to be styled "Honourable" for life
7. The Speaker of the House of Commons to be styled "Honourable" while in office
8. The Commissioner of a Territory to be styled "Honourable" while in office
9. Puisne Judges of the Supreme Court of Canada and Judges of the Federal Court and of the Tax Court of Canada as well as the Judges of the undermentioned Courts in the Provinces and Territories:
 - Ontario:
The Court of Appeal and the Ontario Court of Justice (General Division)
 - Quebec:
The Court of Appeal and the Superior Court of Quebec

A.5 - 2.

- Nova Scotia:
The Court of Appeal and the Supreme Court of Nova Scotia
- New Brunswick:
The Court of Appeal and the Court of Queen's Bench of New Brunswick
- Manitoba:
The Court of Appeal and the Court of Queen's Bench for Manitoba
- British Columbia:
The Court of Appeal and the Supreme Court of British Columbia
- Prince Edward Island:
The Supreme Court of Prince Edward Island
- Saskatchewan:
The Court of Appeal and the Court of Queen's Bench for Saskatchewan
- Alberta:
The Court of Appeal and the Court of Queen's Bench of Alberta
- Newfoundland:
The Supreme Court of Newfoundland
- Northwest Territories:
The Supreme Court of Northwest Territories
- Yukon Territory:
The Supreme Court of Yukon

to be styled "Honourable" while in office

10. Presidents and Speakers of Legislative Assemblies of the Provinces and Territories to be styled "Honourable" while in office
11. Members of the Executive Councils of the Provinces and Territories to be styled "Honourable" while in office
12. Judges of Provincial and Territorial Courts (appointed by the Provincial and Territorial Governments) to be styled "Honourable" while in office

13. The following are eligible to be granted permission by the Governor General, in the name of Her Majesty The Queen, to retain the title of "Honourable" after they have ceased to hold office:
- (a) Speakers of the House of Commons
 - (b) Commissioners of Territories
 - (c) Judges designated in item 9
14. The title "Right Honourable" is granted for life to the following eminent Canadians:
- The Right Honourable Martial Asselin
 - The Right Honourable Ellen L. Fairclough
 - The Right Honourable Francis Alvin George Hamilton
 - The Right Honourable Donald F. Mazankowski
 - The Right Honourable Robert Lorne Stanfield

PROCEDURES TO AMEND THE TABLE OF TITLES

The Minister of Canadian Heritage responsible for Ceremonial and symbols promotion advises the Prime Minister to recommend to the Governor General the approval, on behalf of The Queen, of the amendment to the Table of Titles. This amendment is done by instrument of advice and not by Order-in-Council.

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.6

Dress

The decision as to the guests' dress rests with the host. If the invitation contains no indication in this regard, lounge suit is assumed to be appropriate. In the case of a dinner or a reception given after 6:00 p.m., it is advisable to indicate the type of dress required.

INFORMAL WEAR

Lounge suit and afternoon dress is usually indicated for receptions held after 6:00 p.m. This attire may be also worn for morning coffee parties, luncheons, afternoon tea and receptions, sherry parties, garden parties, evening outdoor receptions, and evening receptions.

Men: - Suit and tie. The more important the ceremony, the darker the suit.

Ladies: - Afternoon dress or suit for luncheons and afternoon activities.
- Gloves are optional. They are either worn or put away. They should be removed for eating or drinking.
- Hat is not usually worn after 6:30 p.m.

FORMAL WEAR

(a) Gentlemen: Morning coat
Ladies: Afternoon dress

Indicated for official receptions during the day.

Men: - This is a black garment with tails open to the knee, which is worn with grey striped trousers, black socks and shoes, a grey or black waistcoat, a grey silk tie, a grey or black top hat and grey gloves. The shirt must be white; the collar may be soft or starched with the points turned down (in which case an ascot may be worn).

A.6 - 2

- Ladies: - Afternoon dress
- Gloves are optional
- Hat is optional, although the occasion of the event may dictate that ladies wear a hat.

- (b) Gentlemen: Dinner jacket (black tie)
Ladies: Dinner dress

Indicated for some official dinners and evening functions, but never worn during the day.

- Men: - The suit is traditionally black or midnight blue. The trousers, without cuffs, are trimmed with satin or velvet braid extending from the waist to the bottom of the leg on the outside. The jacket is single- or double-breasted with silk lapels. A waistcoat or a cummerbund of black silk, velvet or brocade may be worn. The bow tie is silk. The shirt is usually white, with a pleated ruffle. Cufflinks are gold or silver, with or without precious stones. Shoes are black (natural or polished calf), but pumps may also be worn.

- Ladies: - Dinner dress (long or short) or long skirt and blouse.
- Gloves (see above)

- (c) Gentlemen: White tie or "tails"
Ladies: Long evening gown

Indicated for official evening functions, balls, dinners, receptions and at the opera. Never worn during the day. Both partners should be in evening dress:

- Men: - Evening dress consists of a jacket with tails open to the knee and trousers, in black or midnight blue. The lapels of the jacket are silk. The trousers have a double row of satin or velvet braid extending from the waist to the bottom of each leg on the outside. The shirt may be starched or stitched; cufflinks are pearl or gold; the collar is starched and the points folded. The tie is of starched piqué. Shoes are black (natural calf), but pumps may be worn. White gloves and a top hat complete the ensemble. For outdoors, a black overcoat or cape may be worn.

- Ladies:
- Long evening gown with gloves.
 - If the gown is sleeveless, gloves should be above the elbow.
 - If the gown has long sleeves, short gloves should be worn.
 - Gloves should not be removed when passing through the receiving line or while dancing.
 - If the occasion is an official dinner, gloves should be removed when one is seated at the table, since they must not be worn while eating or drinking.

SPORTSWEAR

Indicated for more intimate gatherings held at home with friends or business acquaintances, in a relaxed atmosphere.

- Men :
- Sport jacket and tie or open-necked shirt with ascot or turtleneck sweater.
- Ladies:
- May dress as they wish, while avoiding extremes in style.

CASUAL DRESS

May be indicated for informal gatherings with close friends, for example, get-togethers around the swimming pool, tennis parties, brunch or the like.

- Men :
- Slacks and open-necked shirt; jacket (if one is worn, may be removed on arrival).
- Ladies:
- Comfortable, practical attire appropriate to the occasion.

NATIONAL DRESS

In all circumstances, national costumes can replace ceremonial wear. Out of courtesy to guests, this should be indicated in the invitation.

Example: DRESS - LOUNGE SUIT OR NATIONAL DRESS

[From "Diplomatic and Consular Relations and Protocol" External Affairs, 1985].

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.7

Styles of address

STYLES OF ADDRESS

The Royal Family

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Her Majesty The Queen Buckingham Palace London SW1A 1AA United Kingdom</p> <p>Note: The Queen's full title is "Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II, Queen of Canada"</p> <p>Normally one refers to "Her Majesty The Queen" or "The Queen"</p>	<p>Your Majesty:</p>	<p>I remain Your Majesty's faithful and devoted servant,</p>	<p>"Your Majesty" first then "Ma'am"</p>
<p>His Royal Highness The Prince Philip, Duke of Edinburgh Buckingham Palace London SW1A 1AA United Kingdom</p> <p>Note: Normally one refers to "His Royal Highness The Duke of Edinburgh" or "The Duke of Edinburgh".</p>	<p>Your Royal Highness:</p>	<p>Yours very truly,</p>	<p>"Your Royal Highness" first then "Sir"</p>
<p>Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother Clarence House London SW1A 1AA United Kingdom</p>	<p>Your Majesty:</p>	<p>I remain Your Majesty's faithful and devoted servant,</p>	<p>"Your Majesty" first then "Ma'am"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

The Royal Family

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales St. James's Palace London SW1A 1BS United Kingdom</p> <p>Note: Should never be referred as: - "Charles, Prince of Wales" or "Prince Charles"</p>	<p>Your Royal Highness:</p>	<p>Yours very truly,</p>	<p>"Your Royal Highness" first then "Sir"</p>
<p>His Royal Highness The Duke of York Buckingham Palace London SW1A 1AA United Kingdom</p> <p>Note: Should never be referred as: - "Andrew, Duke of York" or "Prince Andrew"</p>	<p>Your Royal Highness:</p>	<p>Yours very truly,</p>	<p>"Your Royal Highness" first then "Sir"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

The Royal Family

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
His Royal Highness The Prince Edward Buckingham Palace London SW1A 1AA United Kingdom	Your Royal Highness:	Yours very truly,	"Your Royal Highness" first then "Sir"
Her Royal Highness The Princess Royal Buckingham Palace London SW1A 1AA United Kingdom Note: Should never be referred as - "Princess Anne"	Your Royal Highness:	Yours very truly,	"Your Royal Highness" first then "Ma'am"
Her Royal Highness The Princess Margaret, Countess of Snowdon Kensington Palace London SW8 4PU United Kingdom	Your Royal Highness:	Yours very truly,	"Your Royal Highness" first then "Ma'am"

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Federal dignitaries

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Governor General of Canada</p> <p>His/Her Excellency the Right Honourable (full name), C.C., C.M.M., C.D.*</p> <p>Governor General of Canada Rideau Hall 1 Sussex Drive Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0A1</p> <p>* The Governor General may have other post-nominal letters, such as P.C., Q.C.</p>	<p>Excellency:</p>	<p>Yours truly,</p>	<p>"Your Excellency" or "Excellency" first</p> <p>then "Sir" or "Madam"</p>
<p>Spouse of the Governor General of Canada</p> <p>Her/His Excellency (full name), C.C.</p> <p>Rideau Hall 1 Sussex Drive Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0A1</p>	<p>Excellency: / Dear Mr./Mrs. (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Your Excellency" or "Excellency" first</p> <p>then "Madam" or "Sir"</p>
<p>Former Governor General of Canada</p> <p>The Right Honourable (full name), C.C., C.M.M., C.D.*</p> <p>Address</p> <p>* A former Governor General may have other post-nominal letters, such as P.C., Q.C.</p>	<p>Dear Mr./Mrs. (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr./Mrs." (name) or formal "Sir/Madam"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

A.7-6

Federal dignitaries

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Prime Minister of Canada</p> <p>The Right Honourable (full name), P.C., M.P.* Prime Minister of Canada Langevin Block Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0A2</p> <p>Note: the term "Mr. Prime Minister" should not be used</p> <p>* The Prime Minister may have other post-nominals letters, such as Q.C.</p>	<p>Dear Prime Minister: or Prime Minister:</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Prime Minister" first then "Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>
<p>Former Prime Minister of Canada</p> <p>The Right Honourable (full name), P.C., and other post nominal letters, if applicable Address</p>	<p>Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Sir" / "Madam" or "Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Federal dignitaries

A.7-8

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Speaker of the Senate</p> <p>The Honourable (full name), Senator Speaker of the Senate The Senate Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0A4</p> <p>Note: A senator who is a member of the Canadian Privy Council is addressed as "Senator the Honourable (name), P.C." After a Senator retires, he/she retains the title "Honourable" but the salutation is "Dear Sir/Madam" or "Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>	<p>Dear Mr. Speaker: Dear Madam Speaker:</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr. Speaker" or "Madam Speaker"</p>
<p>Speaker of the House of Commons</p> <p>The Honourable (full name), M.P. Speaker of the House of Commons House of Commons Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0A6</p>	<p>Dear Mr. Speaker: Dear Madam Speaker:</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr. Speaker" or "Madam Speaker"</p>
<p>Chief Justice of Canada</p> <p>The Right Honourable (full name), P.C. Chief Justice of Canada Supreme Court of Canada Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0J1</p>	<p>Dear Chief Justice:</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr./Madam Chief Justice" first then "Sir/Madam" or "Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>
<p>Judges of Superior Courts</p> <p><u>Supreme Court and Federal Court</u></p> <p>The Honourable (full name) Judge of the _____ Court of Canada Address</p>	<p>Dear Mr./Madam Justice (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr./Madam Justice"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Federal dignitaries

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Judges of the Tax Court</p> <p>The Honourable (full name) Judge of the Tax Court of Canada Address</p>	<p>Dear Chief Judge/Judge (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Chief Judge/Judge (name)"</p>
<p>Senators</p> <p>The Honourable (full name), Senator The Senate Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0A1</p> <p>Note: A senator who is a member of the Queen's Privy Council is addressed as "Senator the Honourable (full name), P.C." After a Senator retires, he/she retains the title "Honourable" for life but the salutation is "Dear Sir/Madam" or "Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)".</p>	<p>Dear Senator (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Senator (name)"</p>
<p>Members of the House of Commons</p> <p>Mr. John Smith, M.P. or The Honourable John Smith, P.C., M.P. House of Commons Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0A6</p> <p>Note: The members of the House of Commons who are members of the Queen's Privy Council retain the title "Honourable" for life and use the initials "P.C." after their name. M.P.: Member of the House of Commons P.C., M.P.: Member of the Privy Council and Member of the House of Commons</p>	<p>Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>

A-7-10

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Federal dignitaries

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Ambassadors/high commissioners of foreign countries in Canada</p> <p>His/Her Excellency (full name) Ambassador of _____ / High Commissioner for _____ *</p> <p>Address</p> <p>* One exception: British High Commissioner and not High Commissioner for Britain</p>	<p>Dear Ambassador/ High Commissioner:</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Your Excellency" or "Excellency".</p>
<p>Canadian ambassadors/high commissioners Abroad</p> <p>Mr./Mrs. (full name) Ambassador of Canada to _____ / High Commissioner for Canada to _____</p> <p>Address</p> <p>Note: If a Canadian Ambassador or High Commissioner happens to be in Canada, or for a Canadian abroad, the form used is simply Ambassador or High Commissioner. The title "Excellency" is not accorded by a Canadian citizen to a Canadian Ambassador or High Commissioner, but is given by the government and citizens of the country to which the person is accredited.</p>	<p>Dear Ambassador/ High Commissioner:</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr./Madam Ambassador/ High Commissioner"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Provincial/territorial dignitaries

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Lieutenant Governor of a province*</p> <p>His/Her Honour the Honourable (full name) Lieutenant Governor of (Province) Address</p> <p>* The Lieutenant Governor of a province has the title "Honourable" for life; the courtesy title "His/Her Honour" is used only while in office.</p>	<p>Your Honour or My dear Lieutenant Governor:</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Your Honour" first then "Sir" or "Madam" or "Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>
<p>Spouse of a Lieutenant Governor *</p> <p>Her/His Honour (full name) Address</p> <p>* The courtesy title "His/Her Honour" is used only while the Lieutenant Governor is in office.</p>	<p>Your Honour: / Dear Mrs./Mr. (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Your Honour" first then "Madam/Mrs./Mr. (name)"</p>
<p>Former Lieutenant Governor</p> <p>The Honourable (full name) Address</p>	<p>Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Provincial/territorial dignitaries

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Commissioner of a territory</p> <p>The Honourable (full name) Commissioner of (Territory) Address</p>	<p>Commissioner (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Sir" or "Madam" or "Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>
<p>Premier of a province *</p> <p>The Honourable (full name), M.L.A. or (M.P.P., M.N.A., or M.H.A.) Premier of (Province) Address</p> <p>* The title "Honourable" is used only while in office, unless he/she is a member of the Privy Council.</p> <p>The term "Mr./Madam Premier" should not be used.</p>	<p>Dear Premier:</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Premier" first then "Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>
<p>Government Leader of a territory *</p> <p>The Honourable (full name), M.L.A. Government Leader of (Territory) Address</p> <p>* The title "Honourable" is used only while in office, unless he/she is a member of the Privy Council.</p> <p>The term "Mr./Madam Leader" should not be used.</p>	<p>Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

*Document communiqué en vertu de la Loi sur l'accès à l'information.
Document released pursuant to the Access to Information Act.*

Provincial/territorial dignitaries

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Provincial/territorial cabinet ministers</p> <p>The Honourable (full name), M.L.A. or (M.P.P., M.N.A. or M.H.A.) Minister of _____ Address _____</p> <p>Note: A provincial/territorial cabinet minister does not retain the title "Honourable" after tenure of office unless he/she is a member of the Privy Council. M.L.A.: all provinces/territories except for: - Ontario (M.P.P.) - Québec (M.N.A.) - Newfoundland (M.H.A.)</p> <p>The term "Mr./Madam Minister" should not be used.</p>	<p>Dear Minister:</p> <p>Dear Colleague: (between colleagues)</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p> <p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Minister" first then "Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>
<p>Judges of Superior Courts</p> <p><u>Appeal Court, Superior Court, Court of the Queen's Bench</u></p> <p>The Honourable (full name) Judge of _____ Address _____</p>	<p>Dear Mr./Madam Justice (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr./Madam Justice (name)"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Provincial/territorial dignitaries

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>Chief judges/judges of provincial/territorial courts*</p> <p>The Honourable (full name) Provincial/Territorial Court of _____ Address</p> <p>* The Table of Titles to be used in Canada now recognizes the title "Honourable" for provincially/territorially appointed judges. The courtesy title "His/Her Honour" is no longer appropriate given an official title has been granted.</p>	<p>Dear Chief Judge/Judge (name):</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Judge (name)"</p>
<p>Members of a provincial/territorial legislative assembly</p> <p>Mr. John Smith, M.L.A. or (M.P.P., M.N.A., or M.H.A.) Name of _____ Address</p> <p>Note: Members of the Queen's Privy Council retain the title "Honourable" for life and use the initials "P.C." after their name. M.L.A.: all provinces/territories except for: - Ontario (M.P.P.) - Quebec (M.N.A.) - Newfoundland (M.H.A.) P.C., M.L.A.: Member of the Privy Council and Member of the Legislative Assembly</p>	<p>Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name),</p>	<p>Yours sincerely,</p>	<p>"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Foreign dignitaries

Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
<p>An Emperor</p> <p>His Imperial Majesty Akihito Emperor of Japan Address</p>	<p>Your dignified Majesty:</p>	<p>I have the honour to remain, Your Imperial Majesty's obedient servant,</p>	<p>"Your Majesty" first then "Sire"</p>
<p>A King</p> <p>His Majesty Juan Carlos King of Spain Address</p>	<p>Your Majesty/Sire:</p>	<p>I have the honour to remain, Your Majesty's obedient servant,</p>	<p>"Your Majesty" first then "Sire"</p>
<p>A Queen</p> <p>Her Majesty Queen Sophia Queen of Spain Address</p>	<p>Your Majesty/Madame:</p>	<p>I have the honour to remain, Your Majesty's obedient servant,</p>	<p>"Your Majesty" first then "Ma'am"</p>

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Foreign dignitaries

Dignitary		Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
A Prince / Princess	With title "Royal Highness" His Royal Highness The Prince of the Asturias	Your Royal Highness:	I remain, Your Royal Highness, Yours very truly,	"Your Royal Highness" first then "Sir/Ma'am"
	With title "Serene Highness" His Serene Highness The Prince of Monaco	Your Serene Highness:	I remain, Your Serene Highness, Yours very truly,	"Your Serene Highness" first then "Sir/Ma'am"
	Without title "Highness" Prince Alexandre de Mérode Princess (full name)	Prince: Madame:	Yours very truly, Yours very truly,	"Prince" first then "Sir" "Princess" first then "Madam"
A President of a Republic His/Her Excellency (full name) President of the Republic of (name) Address		Excellency:	Yours sincerely,	"Excellency" first then "President" or "Sir/Madam"
The President of the United States The Honorable (full name) President of the United States The White House Washington, D.C.		Dear Mr. President:	Yours sincerely,	"Mr. President" first then "Sir"
A Prime Minister His/Her Excellency (full name) Prime Minister of (name) Address		Dear Prime Minister:	Yours sincerely,	"Prime Minister" or "Excellency" first then "Sir/Madam" or "Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Religious dignitaries

	Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
Roman Catholic Church	The Pope His Holiness Pope John Paul II Address	Your Holiness:	I have the honour to remain Your Holiness's obedient servant,	"Your Holiness"
	A Cardinal His Eminence John Cardinal Smith Address	Your Eminence: or Dear Cardinal (name):	Yours very truly,	"Your Eminence"
	An Archbishop-Bishop The Most Reverend (full name)* Archbishop/Bishop of (name of Diocese) Address * The Holy See has accorded the courtesy title "His Excellency" to Roman Catholic archbishops and bishops; that title is not recognized by Canadian civil authorities.	Dear Archbishop/Bishop (name):	Yours very truly,	"Archbishop/Bishop"
	An Abbot The Right Reverend (full name) Abbot of (name of _____) Address	Right Reverend Father: or Dear Abbott (name):	Yours sincerely	"Father Abbot"
	A Canon The Very Reverend (full name) Address	Dear Canon (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Canon (name)"

A.7-17

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Religious dignitaries

	Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
Roman Catholic Church (continued)	A Priest* The Reverend (full name) Address * Note: "Reverend" is an adjective which is never used without the full name.	Dear Father:	Yours sincerely,	"Father" or "Father (name)"
	A Sulpician Mr. (full name) Address	Dear Mr. (name):	Yours truly,	"Mr. (name)"
	Religious (man) The Reverend Father (full name) Address (woman) Reverend Mother (full name)/ Reverend Sister (full name)	Dear Father (name): Dear Reverend Mother:/ Dear Reverend Sister:	Yours sincerely, Yours sincerely, Yours sincerely,	"Reverend Father" "Reverend Mother (name)" "Reverend Sister (name)"
Anglican Church of Canada	The Primate The Most Reverend (full name) Primate of the Anglican Church of Canada Address	Dear Archbishop (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Archbishop"

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Religious dignitaries

	Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
Anglican Church of Canada (continued)	An Archbishop The Most Reverend (full name), D.D. Archbishop of (name of Diocese) Address	Dear Archbishop (name):	Yours very truly,	"Archbishop"
	A Bishop The Right Reverend (full name) Bishop of (name of Diocese) Address	Dear Bishop (name):	Yours very truly,	"Bishop (name)" or "Bishop"
	A Dean The Very Reverend (full name) Dean of (name of Cathedral) Address	Dear Dean (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Dean (name)" or "Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"
	Archdeacon The Venerable (full name) Archdeacon Address	Dear Archdeacon (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Archdeacon (name)"
	A Canon The Reverend Canon (full name) Address	Dear Canon (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Canon (name)"

A.7-19

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Religious dignitaries

	Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
Anglican Church of Canada (continued)	A Priest* The Reverend (full name) Address * Note: "Reverend" is an adjective which is never used without the full name.	Dear Father (name) or Dear Mr. (name): Dear Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Father" or "Father (name)" "Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"
	Religious (man) The Reverend Father (full name) Address (woman) Reverend Mother (full name)/ Reverend Sister (full name)	Dear Father (name): Dear Reverend Mother: / Dear Reverend Sister:	Yours sincerely, Yours sincerely, Yours sincerely,	"Reverend Father" "Reverend Mother (name)" "Reverend Sister (name)"
Other religious denominations	A Moderator (United Church of Canada and Presbyterian Church in Canada) <u>A present ordained Moderator:</u> The Right Reverend (full name) Moderator of (name of Church) Address	Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Religious dignitaries

	Dignitary	Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
Other religious denominations (continued)	<p>A Moderator (continued)</p> <p><u>A past ordained Moderator:</u></p> <p>The Very Reverend (full name) * Moderator of (name of Church) Address</p>	Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"
	<p>A Minister*</p> <p>The Reverend (full name) Address</p> <p>* Note: "Reverend" is an adjective which is never used without the full name.</p>	Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"
	<p>A Rabbi</p> <p>Rabbi (full name) Address</p>	Dear Rabbi (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Rabbi (name)"

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Others

Dignitary		Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
Lawyers / Notaries Mr., Mrs., Ms. or Miss (full name) Mr., Mrs., Ms. or Miss (full name), Q.C.		Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"
A Mayor His/Her Worship (full name) Mayor of (name) Address		Dear Sir/Madam: or Dear Mr./Madam Mayor:	Yours sincerely,	"Your Worship" first then "Mayor (name)"
Armed Forces	Officer rank Brigadier General/Major General/ Lieutenant General/General (full name) Colonel (full name) Lieutenant Colonel (full name) Major (full name) Captain (full name) Lieutenant (full name) Address	Dear General: Dear Colonel: Dear Lieutenant Colonel: Dear Major: Dear Captain: Dear Lieutenant/Mr./Mrs./ Ms./Miss (name):	Yours sincerely,	"General (name)" "Colonel (name)" "Lieutenant (name)"
	NCO and other ranks Chief Warrant Officer (full name) Master Warrant Officer (full name) Warrant Officer (full name) Sergeant (full name) Corporal (full name) Private (full name)	Dear Chief Warrant (name): Dear Master Warrant (name): Dear Warrant (name): Dear Sergeant (name): Dear Corporal (name): Dear Private (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"

STYLES OF ADDRESS

Others

Dignitary		Salutation	Final Salutation	In conversation
Aide-de-camp* * Post nominals "A. de C." have been authorized for Aides-de-camps to the Governor General and lieutenant governors.	Military - (according to rank)	(see Armed Forces)	(see Armed Forces)	(see Armed Forces)
	Civilian - (according to their title) Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (full name)	Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"
Native Citizens	Indian Chiefs Chief (full name) Chief of (name) Address	Dear Chief (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Chief (name)"
	Band Councillors Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (full name) Address	Dear Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name):	Yours sincerely,	"Mr./Mrs./Ms./Miss (name)"

A.7-23

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.8

Receptions

A.8.1

Dietary restrictions

In planning a menu for any kind of social activity, it is important to take the guests' dietary restrictions into account, since some religious or ethnic groups have their own customs.

- **Islam:** Avoid serving pork or pork products (ham, bacon, pork sausages, salt pork and so on) to Moslems. Islamic law prohibits alcoholic beverages, although the rule is not invariably observed. A Moslem guest will sometimes not take alcohol, but will have no objection to others doing so. Fruit juices, water or other non-alcoholic beverages should be served to those who do not drink alcohol.
- **Hinduism:** avoid serving beef, pork by-products to Hindus. Some accept milk products. A large percentage of Hindus are vegetarians.
- **Buddhism:** No dietary restrictions. Since Buddhism is a personal and individualistic religion, restrictions are a matter of personal choice. Because of their aversion to killing of animals, some Buddhists refrain from eating meat.
- **Judaism:** Orthodox Jews do not eat pork or shellfish and they also avoid certain beef products. In general, meat other than pork is acceptable, as are dairy products, but they should not be served at the same time. Several hours must elapse between consuming one and the other.

[From: "Diplomatic and Consular Relations and Protocol", External Affairs, 1985]

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.9

Invitations

A.9.1

Invitation cards

Before starting to send out invitations, it is important to draw up a guest list; this is a key factor in successful entertaining and it is essential when a meal or sit down event is planned. The list should be drawn up with care, taking into account the guests represented and ensuring that they will form a stimulating and interesting group. There is also the problem of language; all the guests should have at least one in common. For a private event, it is advisable to avoid having too many dignitaries since they must be given special attention and it is impossible to look after one and all at the same time.

The etiquette requires that an invitation be received at least two weeks in advance. Invitations are sent by mail unless the two-week deadline cannot be observed, in which case they are delivered by messenger. Invitations are also extended by telephone; if it is accepted, a written invitation is sent as a reminder or available for pick-up at the reception or event.

The person who receives an invitation must reply immediately, either accepting, or declining, if unable to attend. If one is uncertain about being able to attend, it is preferable to decline the invitation rather than put off replying until the last minute. When a reply is unduly delayed, the host is placed in the embarrassing position of being unable to decide on the preparation of the meal, the arrangement of the table or the seating plan at the event, and is prevented from taking the advantage of the situation to invite someone else. Anyone who delays his reply until his host has to ask for it, and particularly anyone who fails to reply, is not acting properly.

It is correct to answer an invitation by letter or correspondence card; however, if the invitation bears the telephone number of the host, it is expected that the reply will be made by telephone.

A.9.2

Notes on invitation cards

Invitation cards, envelopes, place-cards and presentation cards if required are usually handwritten in black ink; they may also be typed.

Invitations are sent, as much as possible, two weeks before the event. The invitation are usually handwritten in black ink. The name of the guest is indicated in the same manner on both the card and the envelope. It is now acceptable that the envelopes be typed.

If the invitation is extended by telephone, a card will be subsequently sent to those who will have accepted.

There is no set fixed form as to the wording of an invitation card. However, the following details must not be forgotten:

An invitation should always indicate:

- the title and name of the host and hostess or organization;
- the occasion, if appropriate;
- the type of event;
- the address, date and time;
- the dress code; and
- one of the following notations:
 - (I) Reminder; when a telephoned invitation has been accepted;
 - (ii) Regrets only: unnecessary to reply if accepting;
 - (iii) RSVP: a reply is required.

(a) **The heading** may be done in two different manners:

1. For a Head of State or a member of the Royal Family:

“In honour of _____”

Note: for Her Majesty The Queen, we will say:

“In the presence of _____”

2. For occasions such as official visits, conferences, etc.:

“On the occasion of _____”

- (b) **The title and surname** of the guest must not be abbreviated, because we are addressing directly. Initials are tolerated if there are two, and this applies for both official languages.

Examples:

- Mr. John A. Smith (or) Mr. J.A. Smith (not Mr. J. Smith);
- the Honourable John Smith;
- Her Excellency Joan Smith; and
- His Excellency the High Commissioner for _____.

- (c) **The date** (day, month, year) is written in numerals. The days and months start with a capital letter in English and a low cap letter in French.

example: Tuesday, January 1, 1993

- (d) **The time:** numbers are used to indicate time.

Example: 7:30 p.m. for 8:00 p.m.

- (e) **Answers** to written invitations must be handwritten:

Example: answer to an invitation from the Governor General:

Mr. and Mrs. _____ are honoured to accept the gracious invitation of Their Excellencies the Governor General and Mr./Mrs. _____ to a reception on _____ at _____.

- (f) **Lists** should reflect the language of the guests for receptions, dinners or other events organized by the Federal Government.

- (g) **In correspondence**, it is customary to use abbreviations to orders (C.C., C.M.M., C.V.O.), decorations (C.D.) and offices (Q.C., M.P.).

Abbreviations of diplomas and learned societies are not added.

A.9.3

Place cards

Initials and decorations following the name of a guest on an invitation card do not show on a place card:

Example: The Honourable John Smith
Mrs. Mary Smith

It is customary to add the name of the spouse.

Example: The Honourable Jane Smith
Mr. Paul Smith

If a person has a very important place in the "Precedence of Canadian Dignitaries and Officials in Canada" (ex.: the Prime Minister, the Chief Justice of Canada, the Speaker of the Senate, the Speaker of the House of Commons), it is correct to use their title:

Example: The Prime Minister of Canada
Mrs. Aline Chrétien

His Honour the Lieutenant Governor of Nova Scotia
Her Honour Mrs. Grace Elizabeth Kinley

On the other hand, foreign high commissioners and ambassadors accredited in Canada are always addressed by their title.

Example: His Excellency the Ambassador of Italy

HOW TO WRITE PLACE CARDS

Examples:

The Governor General and spouse	= The Governor General = Her Excellency Mrs. Diane Fowler LeBlanc
The Prime Minister and spouse	= The Prime Minister of Canada = Mrs. Aline Chrétien
Ambassador and spouse	= His Excellency the Ambassador of Mexico = Mrs. Zulma Urdaneta

High Commissioner	=	His Excellency the High Commissioner of New Zealand
and spouse	=	Mrs. Mary Shepherd (exception: His Excellency the British High Commissioner)
Ministers (Canada and Commonwealth) and spouses	=	The Honourable John Smith = Mrs. Mary Smith or = The Honourable Mary Simson = Mr. John Simson
Foreign ministers and spouses	=	His Excellency John Smith Mrs. Mary Smith or = Her Excellency Mary Simson = Mr. John Simson

A.9.4

Use of post-nominal letters

It is customary to use post-nominal letters to indicate the orders, decorations, academic achievements or others.

The Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion Program at the Department of Canadian Heritage follows the following practice, in particular for the official list of Canadian dignitaries found in the publications entitled "Precedence of Canadian Dignitaries and Officials":

1. post-nominal letters indicating membership to the Queen's Privy Council for Canada;
2. orders and decorations approved by the government as forming part of the National Honours System, as published by order in council;
3. post-nominal letters designating an office (Q.C., M.P.);
4. post-nominal letters showing academic achievements (B.A., LL.L., Ph.D.);
and
5. post-nominal letters indicating membership to a learned or professional association (F.R.S.C., F.R.C.S.).

A.9.5

Times of arrival and departure at receptions

It has been mentioned before, but it bears repeating: punctuality above all! As Louis XVIII so aptly put it, "Punctuality is the politeness of kings and the duty of all good people."

While it is not necessary to be precisely on time for receptions, one should not arrive too late, and certainly never after the arrival of the guests of honour; it is not pleasant for the hosts to wait in empty reception rooms, and they are always appreciative of guests who arrive on time. There is no need to linger beyond the time specified in the invitation, unless expressly invited to do so, even if the buffet is still well stocked.

Some dinner guests make a practice of arriving very late. Such behaviour is extremely ill-bred when one is invited to a private meal, since delicate dishes cannot wait. It also indicates a lack of consideration for the other guests, who are forced to wait upon the latecomer's convenience.

As a general rule, a host does not wait for a tardy guest more than half an hour beyond the time indicated in the invitation, and the latter must take the meal where it is at the moment of his arrival. The guest must do everything possible to let his hosts know of his situation.

[From: "Diplomatic and Consular Relations and Protocol", External Affairs, 1985]

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.10

Protocol offices

A.10.1

List

ONTARIO - Toronto

Mr. Ernesto Feu, L.V.O.
Director of International Relations
and Chief of Protocol of Ontario
Ministry of Economic Development and Trade
900 Bay Street 16th floor - Hearst Block
Toronto, Ontario
M7A 2E7

Telephone No.: 416-325-8545
Fax No.: 416-325-8550
General inquiry: 416-325-8535

QUEBEC - Quebec

Mrs. Lucie Latulippe
Assistant Deputy Minister and
Chief of Protocol
Ministry of International Relations
525 René-Lévesque Blvd. East
Québec, Quebec
G1R 5R9

Telephone No.: 418-649-2346
Fax No.: 418-649-2657
Montréal Office: 514-873-6182

NOVA SCOTIA - Halifax

Mrs. Colleen McDonald
Chief of Protocol of Nova Scotia
Protocol Office
1700 Granville Street (Barrington Street Level)
P.O. Box 1617
Halifax, Nova Scotia
B3J 2Y3

Telephone No.: 902-424-6740
Fax No.: 902-424-4309

NEW BRUNSWICK - Fredericton

Ms. Anne Reynolds
Protocol Officer
Protocol Office
Intergovernmental Affairs
736 King Street
P.O. Box 6000
Fredericton, New Brunswick
E3B 5H1

Telephone No.: 506-453-2671
Fax No.: 506-453-2995

MANITOBA - Winnipeg

Mr. Dwight McAuley
Chief of Protocol of Manitoba
Executive Council Office
Legislative Building, Room 338
450 Broadway Street
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3C 0V8

Telephone No.: 204-945-8845
Fax No.: 204-945-1572

BRITISH COLUMBIA - Victoria

Mr. David N.S. Harris, M.V.O., C.D., A. de C.
Chief of Protocol of British Columbia
Protocol and Events Branch
Intergovernmental Relations Secretariat
215 - 553 Superior Street,
Victoria, B.C.
V8W 9V1

Telephone No.: 250-356-1138
Fax No.: 250-356-2814

P.O. Mailing Address
P.O. Box 9422
Station Prov. Govt.
Victoria, B.C. V8W 9V1

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND - Charlottetown

Mr. Maurice Rogerson
Chief of Protocol
Province House
P.O. Box 2000
Charlottetown, P.E.I.
C1A 7N8

Telephone No.: 902-368-4400
Fax No.: 902-368-4416

SASKATCHEWAN - Regina

Mr. Michael Jackson, L.V.O., C.D.
Executive Director of Protocol and
Government House
Protocol Office
1919 Saskatchewan Drive, 10th floor
Regina, Saskatchewan
S4P 3V7

Telephone No.: 306-787-3001
Fax No.: 306-787-1269

A.10 - 4

ALBERTA - Edmonton

Mr. Rory Campbell
Chief of Protocol of Alberta
Intergovernmental and Aboriginal Affairs
10155 - 102 Street, N.W.
12th Floor, Commerce Place
Edmonton, Alberta
T5J 4G8

Telephone No.: 403-422-1542
Fax No.: 403-422-0786

NEWFOUNDLAND - St. John's

Mr. David Dempster
Director of Protocol of Newfoundland
Executive Council Office
Government of Newfoundland and Labrador
Confederation Building, 4th Floor, East Block
St. John's, Newfoundland
A1B 4J6

Telephone No.: 709-729-3670
Fax No.: 709-729-6878

NORTHWEST TERRITORIES - Yellowknife

Mr. David M. Hamilton
Clerk of the Legislative Assembly
Legislative Assembly of the Northwest Territories
P.O. Box 1320
Yellowknife, Northwest Territories
X1A 2L9

Telephone No.: 867-669-2230
Fax No.: 867-920-4735

YUKON - Whitehorse

Ms. Pamela Bangart
Protocol Officer
Executive Council Office
Government of the Yukon Territory
P.O. Box 2703
Whitehorse, Yukon
Y1A 2C6

Telephone No.: 867-667-5875
Fax No.: 867-393-6214
Commissioner's Office: 867-667-5120

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.11

Honours and salutes

A.11.1

Definition

Honours and salutes contain three elements: a guard of honour, a musical salute and a gun salute. Honours and salutes vary according to the dignitaries being honoured, more specifically as to the strength of a guard of honour, the musical tune being played and the number of rounds fired.

A.11.2

Background

Salutes have been fired for many centuries, as a gesture of friendship and to honour certain dignitaries. Firing a gun salute was also a way to mark such festive occasions, coronations, royal anniversaries and jubilees.

Tradition and custom have established that a royal salute consists of 21 rounds; kings and queens have always associated members of their immediate family to the honours accorded to the Sovereign, and as nations evolved from monarchies to republics or other forms of government, the custom has developed to accord the same salute to all heads of state.

A.11.3

Considerations

The current Canadian practice is to be found in the Canadian Forces Administration Orders (CFAO 61-8, mod 8/84).

A.11.4

Who is entitled

Honours and salutes are accorded to the following dignitaries:

- . Heads of state;
- . The Queen's representatives in Canada
- . Members of reigning royal families
- . Heads of governments
- . Ambassadors and high commissioners accredited to Canada; and
- . Ministers of National Defence.

A.11.5

When are they accorded

The current practice is for full military honours and salutes to be accorded as follows:

- **Canadian dignitaries:**
 - (a) The Queen: a 21 gun salute is fired upon arrival in Canada; upon arrival in a province; and at an official ceremony (should one be organized) marking the departure from Canada;
 - (b) The Governor General: a 21 gun salute is fired on his/her taking the oaths of office; full honours are given on his/her leaving the Parliament buildings after the installation ceremonies; full honours are given on arrival on Parliament Hill for Canada Day ceremonies and for the opening or proroguing of a session of Parliament; full honours are given on occasions when a guard of honour is warranted; a 21 gun salute is fired when visiting a saluting station not more than once a year; full honours are given on his/her official departure from Ottawa on leaving office;
 - (c) Lieutenant Governor: a 15 gun salute is fired on his/her taking the oaths of office; full honours are given on his/her leaving the Legislative Building (or other site) after the installation ceremonies; full honours are given on arrival at the Legislative Building for the opening or proroguing of a session of the Legislature; a gun salute is fired when visiting a saluting station within his/her province (not more than once a year); full honours are given on occasions when the mounting of a guard of honour is justified; full honours are given on his/her official departure from the provincial capital on leaving office.

It is to be noted that Lieutenant Governors are not given military honours outside the province of their jurisdiction as they do not have extra-territoriality;

- (d) The Prime Minister and the Minister of National Defence: a 19 rounds gun salute is fired for the Prime Minister and 17 for the Minister of National Defence when visiting a saluting station (but not more than once a year); full honours are given on occasions when the mounting of a guard of honour is warranted;
- (e) Members of the Royal Family: for official visits to Canada; a 21 gun salute is fired upon arrival in Canada and upon arrival in a province;
- **Foreign dignitaries**
 - (a) Foreign heads of state and members of foreign reigning royal families: a 21 rounds gun salute upon arrival in Canada for an official visit;
 - (b) Foreign heads of government, the Vice-President of the United States, ministers of National Defence: a 17 rounds gun salute upon arrival in Canada for an official visit;
 - (c) Heads of Mission accredited to Canada: a 19 rounds gun salute upon arrival in Canada to take over as heads of mission.

A.11.6

Guard of honour

In Canada, guards of honour, mounted on occasions when full military honours are accorded, vary in strength according to the dignitaries being honoured. As a rule:

- a 100 person guard is mounted for heads of state, The Queen's representatives in Canada, governors general of Commonwealth countries, members of reigning royal families;
- a 50 person guard is mounted for heads of Government (including the Vice President of the United States), ministers of National Defence, heads of Mission accredited to Canada;
- 16 person departure guards are also mounted for the departure from Canada of members of the Royal Family, on occasions when it is desired to involve members of a Regiment with which the Royal Visitor is associated.

A.11.7

Musical salute

Two musical salutes are played in connection with full military honours, the initial one after the dignitaries have stepped onto the dais, the final one after the completion of the inspection of the guard of honour upon returning to the dais.

The final salute always consists in the full rendition of Canada's national anthem, except for The Queen's representatives in Canada, where the Vice Regal Salute is played. (A.11 - 9)

The initial salute varies according to the dignitaries:

- (a) The Queen, The Duke of Edinburgh, Queen Elizabeth the Queen Mother: "God Save The Queen" (in full);
- (b) Other members of the Royal Family: the first six bars of "God Save The Queen";
- (c) The Governor General and the lieutenant governors: the Vice Regal Salute (composed by the first six bars of "God Save The Queen" immediately followed by the first four and last four bars of "O Canada");
- (d) The Prime Minister and the Minister of National Defence of Canada: the national anthem (in full);
- (e) Foreign heads of state, foreign heads of Government, members of foreign royal families, foreign ministers of National Defence, heads of Mission accredited to Canada: the national anthem of the country of origin.

For a Pipe Band, a special music is played ("Mallorca" or a combination of "Mallorca" and "O Canada" for the Vice Regal Salute).

The first round of a gun salute should be fired as the Guard Commander orders the second "Shoulder arms".

A.11.8

Military salute

When in uniform, the Governor General, the Lieutenant Governor or a member of the Royal Family will salute during the playing of the Salute as well as the playing of the national or royal anthems.

Officers immediately in waiting will not salute during the playing of the Salute, but will salute during the playing of the national or royal anthems.

A.11.9

Salute to the Governor General / Lieutenant Governor
(commonly referred to as Vice Regal Salute)

arranged by MWO E.J. Ford

1. Before the entry of the Vice-Regal party, the guests should be asked to stand when the party enters and to remain standing until the Vice-Regal Salute is concluded. They should be advised NOT to sing during the playing of the Salute.
2. The Vice-Regal Salute should NOT be played until all members of the party have reached their places on the dais or at the table and are standing at their chairs.

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.12

Notes for preparation of "Canada Badge"

There is no regulation governing behaviour when a woman is presented to Her Majesty The Queen and other members of the Royal Family, the Governor General or the Prime Minister of Canada. It is traditional for a woman to curtsy to The Queen and to members of the Royal Family but there is no law or regulation requiring her to do so.

In accordance with general practice, when presented to Her Majesty or a member of the Royal Family, a brownie should curtsy when brought to the Sovereign or the member of the Royal Family, and when she leaves. The title "Your Majesty" (for The Queen and Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother) is used once, at the beginning, thereafter "Ma'am" is used; "Your Royal Highness" is used for the other members of the Royal Family, thereafter "Ma'am" or "Sir" is used.

The Governor General of Canada is styled "Right Honourable" for life and the Governor General and his/her spouse are styled "His Excellency/Her Excellency" during office. When speaking to one or the other, the style "Your Excellency" is used in the first instance, subsequently "Sir" or "Madam" according to their respective title.

In a conversation with the Prime Minister, the style "Prime Minister" is used at the beginning, thereafter, "Sir/ Mr. [name]/ Prime Minister" would be appropriate. The Prime Minister is styled "Right Honourable" for life.

When The Queen or a member of the Royal Family participates in ceremonial functions, the Royal Anthem "God Save The Queen" is played in full. The salute accorded to the Governor General is composed of the first six bars of "God Save The Queen" followed by the first four and last four bars of "O Canada". It is appropriate to sing "O Canada" at events attended by the Prime Minister.

"O Canada" is the national anthem of Canada and it is appropriate that it be sung at ceremonies and events.

A

A.13

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

Gift bank

The Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion Program of the Department of Canadian Heritage has the mandate of purchasing and keeping a complete inventory of articles that make up the bank of official gifts for the purposes of the Government of Canada.

The Governor General, members of the Canadian Ministry, and deputy ministers and heads of federal agencies have access to the bank of gifts for presentation to foreign dignitaries. The maximum value of a gift presented by a minister abroad is \$500; the value of such a gift when presented in Canada must not exceed \$300. Deputy ministers and heads of agencies may present gifts valued at up to \$200 outside Canada and \$100 within the country. There is no maximum for the Governor General.

The Prime Minister and the Department of Foreign Affairs and International Trade ministers obtain the gifts they present from the Department of Foreign Affairs. In case of emergency, however, they may use the services of the gift bank, and a journal voucher will subsequently be sent to the Department of Foreign Affairs and International Trade.

A.13.1

Purchases

The main sources of official gifts are:

- craft boutiques;
- gift salons;
- fine craft salons;
- associations of craftspersons; and
- craftspersons and artists.

Gifts (valued at over \$50) and souvenirs (worth less than \$50) must be Canadian made and be representative of Canadian industry and culture.

A.13.2

Inventory

The inventory of the gift bank is maintained in accordance with the directives of the administrative services of the Department of Canadian Heritage.

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.14

Check list

A.14.1

When and how to conduct special events

- **WHEN**

Special events make it possible to have direct, personal communication. The question, therefore, is whether this high level of communication is required or justified.

A second basic question is whether the message to be conveyed lends itself to a special event involving speeches, a select audience and particular timing.

A number of additional points should be taken into consideration:

- (a) Is there a specific audience to be defined and reached? Can it be assembled? Is there more than one?
- (b) Can the invited audience be identified as being sufficiently representative to ensure the transfer of the message to secondary target audiences?
- (c) Is the event suitable for media coverage? For example, is there a visual aspect to interest television crews?
- (d) Can other feature participants, dates, or locations be arranged?
- (e) Does the theme or purpose of the event relate to a specific location or area or is it too general for a localized event?
- (f) Does the event relate to a specific date or occasion? Is there another event that could compete for attention?

- **How**

Within the lead department, the central unit responsible for special events (Treasury Board Regulations, Chapter 360, article 2.1.7) should meet with all individuals involved to discuss preliminary arrangements, to ensure that everyone who might have an input is invited, and to prepare a broad outline of preparations - all with a view to making early decisions.

The central unit should endeavour to ensure that sufficient lead time is available for printing, mailing, translation, etc., and that costs are in line with budget.

The central unit must ensure that no special guest or members of the media are neglected or overlooked.

The person in charge should be on-site early enough to make necessary changes, e.g. additions, deletions, re-arrangements.

Following the special event, the person in charge should submit a report summing up its estimated effectiveness. Any other pertinent comment which could lead to improved management of future events should be included.

• **CHECKLIST**

The following checklist can be used for any type of special event. Not all elements are applicable to all occasions. Special items may be added when necessary.

- Where
- When
- Who
 - . host
 - . master of ceremony
 - . chairman
 - . guests
- Statements - speeches - advertising - publicity signage
- Canada wordmark - promotional material
- Advance texts, photos, etc.
- Invitations to:
 - . **Special and honoured guests**
 - . minister(s) - senator(s)
 - . other members of Parliament
 - . members of the legislative assembly
 - . provincial, regional and local authorities
 - . religious leaders
 - . **Media**
 - . national press
 - . regional - ethnic
 - . local - community
 - . **Non-media**
 - . inter-departmental
 - . inter-governmental
- Photos, film projector
- Press area

- Communications
 - . microphone, PA equipment
 - . pool sound
 - . TV outlets
- Radio, record player, tape deck
- Rehearsals
- Final briefing
- Agenda
- Any special props
- God Save The Queen (if a member of the Royal Family is in attendance)
- Flags (canadian-provincial-local)
- "O Canada" (record, tape, singer, or musicians)
- Seating of officials and guests on stage
- Protocol
 - . reception room where special guests will be met before the event
- Head table, size, exact location, etc.
- Podium, lectern, etc.
- Coffee, lunch, etc., number of people expected - menu selection
- Transportation of special guests, from arrival to departure
- Buses (if needed) to tour the area
- Air or train scheduling, reconfirmation, schedules
- Flowers
- Escorts and guides
- Registration of news media
- Press kits
 - . design
 - . printing
 - . material
- All printed material
 - . translation
 - . proofing
 - . release dates (clearance)
- Plaques
- Photographer
- Simultaneous translation
- Floor manager
- Telephones
- Security
 - . guards
 - . insurance
 - . traffic
 - . fire regulations
- Budget reviewing
- Monitoring and evaluation report

[From: Administrative Policy Manual, ch. 477, Treasury Board Secretariat]

A

PROTOCOL/ORGANIZATION OF EVENTS

A.15

Provincial and territorial orders of precedence

A.15.1

Precedence list for Government of Ontario officials

1. The Lieutenant Governor of Ontario or the Administrator (Note 2)
2. The Premier of Ontario (Note 3)
3. The Chief Justice of Ontario (Note 4)
4. The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly of Ontario
5. The Members of the Executive Council of Ontario, in accordance with the precedence document issued by the Cabinet Office
6. The Leader of the Opposition (Note 5)
7. The Chief Justice of the Ontario Court of Justice (General Division)
8. The Associate Chief Justice of Ontario
9. The Associate Chief Justice of the Ontario Court of Justice (General Division)
10. Judges of the Ontario Court of Appeal with precedence governed by the date of appointment
11. Judges of the Ontario Court of Justice (General Division) with precedence governed by the date of appointment
12. The Ombudsman for the Province of Ontario
13. Members of the Legislative Assembly of Ontario with precedence governed by the date of their first election to the Legislature (Note 6)
14. Heads of religious denominations

15. Heads of Consular Post with jurisdiction in the Province of Ontario with precedence governed by date of "exequatur"
16. The Chief Judge of the Ontario Court of Justice (Provincial Division)
17. Judges of the Ontario Court of Justice (Provincial Division) with precedence governed by the date of appointment
18. Chairs of Regional Municipalities with relative precedence governed by the date of appointment or election to office
19. Heads of Ontario Municipalities with precedence governed by the date of their first election to office
20.
 - (a) Deputy Ministers
 - (b) Other senior Ontario Public Service officials with the rank and status of deputy minister, with precedence governed by the respective dates of their first appointment.

NOTES

1. The Table of Precedence for Ontario lists categories in their order of precedence as they apply to ceremonies and occasions of a provincial nature. At provincial functions where federal, foreign or diplomatic dignitaries are present, circumstances may dictate that provisions of the Table of Precedence of Canada or international rules of protocol be observed thus giving these dignitaries precedence over certain provincial categories. For general guide see Notes 4, 5 and 6. Similarly, circumstances may also dictate that precedence courtesy be given to host officials of lesser rank over other senior dignitaries present, (e.g. municipal functions).

In the cases when the date of appointment or election to office is the same, precedence within each category is determined in the alphabetical order.

2. Precedence to be given immediately after the Chief Justice of Ontario to former Lieutenant Governors of Ontario with relative precedence among them governed by the date of their leaving office.
3. Precedence to be given immediately after former Lieutenant Governors of Ontario to former Premiers of Ontario with relative precedence governed by the date of their first assumption of office.

4. Heads of accredited diplomatic missions in Ottawa are given precedence immediately after the Chief Justice of Ontario.
5. Immediately after the Leader of the Opposition, precedence is given to Members of the Privy Council for Canada resident in Ontario, with relative precedence among them to, first, Members of the Canadian Cabinet and, second, to those not of the Cabinet. For the former, relative precedence is determined by the date and order of appointment to the Cabinet; for the latter, by the date and order of their appointment to the Privy Council.
6. Immediately after Members of the Legislative Assembly of Ontario precedence is given to:
 - (a) Members of the Senate who represent Ontario with relative precedence among them determined by the date of appointment.
 - (b) Members of the House of Commons who represent Ontario constituencies with relative precedence among them determined by the date of election, and alphabetically for those elected at the same election.

Note: Information received from the Protocol Office of Ontario, December 1991.

A.15.2

**Order of precedence of the authorities individually convened to
public ceremonies organized by the Government of Quebec**

1. The Lieutenant Governor (a)
2. The Premier (b)
3. The Cardinals followed, when not a cardinal, by the Roman Catholic Archbishop having the status of Primate (c)
4. The President of the National Assembly
5. The Chief Justice of the Court of Appeal (d)
6. The Vice-Premier
7. The Dean of the Diplomatic Corps and the heads of diplomatic missions (e)
8. The Leader of the Opposition
9. The members of the Executive Council (f)
10. The local Archbishop or Bishop followed by the representatives of other faith communities (g)
11. The local Mayor
12. The Dean of the Consular Corps in Quebec City followed by the Dean of the Consular Corps in Montréal, the heads of post of the Consular Corps residing in the capital, for events happening there, and other heads of post, governed by their respective precedence (h)
13. The vice-presidents of the National Assembly
14. The chief justices of the Superior Court
15. The local member of the National Assembly followed by other members (i)
16. The Secretary General of the Executive Council
17. The President of the Council of the National Order of Quebec
18. The chief justices of the Court of Quebec

19. The rectors/principals of the local universities (j)
20. The judges of the Court of Appeal (k)
21. The Principal Secretary to the Premier followed by the deputy ministers
22. The judges of the Superior Court
23. The Ombudsman, the Chief Electoral Officer, the Auditor General, the presidents of the Government Agencies and Crown Corporations and the Chief of Protocol
24. The judges of the Court of Quebec (l)
25. The members of the National Order of Quebec (m)

REMARKS

- (a) The Administrator of the Government of Quebec, when officially performing the duties and functions of the Lieutenant Governor, takes the precedence of the Lieutenant Governor. Precedence to be given immediately after the Administrator of the Government of Quebec to former lieutenant governors of Quebec governed by the date of their leaving office.
- (b) Precedence to be given immediately after former lieutenant governors of Quebec to former Premiers of Quebec governed by the date of their leaving Office.
- (c) The Roman Catholic Archbishop having the status of Primate and who is also Cardinal has precedence over the others.
- (d) The Chief Justice of the Court of Appeal, performing the duties of Administrator of the Government of Quebec in the absence of the Lieutenant Governor, takes the precedence of the Lieutenant Governor if the latter is not attending the event.
- (e) Precedence among heads of diplomatic missions is determined by the date of the presentation of their credentials.
- (f) Precedence among members of the Executive Council is determined by the Premier and they are immediately followed by their Federal counterparts when attending ceremonies organized by the Government of Quebec.
- (g) As long as they reside in the province of Quebec.

- (h) Determined by the date of their registration with the Protocol Office.
- (i) Precedence among members of the National Assembly to be determined by the names of the ridings alphabetically, and to be followed by their Federal counterparts when attending ceremonies organized by the Government of Quebec, with the exception of the member of Parliament of the host riding who will take precedence immediately after the member of the National Assembly of that riding.
- (j) By order of seniority.
- (k) The Judge of the Court of Appeal, performing the duties of the Administrator of the Government of Quebec in the absence of the Lieutenant Governor, takes the precedence of the Lieutenant Governor if the latter is not attending the event.
- (l) By order of seniority.
- (m) By category according to their title and the alphabetical order of their names.

Note: Information received from the Protocol Office of Quebec, December 1991.

A.15.3

Official precedence list of Nova Scotia

1. Governor General of Canada
2. Lieutenant Governor
3. Premier
4. Prime Minister
5. Chief Justice of Nova Scotia
6. Speaker of the Nova Scotia House of Assembly
7. Members of the Provincial Cabinet
8. Members of the Federal Cabinet
9. Former lieutenant governors
10. Former premiers
11. Members of the Privy Council
12. Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of Nova Scotia
13. Associate Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of Nova Scotia
14. Justices of the Nova Scotia Court of Appeal
15. Justices of the Supreme Court of Nova Scotia
16. Chief Judge of the Provincial Court
17. Associate Chief Judge of the Provincial Court
18. Judges of the Provincial Court
19. Chief Judge of the Family Court
20. Associate Chief Judge of the Family Court
21. Judges of the Family Court

22. Members of the Senate
23. Leader of the Opposition
24. Archbishop of Nova Scotia - Anglican (Clergy)
25. Archbishop of Halifax - Roman Catholic (Clergy)
26. Representatives of other Religious Denominations
27. Consul General of France in Moncton and Halifax
28. Consul General of the United States of America in Halifax
29. Provincial Members of the Legislative Assembly
30. Federal Members of Parliament
31. Mayor of the Halifax Regional Municipality
32. Commander, Maritime Forces Atlantic (Armed Forces)
33. Commander, Land Force Atlantic Area (Armed Forces)
34. Assistant Commissioner, Royal Canadian Mounted Police

Note: Information received from the Protocol Office of Nova Scotia,
February 1998.

A.15.4

Table of precedence for New Brunswick

1. The Lieutenant Governor (see note 1)
2. The Premier
3. The Chief Justice of New Brunswick
4. The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly
5. Former Lieutenant Governors
6. Former Premiers
7. Former Chief Justices of New Brunswick
8. Ambassadors, High Commissioners, Ministers Plenipotentiary, and Chargé d'Affaires with precedence to their date of appointment
9. Members of the Executive Council of New Brunswick with precedence in accordance with the Executive Council Act
10. Leader of the Opposition
11. Chief Justice of the Court of Queen's Bench
12. Members of the Senate
13. Members of the House of Commons
14. Judges of the Court of Appeal with precedence according to their date of appointment
15. Judges of the Court of Queen's Bench with precedence according to their date of appointment
16. Members of the Legislative Assembly in the following order: Deputy Speaker, Government House Leader (see Note 2), Opposition House Leader, Leaders of Unofficial Opposition Parties, other members with precedence according to their date and order of their swearing in as Members of the Legislature
17. Elders and Chiefs of New Brunswick Indian Bands

18. Leaders of religious denominations with precedence according to their date of appointment or election to the present office
19. Chief Judge of the Provincial Court
20. Judges of the Provincial Court with precedence according to their date of appointment
21. Members of the Consular Corps in the following order: Consuls General, Consuls, Vice-Consuls, Honorary Consuls and Consular Agents with precedence among themselves according to their date of appointment
22. Mayors of the Cities of New Brunswick (with precedence given to the Mayor of the host municipality where appropriate) in the following order: Fredericton, Saint John, Moncton, Edmundston, Campbellton, and Bathurst
23. Mayors of the Towns of New Brunswick with precedence among themselves according to the alphabetical order of the place-names
24. Mayors of the Villages of New Brunswick with precedence according to the alphabetical order of the place-names
25. Councillors of the Cities, Towns, and Villages of New Brunswick in the same order of precedence among themselves according to the alphabetical order of their surnames
26. Clerk of the Legislative Assembly
27. Ombudsman
28. Auditor General
29. Clerk of the Executive Council
30. Deputy Heads of the Civil Service, with precedence according to their date of appointment
31. Heads of Crown Corporations and Agencies, with precedence according to their date of appointment
32. Commanding Officer of "J" Division, Royal Canadian Mounted Police

33. Chancellors of New Brunswick Universities in the following order:
University of New Brunswick, Mount Allison University, St. Thomas
University and Université de Moncton
34. Presidents of the Universities of New Brunswick in the same order of
precedence as the Chancellors

NOTES

1. In the absence of the Lieutenant Governor from the Province or his/her inability to carry out the duties of Lieutenant Governor for any reason, the Chief Justice becomes Administrator of the Province and takes the Lieutenant Governor's place of precedence.
2. A Government House Leader who is Cabinet Minister takes the precedence of a Cabinet Minister.

Note: Information received from the Protocol Office of New
Brunswick, December 1991.

A.15.5

Order of precedence for the province of Manitoba

1. His Honour the Lieutenant Governor of Manitoba
2. The President of the Executive Council, otherwise known as the Premier of Manitoba
3. The Chief Justice of Manitoba
4. Former Lieutenant Governors of Manitoba in order of seniority of taking Office
5. Former Presidents of the Executive Council of Manitoba in order of seniority in taking Office
6. Members of the Privy Council of Canada residing in Manitoba by order of seniority of taking the Oath of Office
7. Members of the Executive Council of the Province of Manitoba in relative order of seniority of appointment
8. The Chief Justice of the Court of Queen's Bench
9. The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly
10. The Puisne Judges of the Court of Appeal and of the Court of Queen's Bench in relative order of seniority of appointment
11. The Leader of the Opposition in the Legislative Assembly
12. The Archbishop of St. Boniface
The Bishop of Rupertsland
The Archbishop of Winnipeg
The Metropolitan of the Ukrainian Orthodox Church
The Metropolitan of the Ukrainian Catholic Church
The Chairman of the Manitoba Conference of the United Church of Canada
The Chairman of the Manitoba Conference of the Presbyterian Church
of Canada.
The Chairman or other representative persons of the following
denominations as indicated below and whose person will be signified to the

A.15 - 13

Clerk of the Executive Council from time to time:

- Lutheran Church
- Jewish Rabbi
- The Mennonite faith
- The Baptist Church
- The Salvation Army
- The Pastors Evangelical Fellowship

13. Members of the Legislative Assembly

14. County Court Judges in relative order of seniority of appointment

15. Magistrates in relative order of seniority of appointment

16. Members of the local consular corps in relative order of seniority of appointment

17. Mayors, Reeves and local government administrators in relative order of date of taking office

Note: Information received from the Protocol Office of Manitoba,
December 1991.

A.15.6

Table of precedence for British Columbia

1. The Lieutenant Governor of British Columbia (Notes 1 and 2)
2. The Premier of British Columbia (Note 3)
3. The Chief Justice of British Columbia (Note 4)
4. The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly of British Columbia
5. The Members of the Executive Council of British Columbia (Note 5)
6. The Leader of the Official Opposition of British Columbia (Note 6)
7. The Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of British Columbia
8. The senior representatives, within the Province of British Columbia, of the Anglican Church of Canada, the Roman Catholic Church, the United Church, the Presbyterian Church, the Baptist Federation, and the Jewish Faith (Note 7)
9. The Justices of the Court of Appeal of British Columbia with precedence to be governed by the date of appointment
10. The Puisne Justices of the Supreme Court of British Columbia with precedence to be governed by the date of appointment
11. The Judges of the County Courts of British Columbia with precedence to be governed by the date of appointment
12. The Members of the Legislative Assembly of British Columbia with precedence to be governed by the date of their first election to the legislature (Subject to Note 6, Note 8)
13. The Chief Judge of the Provincial Court of British Columbia
14. The Commander Maritime Forces Pacific
15. The Heads of Consular Posts with jurisdiction in British Columbia with precedence to be governed by Article 16 of the Vienna Convention on Consular Relations
16. The Mayor of Victoria

17. The Mayor of Vancouver
18. The Chancellors of the University of British Columbia, the University of Victoria and Simon Fraser University, respectively.

NOTES

The Table of Precedence for British Columbia lists categories in their order of precedence as they apply to ceremonies and occasions of a provincial nature. At provincial functions where federal, foreign or diplomatic dignitaries are present, circumstances may dictate that provisions of the Table of Precedence of Canada or international rules of protocol be observed thus giving these dignitaries precedence over certain provincial categories. Similarly, circumstances may also dictate that precedence be given to host officials of lesser rank than dignitaries who may be present. When the date of appointment or election to office is the same, precedence within each category is determined by alphabetical order.

1. In the absence of the Lieutenant Governor of British Columbia the Administrator of British Columbia assumes the role.
2. Former Lieutenant Governors of British Columbia take precedence after the Chief Justice of British Columbia. Precedence among former Lieutenant Governors is governed by the date of their Commissions.
3. Former Premiers of British Columbia take precedence after former Lieutenant Governors. Precedence among former Premiers is determined by the date of their accession to office.
4. Subject to Notes 2 and 3, Heads of Accredited Diplomatic Missions in Ottawa take precedence after the Chief Justice of British Columbia.
5. Members of the Executive Council take precedence from the Ministry for which they are responsible. Precedence of Ministries in British Columbia is determined by the date of origin of the Ministry.
6. Members of the Queen's Privy Council for Canada who reside in British Columbia take precedence after the Leader of the Official Opposition of British Columbia. Privy Councillors who are members of the Cabinet take precedence over those who are not members of the Cabinet by order of their first appointment to the Cabinet. Other Privy Councillors take precedence by order of their appointment to the Queen's Privy Council for Canada.
7. Precedence among ecclesiastical dignitaries is to be governed by the date of their accession to their present office.

8. Members of the Legislative Assembly of British Columbia are followed in precedence by:
 - (a) Members of the Senate who represent British Columbia by order of their appointments; and
 - (b) Members of the House of Commons who represent British Columbia ridings by order of their first election to the House of Commons.

Note: Information received from the Protocol Office of British Columbia, December 1991.

A.15.7

Table of precedence for Prince Edward Island

1. The Lieutenant Governor, or, in his/her official absence, the Administrator
2. The Premier
3. The Chief Justice
4. Former Lieutenant Governors of Prince Edward Island, with relative precedence among them governed by the date of their leaving office
5. Former Premiers of Prince Edward Island, with relative precedence among them governed by the date of their first assumption of office
6. The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly
7. Members of the Executive Council, with relative precedence among them governed by the date of their appointment. In instances when more than one Minister was sworn on the same date, relative precedence shall be determined by the order of their swearing
8. The Leader of the Official Opposition
9. Members of the Queen's Privy Council for Canada residing in Prince Edward Island, with relative precedence among them to, first, members of the Canadian Cabinet and, second, those not of the Cabinet. For the former, relative precedence shall be determined by the date and order of appointment to the Canadian Cabinet; for the latter, by the date and order of their appointment to the Privy Council
10. The Bishop of Charlottetown, the Bishop of Nova Scotia and the President of the Prince Edward Island Ministerial Association, with relative precedence among them governed by the date of their appointment or election to office
11. Justices of the Supreme Court of Prince Edward Island, with relative precedence among them determined by their date of appointment
12. Judges of the County Courts of Prince Edward Island, with relative precedence among them determined by their date of appointment
13. Members of the Legislative Assembly of Prince Edward Island, with relative precedence among them determined by their date of appointment

A.15 - 18

14. Members of the Senate of Canada who represent Prince Edward Island, with relative precedence among them determined by date of appointment
15. Member of the House of Commons for Canada, who represent Prince Edward Island constituencies, with relative precedence among them determined by date of election, and alphabetically for those elected at the same election
16. Deputy Ministers, chairmen and general managers (and their equivalents) of the Government of Prince Edward Island, with relative precedence among them determined by the date of their appointment.

NOTE: On occasions when a ceremony is hosted by or particularly involves any incorporated municipality in Prince Edward Island, the mayor or other elected senior official of that municipality shall rank in precedence immediately after the Premier.

Note: Order of the Lieutenant Governor in Council of October 1972.

A.15.8

Table of precedence for Saskatchewan

1. The Lieutenant Governor of Saskatchewan or the Administrator (see notes 2a and 2b).
2. The Premier of Saskatchewan (see note 2b).
3. The Chief Justice of Saskatchewan (see note 3).
4. The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly (see note 2c).
5. The Deputy Premier, then Members of the Executive Council in relative order of precedence as determined by the Premier.
6. The Leader of the Opposition (see note 2d).
7. The Chief Justice of the Court of Queen's Bench.
8. Superior Court Judges: Judges of the Court of Appeal and the Court of Queen's Bench, with relative precedence among them determined by date of first judicial appointment.
9. Leaders of Religious Denominations: The Archbishop, or Senior Bishop in the Province, of the Anglican Church of Canada; the Archbishop of Regina, or the Senior Bishop in the Province, of the Roman Catholic Church; the Bishop of the Ukrainian Catholic Church; the President, or the Past President or the President-Elect, of the Saskatchewan Conference of the United Church of Canada; the Bishop of the Saskatchewan Synod of the Evangelical Lutheran Church in Canada; the senior representatives in the Province of the Mennonite and Orthodox Churches and of the Jewish Faith. (Relative precedence among the various religious leaders is determined by the date of appointment or election to their present office).
10. The Members of the Legislative Assembly, in the following order: Deputy Speaker; then the Government Whip; then the Opposition Whip; then other Members, with relative precedence to be determined by date of first election to the Legislature (see note 2e).
11. Provincial Court: the Chief Judge of the Provincial Court, then Judges in order of seniority of appointment.

12. The Consular Corps in the Province, in the following order: Dean of the Consular Corps; Consuls-General; Consuls; Vice-Consuls; Consular Agents. (Relative precedence among them is determined by the date of their appointment).
13. Mayors, with precedence given to the mayor of the host municipality and subsequent relative precedence determined by the date of first taking office (see note 4).
14. Aboriginal Leaders: the President of the Federation of Saskatchewan Indian Nations, then chiefs of Saskatchewan Indian Bands in order of seniority of election to office.
15. Senior Officials:
 - (a) the Deputy Minister to the Premier and Cabinet Secretary; the Clerk of the Legislative Assembly; the Ombudsman; the Provincial Auditor.
 - (b) Deputy Ministers; then other Senior Saskatchewan government officials with rank of Deputy Minister as determined by the Executive Council; then Chief Executive Officers of Crown Corporations (relative precedence determined by date of appointment).
16. Universities: The Chancellor of the University of Saskatchewan; the Chancellor of the University of Regina; the President of the University of Saskatchewan; the President of the University of Regina.
17. Police and Military: the Assistant Commissioner of "F" Division, Royal Canadian Mounted Police; the Commanding Officer of Saskatchewan District, Canadian Forces Base; the Commanding Officer of Canadian Forces Base Moose Jaw.

EXPLANATORY NOTES

1. The above Table of Precedence is intended for provincial occasions.
2. On federal-provincial occasions, or on occasions when federal, diplomatic, or foreign or Commonwealth representatives are present, the Table of Precedence for Canada, international protocol rules, and other courtesies may alter the Saskatchewan order. Specific cases are as follows:
 - (a) When present, Her Majesty The Queen has precedence over everyone. Other members of the Royal Family have precedence immediately after the Lieutenant Governor.

- (b) When present, the Governor General and the Prime Minister are granted precedence over the Lieutenant Governor and the Premier respectively on federal-provincial occasions. On provincial occasions, they take precedence after the Lieutenant Governor and the Premier respectively.
 - (c) Heads of diplomatic missions accredited to Canada (Embassies and High Commissions) are given precedence immediately after the Speaker of the Legislative Assembly (#4).
 - (d) Precedence is given immediately after the Leader of the Opposition (#6) to Members of the Queen's Privy Council for Canada, first to Members of the Canadian Cabinet, then to Privy Councillors not members of the Cabinet, in each case relative precedence to be in order of the date of appointment.
 - (e) Precedence is given immediately after the Members of the Legislative Assembly of Saskatchewan (#10) to:
 - (i) Members of the Senate who represent Saskatchewan, relative precedence determined by date of appointment;
 - (ii) Members of the House of Commons who represent Saskatchewan constituencies, relative precedence determined by date of election.
3. Precedence is given immediately after the Chief Justice of Saskatchewan (#3) to former Lieutenant Governors, then former Premiers, then former Chief Justices of Saskatchewan; relative precedence in each sub-category to be determined by the date of first appointment to office. (Former Premiers who continue to hold other elected office are accorded the precedence attached to that office).
 4. On municipal occasions, the Mayor or other senior elected official of the municipality has precedence immediately after the Premier.
 5. When a number of persons were elected or appointed to office on the same date, precedence shall be determined by alphabetical order of their names.
 6. The Chief of Protocol shall be responsible for interpretation of the Table in consultation with the Deputy Minister to the Premier and Cabinet Secretary.

Note: Information received from the Protocol Office of Saskatchewan, December 1991.

A.15.9

Table of precedence for Alberta

1. The Lieutenant Governor of Alberta (Note 1)
2. The Premier of Alberta
3. The Chief Justice of The Court of Appeal of Alberta
4. Former Lieutenant Governors; precedence is determined by date of their Commissions
5. Former Premiers; precedence is determined by the date of their swearing-in ceremony
6. The Speaker of Legislative Assembly of Alberta
7. Ambassadors and High Commissioners accredited to Canada
8. Members of the Executive Council of Alberta, in relative order of precedence as determined by the Premier
9. Leader of the Official Opposition
10. Members of the Privy Council for Canada resident in Alberta, with relative precedence among them to, first, Members of the Canadian Cabinet and second, to those not in Cabinet
11. Members of the Legislative Assembly of Alberta with precedence governed by the date of their first election to the Legislature
12. Members of the Senate, who represent Alberta, relative precedence determined by date of appointment
13. Members of the House of Commons who represent Alberta constituencies, relative precedence determined by date of election
14. Chief Justice, Alberta Court of Queen's Bench
15. Justices of Alberta Court of Appeal
16. Justices of the Alberta Court of Queen's Bench
17. Heads of religious denominations

18. Heads of Consular Posts: Consuls-General; Consuls; Vice-Consuls; Consular Agents (Precedence is determined by the date that definitive recognition is given by the Governor General)
19. Chief Judge of the Provincial Court followed by judges in seniority of appointment
20. Mayors
21. Aboriginal Leaders: Chiefs of the Treaty First Nations in Alberta, in order of seniority of election to office; President of Metis Settlements General Council; President of Metis Nation of Alberta
22. Senior Officials:
 - (a) the Deputy Minister to the Premier and Cabinet Secretary; the Clerk of the Legislative Assembly; the Ombudsman; the Provincial Auditor; the Chief Electoral Officer; the Ethics Commissioner, and the Information and Privacy Commissioner
 - (b) Deputy Ministers; then Senior Alberta government officials with rank of Deputy Minister as determined by the Executive Council; then Chief Executive Officers of Crown Corporations (relative precedence determined by date of appointment)
23. Universities: The Chancellor of the University of Alberta; Chancellor of the University of Calgary; Chancellor of the University of Lethbridge; Chairman of the Board, University of Alberta; Chairman of the Board, University of Calgary; Chairman of the Board, University of Lethbridge; Chairman of the Board, Athabasca University; President of the University of Alberta; President of the University of Calgary; President of the University of Lethbridge; President of the Athabasca University
24. Police and Military: the Assistant Commissioner of "K" Division, Royal Canadian Mounted Police; General of the Land Forces Western Area Headquarters; Commanding Officers of Canadian Forces Bases Calgary, Cold Lake, Edmonton Suffield, Wainwright

The Chief of protocol shall be responsible for interpretation of the Table in consultation with the Deputy Minister of Federal and Intergovernmental Affairs.

Prepared by Alberta Protocol Office, April 1997

NOTES

The Table of Precedence for Alberta lists categories in their order of precedence as they apply to ceremonies and occasions of a provincial nature. At provincial functions where federal, foreign or diplomatic dignitaries are present, circumstances may dictate that provisions of the Table of Precedence of Canada or international rules of protocol be observed thus giving these dignitaries precedence over certain provincial categories.

1. In the absence of the Lieutenant Governor from the Province or his/her inability to carry out the duties of Lieutenant Governor for any reason, the Administrator of the Province takes the Lieutenant Governor's place of precedence.

A.15.10

**Order of precedence/
Government of Newfoundland and Labrador**

1. Lieutenant Governor
2. Premier
3. Chief Justice of Newfoundland
4. Chief Justice - Trial Division
5. Speaker of the House of Assembly
6. Provincial Cabinet Ministers
7. Heads of Denominations
8. Puisne Judges
9. Leader of the Opposition
10. Former Lieutenant Governors
11. Former Premiers
12. Former Chief Justices of Newfoundland
13. Members of the Privy Council (in Cabinet)
14. Members of the Privy Council (not in Cabinet)
15. Members of the Senate
16. Members of the House of Commons
17. Members of the House of Assembly
18. Diplomatic and Consular Representatives
19. Head of Canadian Forces (Regular Force)
20. Mayors of the cities of St. John's, Corner Brook and Mt. Pearl
21. Chancellor, Memorial University

22. Chairman, Board of Regents, Memorial University
23. President and Vice-Chancellor, Memorial University
24. Deputy Ministers and equivalents
25. Chief Judge - Provincial Court

Note: Information received from the Protocol Office of Newfoundland,
December 1991.

A.15.11

Table of precedence for the Yukon

1. The Commissioner of the Yukon
2. The President of the Executive Council, designated as Government Leader
3. The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly of the Yukon
4. The Justice of the Supreme Court
5. Members of the Executive Council of the Yukon
6. The Leader of the Official Opposition
7. Members of the Legislative Assembly of the Yukon with precedence governed by the date of their first election to the Legislature
8. Federal Member of Parliament for the Yukon
9. Member of the Senate from the Yukon
10. Yukon Indian Band Chiefs and the Executive Council of Yukon Indians
11. Bishops of Roman Catholic and Anglican faiths with precedence determined by order of appointment
12. R.C.M.P. Divisional Commander
13. Armed Forces Commander
14. Territorial Court Judges
15. Mayor of Whitehorse
16. Yukon Government Deputy Ministers and senior Yukon Government officials with the status of Deputy Ministers, with precedence according to the respective dates of their appointments to the position

Note: Members of the Federal Cabinet and Privy Councillors not of the Cabinet would be given precedence immediately after the Government Leader, when in attendance at Territorial functions.



Chapter B

Emblems

B

EMBLEMS

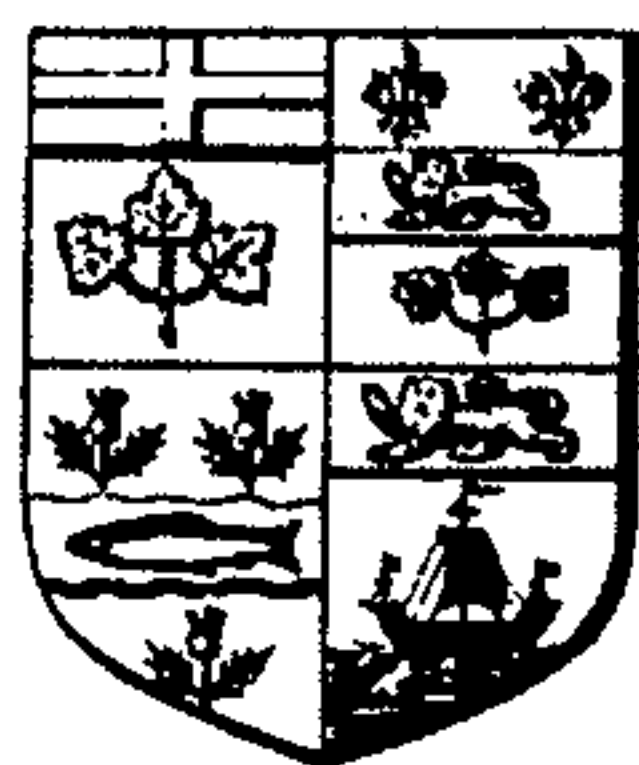
B.1

The arms of Canada

B.1.1

The royal grant

During the first decades after Confederation, questions relating to the arms of Canada had not received the attention they deserved. The Royal arms of the United Kingdom were then freely used to identify the offices of the Government of Canada.



Shortly after Confederation, a Great Seal was required and a design was approved by a royal warrant dated May 26, 1868. This design displayed, quarterly, the arms of the original four provinces of the new federation: Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. It was never used as the Great Seal, but was gradually adopted as the arms of Canada (for a reason unexplained by history, another Great Seal was adopted for Canada representing Queen Victoria and the throne of her coronation; this Great Seal is however altered at the beginning of each reign, so as to show the effigy of the new Sovereign).

When other provinces joined Confederation, the attempt to add the arms of the new provinces to this federal composite design resulted in a crowded and confused appearance. For this reason, the Canadian Government submitted a request to the Sovereign for a grant of arms. This request was approved and the arms assigned to Canada were appointed and declared in the proclamation (text on next page) of His Majesty King George V dated November 21, 1921. This action was proceeded with on the basis of an Order of the Governor General in Council (P.C. 1921-1496) dated April 30, 1921.

PROCLAMATION OF 1921**“BY THE KING - A Proclamation**

Declaring His Majesty's Pleasure concerning the Ensigns Armorial of the Dominion of Canada

George R.I.

WHEREAS We have received a request from the Governor General in Council of Our Dominion of Canada that the Arms or Ensigns Armorial herein after described should be assigned to Our said Dominion.

We do hereby, by and with the advice of Our Privy Council, and in exercise of the powers conferred by the first Article of the Union with Ireland Act, 1800, appoint and declare that the Arms or Ensigns Armorial of the Dominion of Canada shall be Tierced in fesse the first and second divisions containing the quarterly coat following, namely, 1st Gules three lions passant guardant in pale or, 2nd, Or a lion rampant within a double tressure flory-counter-flory gules, 3rd, Azure a harp or stringed argent, 4th, Azure, three fleurs-de-lis or, and the third division Argent three maple leaves conjoined on one stem proper. And upon a Royal helmet mantled argent doubled gules the Crest, that is to day, On a wreath of the colours argent and gules a lion passant guardant or imperially crowned proper and holding in the dexter paw a maple leaf gules. And for Supporters On the dexter a lion rampant or holding a lance argent, point or, flying therefrom to the dexter the Union Flag, and on the sinister A unicorn argent armed crined and unguled or, gorged with a coronet composed of crosses-patée and fleurs-de-lis a chain affixed thereto reflexed of the last, and holding a like lance flying therefrom to the sinister a banner azure charged with three fleurs-de-lis or; the whole ensigned with the Imperial Crown proper and below the shield upon a wreath composed of roses, thistles, shamrocks and lillies a scroll azure inscribed with the motto A mari usque ad mare, and Our Will and Pleasure further is that the Arms or Ensigns Armorial aforesaid shall be used henceforth, as far as conveniently may be, on all occasions wherein the said Arms or Ensigns Armorial of the Dominion of Canada ought to be used.

Given at Our Court at Buckingham Palace, this twenty-first day of November, in the year of Our Lord One thousand nine hundred and twenty-one, and in the twelfth year of Our Reign.

GOD SAVE THE KING”

THE PROCLAMATION

The royal proclamation makes special reference to the request by the Government of Canada and states that the grant of arms or flags is made on the advice of the Privy Council and by the powers conferred by the first Article of the British statute "The Union of Ireland Act, 1800". Passed in the reign of King George III, it empowered the Crown to grant, by proclamation, arms and flags to the United Kingdom and its dependencies.

A special committee was mandated by the Governor General in 1919 to study the question on the arms of Canada. It was composed of:

Thomas Mulvey, K.C., Under Secretary of State, Chairman;
Sir Joseph Pope, K.C.M.G., C.V.O., I.S.O.,
Under Secretary of State for External Affairs;
A.G. Doughty, C.M.G., Litt. D., Dominion Archivist;
Major-General W.G. Gwatkin, C.B., C.M.G.,
Department of Militia and Defence.



The present design of the arms of Canada was drawn by Mrs. Cathy Bursey-Sabourin, Fraser Herald at the Canadian Heraldic Authority, office of the Governor General of Canada, and faithfully depicts the arms described in the words of the Royal Proclamation dated November 21, 1921. The present design was approved in 1994 and shows a ribbon behind the shield with the motto of the Order of Canada. This version replaces a former design drawn by Mr. Alan Beddoe.

B.1.2

Description

THE SHIELD



The shield at the centre of the Coat of Arms is the most important part of the design. In heraldry, it is the shield "that tells the story" of a country. In Canada's shield, the first and second divisions depict four emblems that symbolize the four founding peoples of Canada. The third division makes it distinctly Canadian.

- **The three royal lions of England**

The first quarter consists of the three gold lions of England walking and shown full face, on a red background. The lion is the oldest device known in heraldry and, as "king of beasts", was adopted by kings of Leon, Norway and Denmark as their emblem. However, the origin of the three royal lions of England still remains a mystery.

In the 11th century, Henry I, known as “the lion of justice”, may have been the first English king to use a lion. It is uncertain as to why a second lion suddenly appeared. When Henry II married Eleanor of Aquitaine, whose family emblem was also a lion, it is believed that he added the third lion. There is no question that, when he led his English troops in the Crusades, Richard I, “the Lion-Hearted” carried a shield emblazoned with three golden lions on a red background. To this day they have been the royal symbol of England.

- **The royal lion of Scotland**

The second quarter consists of a red lion rearing on the left hind foot, within a red double border with fleurs-de-lis, on a gold background. The royal lion of Scotland was probably first used by King William, who was known as “the lion”. However it was certainly used by his son, Alexander III, who made Scotland an independent nation.

- **The royal Irish harp of Tara**

The third quarter is a gold harp with silver strings, on a blue background. North of the present city of Dublin, there is a hill called Tara which for centuries was the religious and cultural capital of ancient Ireland. If you visit the site, you will see a 750 foot earthen work that is said to have been the site of the banqueting hall of Irish kings. Thomas Moore recalls the history of this site in one of the most famous of all Irish lyrics that begins: “The harp that once through Tara's hall the soul of music shed...” There is a legend, recorded in C.W. Scott-Giles monumental work The Romance of Heraldry, that this harp was found and came into the possession of the pope. In the 16th century, Henry VIII suppressed the Irish people in his attempt to become the lawful successor to the kings of ancient Ireland. The pope sent the harp of Tara to England whereupon Henry added its likeness to his royal shield. From this time it has remained a symbol of Ireland.

- **The royal fleurs-de-lis of France**

The fourth quarter depicts three gold fleurs-de-lis, on a blue background. The fleurs-de-lis was the first heraldic emblem raised in Canada. On July 24, 1534, Jacques Cartier landed at Gaspé and erected a cross, affixed with the symbol of his sovereign and the royal house of France.

- **The three maple leaves**

To complete the design of the shield, a Canadian symbol was required. Three red maple leaves conjoined on one stem, on a silver or white background, were then added. Throughout the 19th century, the maple leaf had gradually become closely identified with Canada. The maple leaf had been worn as a symbol of Canada during the visit of the Prince of Wales in 1860. The song "The Maple Leaf Forever", written by the Toronto school teacher Alexander Muir in 1868 had become Canada's national song. During World War I, the maple leaf was incorporated into the badge of every Canadian regiment. It was most appropriate that three maple leaves were given a commanding position within the shield, which made it unmistakably "Canadian".

THE RIBBON



On the advice of the Prime Minister of Canada, Her Majesty The Queen approved, on July 12, 1994 that the arms of Canada be augmented with a ribbon with the motto of the Order of Canada: "Desiderantes Meliorem Patriam". (They desire a better country).

THE HELM AND THE MANTLING



The helm (heaume or helmet), which in heraldry is usually placed above the shield of arms, not only serves as a means of displaying the crest, but also has a significance of its own, since its type denotes the rank of the person bearing the arms. On the helm lies a mantling or lambrequin. The mantle, originally, was to protect the head and shoulders of the wearer from the sun's heat. It has become a decorative accessory to the crest and shield.

The arms of Canada show a royal helmet, which is a barred helm of gold looking outward and draped in a mantle of white and red which are the official colours of Canada.

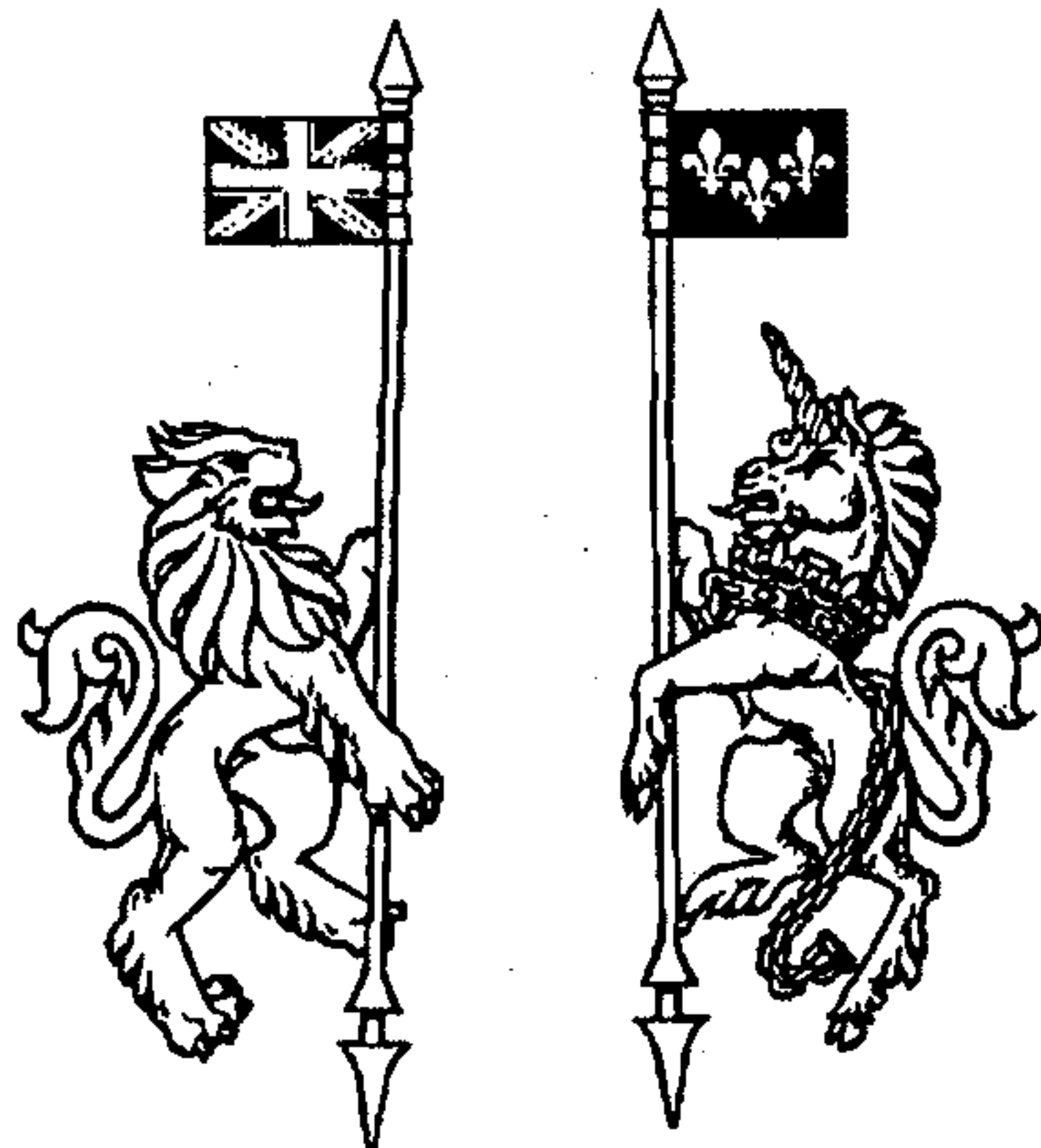
THE CREST



On the royal helmet is the crest. This symbol consists of a wreath or ring of twisted white and red silk on which stands a crowned gold lion holding in its right paw a red maple leaf. The lion is a symbol of valor and courage.

The crest is used to mark the sovereignty of Canada. It is now the symbol used on the Governor General's Standard.

THE SUPPORTERS



The figures that stand on either side of the shield are known in heraldry as "supporters" and are often depicted in a ferocious manner. The King of England chose two lions while Scotland chose two unicorns.

When James VI of Scotland became James I of England in 1603, he chose one lion and one unicorn as the supporters of his royal shield. Canada adopted the same pattern and used a lion on the shield's right holding a gold pointed silver lance from which flies the Royal Union flag, and

a unicorn with gold horn, mane and hoofs, on the shield's left. Around its neck is a gold and chained coronet of crosses and fleurs-de-lis. The unicorn holds a lance flying a banner of royalist France, namely three gold fleurs-de-lis, on a blue background. The two banners represent the two principal founding nations that had established Canada's most enduring laws and customs.

THE MOTTO



Canada's motto "A Mari usque ad Mare" (From sea to sea) is based on biblical scripture: "He shall have dominion from sea to sea and from the river unto the ends of the earth (Psalm 72:8)". The first official use of this motto came

in 1906 when it was engraved on the head of the mace of the Legislative Assembly of the new Province of Saskatchewan. The wording of the motto came to the attention of Sir Joseph Pope, then Under Secretary of State, who was impressed with its meaning. He later proposed it as motto for the new design of the coat of arms, which was approved by Order in Council on April 21, 1921 and by Royal Proclamation on November 21, 1921.

THE FOUR FLORAL EMBLEMS



At the base of Canada's Royal Arms are found the floral emblems of the four founding nations of Canada.

- **English rose**

The rose first became the symbol of England when Henry III married Eleanor of Provence and the golden rose of Provence became England's new floral symbol. From this golden rose eventually came the red rose of the House of Lancaster and the white rose of the House of York.

- **Scottish thistle**

There is a legend that, in 1010 when they attempted to capture Scotland, the Danes landed secretly at night. As they approached Stains Castle they removed their shoes to avoid making any noise. When they reached the castle's moat, they jumped in not realizing that the moat was dry and overgrown with thistles. The screams of the bare-footed Danes roused the garrison. The castle and Scotland were both saved and, according to legend, it is in memory of that night that the thistle became the floral emblem of Scotland.

- **Irish shamrock**

In Irish legends, it is said that when he brought Christianity to Ireland, Saint Patrick used the three petals of the shamrock to illustrate the Holy Trinity. As a result, the shamrock became the floral emblem of Christian Ireland.

- **The French fleurs-de-lis**

Following its adoption as the symbol of France's king, the fleurs-de-lis also became the symbol of Christian France. By the 13th and 14th centuries, the three petals of the lily of France were being described by writers as symbols of faith, wisdom and chivalry. As in Ireland, they also came to be seen as symbols of the Holy Trinity.

THE IMPERIAL CROWN



On top of the "achievement of the arms of Canada" is the imperial crown which is indicative of the presence of a monarch as Canada's Head of State.

The shapes of symbols in a coat of arms can be altered by an artist since heraldry is an art as well as a science. However the symbols themselves can never be changed without formal approval. In 1957, when Canada's arms were slightly modified to produce a cleaner more contemporary design, the Government replaced the original Tudor crown of the 1921 design by a crown that would represent not just one of the royal families of English monarchs, but centuries of kings and queens of England. In accordance with the

expressed wishes of Queen Elizabeth II, the St. Edward crown is now on the arms of Canada. It is this crown that has been used for the coronation of kings and queens in Westminster Abbey for centuries.

THE USE OF THE ARMS

The arms of Canada are the arms of the Sovereign; they signify national sovereignty or ownership. They are used by Canada on federal government possessions such as buildings, official seals, money, passports, proclamations, publications, etc.; as well as rank badges of some members of the Canadian Forces. The design of the shield of the arms was Canada's badge in the Canadian Red Ensign, Canada's flag until the adoption of the National Flag in 1965. The Trade Marks Act, chapter T-11, Revised Statutes of 1985 (sect. 9), protects the Arms of Canada against unauthorized commercial use.

Permission to use the arms of Canada in commercial activities may be obtained by writing to the Manager, Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion, Department of Canadian Heritage [Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0M5, Fax (819) 997-8550], attaching a sketch or drawing showing the intended use.

B

EMBLEMS

B.2

National anthem: O Canada

B.2.1

History of "O Canada"

Many people think of Calixa Lavallée as an obscure music teacher who dashed off a patriotic song in a moment of inspiration. The truth is quite different. Lavallée was, in fact, known as "Canada's national musician" and it was on this account that he was asked to compose the music for a poem written by Judge Adolphe-Basile Routhier.

The occasion was the "Congrès national des Canadiens-Français" in 1880, which was being held at the same time as the St. Jean-Baptiste Day celebrations.

There had been some thought of holding a competition for a national hymn to have his first performance on St. Jean-Baptiste Day, June 24, but by January the committee in charge decided there was not enough time, so the Lieutenant Governor of Quebec, the Honourable Théodore Robitaille, commissioned Judge Routhier to write a hymn and Lavallée to compose the tune. Lavallée made a number of drafts before the tune we know was greeted with enthusiasm by his musical friends. It is said that in the excitement of success Lavallée rushed to show his music to the Lieutenant Governor without even stopping to sign the manuscript.

The first performance took place on June 24, 1880 at a banquet in the "Pavillon des Patineurs" in Quebec City as the climax of a "Mosaïque sur des airs populaires canadiens" arranged by Joseph Vézina, a prominent composer and bandmaster.

Although this first performance of "O Canada" with Routhier's French words was well received on the evening, it does not seem to have made a lasting impression at that time. Arthur Lavigne, a Quebec musician and music dealer, published it without copyright but there was no rush to reprint. Lavallée's obit in 1891 does not mention it among his accomplishments, nor does a biography of Judge Routhier published in 1898. French Canada is represented in the 1887 edition of the University of Toronto song book by "Vive la canadienne", "A la claire fontaine" and "Un canadien errant".

English Canada in general probably first heard "O Canada" when school children sang it when the Duke and Duchess of Cornwall and York (later King George V and Queen Mary) toured Canada in 1901. Five years later Whaley & Royce in Toronto published the music with the French text and a translation into English made by Dr. Thomas Bedford Richardson, a Toronto doctor. The Mendelssohn Choir used the Richardson lyrics in one of their performances about this time and Judge Routhier and the French press complimented the author.

Richardson version:

O Canada! Our fathers' land of old
Thy brow is crown'd with leaves of red and gold.
Beneath the shade of the Holy Cross
Thy children own their birth
No stains thy glorious annals gloss
Since valour shield thy hearth.
Almighty God! On thee we call
Defend our rights, fend this nation's thrall,
Defend our rights, fend this nation's thrall.

In 1908 Collier's Weekly inaugurated its Canadian edition with a competition for an English text to Lavallée's music. It was won by Mercy E. Powell McCulloch, but her version did not take.

McCulloch version:

O Canada! in praise of thee we sing;
From echoing hills our anthems proudly ring.
With fertile plains and mountains grand
With lakes and rivers clear,
Eternal beauty, thou dost stand
Throughout the changing year.
Lord God of Hosts! We now implore
Bless our dear land this day and evermore,
Bless our dear land this day and evermore.

Since then many English versions have been written for "O Canada". Poet Wilfred Campbell wrote one. So did Augustus Bridle, Toronto critic. Some were written for the 1908 tercentenary of Quebec City. One version became popular in British Columbia...

Buchan version:

O Canada, our heritage, our love
Thy worth we praise all other lands above.
From sea to sea throughout their length
From Pole to borderland,
At Britain's side, whate'er betide
Unflinchingly we'll stand.
With hearts we sing, "God save the King",
Guide then one Empire wide, do we implore,
And prosper Canada from shore to shore.

However the version that gained the widest currency was made in 1908 by Robert Stanley Weir, a lawyer and at the time Recorder of the City of Montréal. This is the version which was published in an official form for the Diamond Jubilee of Confederation in 1927, and has since been generally accepted in English speaking Canada.

Weir version:

O Canada! Our home and native land
True patriot love in all thy sons command.
With glowing hearts we see thee rise
The True North strong and free,
And stand on guard, O Canada
We stand on guard for thee.
O Canada, glorious and free!
We stand on guard, we stand on guard for thee.
O Canada, we stand on guard for thee.

Judge Routhier's original version remains unchanged.

Routhier version:

O Canada! Terre de nos aïeux,
Ton front est ceint de fleurons glorieux!
Car ton bras sait porter l'épée
Il sait porter la croix!
Ton histoire est une épopée
Des plus brillants exploits
Et ta valeur, de foi trempée
Protégera nos foyers et nos droits,
Protégera nos foyers et nos droits.

Many musicians have made arrangements of "O Canada" but there appears to be a scarcity of recordings suitable for various purposes.

• **Calixa Lavallée**

Calixa Lavallée was a "canadien errant", a man who left his country for greener fields, but who nevertheless loved Canada and returned to it, returned with a reputation well earned in the United States and France to become the "national musician" of Canada. He was, in his time, a composer of operettas, at least one symphony, various occasional pieces and songs; he was a pianist and organist of considerable note and he was a teacher who wanted to found the first Canadian Conservatory.

The famous Canadian choral conductor Augustus Stephen Vogt said of him: "I became acquainted with Lavallée in the 80's of the last century, when I was in Boston as a student of music, and he impressed me as a man of extraordinary ability - not merely as a clever executant of the piano, and not merely as an adroit deviser of pretty melodies and sensuous harmonies, but as a genuinely creative artist, a pure musical genius".

Calixa Lavallée was born in Verchères, Quebec, on December 28, 1842, the son of Augustin Lavallée, a woodcutter and blacksmith, who became an instrument repairman, bandleader and music teacher, and of Marie-Caroline Valentine (from Scottish ancestry). Later when the family moved to St-Hyacinthe, the father worked for the famous organ-builder Joseph Casavant and led the town band. Calixa showed talent early and played the organ in the cathedral at the age of eleven. Two years later he gave a piano recital at the Théâtre Royal in Montréal.

In Montréal Lavallée met Léon Derome, a butcher who loved music. He became Lavallée's lifelong patron and friend, often coming to his aid in bad times.

About this time, Calixa tired of regular lessons and left Montréal to try his luck in the United States. In New Orleans, he won a competition which in turn won him a job as accompanist to the famous Spanish violinist Olivera. After touring with Olivera in Brazil and the West Indies, Lavallée joined the Northern army during the American Civil War.

Leaving the U.S. army as a lieutenant, Lavallée returned to Montréal where he gave piano lessons and played cornet in a theatre orchestra.

In 1865 he returned to the United States to teach and give a series of concert tours. He married and began to work with Arnold de Thiers, with whom he composed a comic opera called "Loulou". The night before its first performance, the owner of the opera house was shot and the theatre closed. Lavallée, who had been conductor and artistic director of the theatre, the New York Grand Opera House, found himself out of a job.

He returned to Montréal in 1872 to a warm welcome from his friends, and had soon set up a studio with Jehin Prume and Rosita del Vecchio, well-known musicians.

Success in Montréal brought him the fulfilment of a lifelong dream, to continue his musical education in Paris. A group of friends led by Derome made him a monthly allowance while he studied with Bazin, Boieldieu and Marmontel. A Lavallée symphony was performed by a Paris orchestra in 1874 and his teachers predicted a great future for him.

Lavallée decided to devote his life to the establishment of a conservatory in Canada. To prove that talent existed, he mounted a Gounod drama with an all-Canadian cast of 80. The venture was a great success and Lavallée had high hopes of interesting the government in his idea. But although the public responded warmly to his productions, official quarters gave nothing but vague promises.

Lavallée became the choirmaster and organist at St. Patrick's Church and interested himself in public causes. He produced a mammoth cantata in honour of the Governor General, Marquis of Lorne, and his wife, The Princess Louise, and collected 300 musicians to play it on June 11, 1879. The climax was a sensation - a contrapuntal blending of "Vive la canadienne", "Comin' through the rye" and "God Save The Queen", to symbolize the blending of the French and English elements in Canada.

Lavallée, now considered Canada's greatest musician, had a personal triumph but a financial disaster. The provincial government had guaranteed the performance but never came through with the deficit. Lavallée is reported to have said: "Le gouvernement Joly a reçu la Princesse. Mais c'est moi qui ai payé le violon". (The Government has received the Princess. But, it is I who paid the violin).

It was during this Quebec period, in 1880 that Lavallée composed the music of "O Canada" for the "Congrès national des Canadiens-Français". But he could see nothing ahead but routine teaching and playing, so once again he took off for the United States.

Things took a turn for the better. He was appointed an organist and choirmaster; he toured with the famous Hungarian soprano Etelka Gerster; he increased his composing. Many of his works were performed including "Tiq", a "melodramatic musical satire" on the Indian question and his comic opera "The Widow". As a member of the Music Teachers' National Association, he organized a number of very successful concerts, and finally, in 1887, was elected president.

In 1888 Lavallée represented the professional musicians of America in London and introduced American compositions in London where the Lord Mayor gave a dinner in his honour.

Lavallée's health had been poor for some years and after his return to Boston became much worse. By the autumn of 1890 he was bedridden and in financial straits. He died on January 21, 1891, at the age of 49, leaving some 60 works, only about half of which have been found.

Lavallée was buried near Boston but his body was brought back to Canada in 1933 and now rests in Montréal Cemetery Côte-des-Neiges.

- **Sir Adolphe-Basile Routhier**

Adolphe Routhier (1839-1920) was a distinguished lawyer who, like many members of his profession, was active in the community life of both his profession and his co-religionists. He was appointed a judge in 1873 and was a founding member of the Royal Society of Canada. He was probably better known as a poet than as a judge, and it was natural that the Honourable Théodore Robitaille, Lieutenant Governor of Quebec, should turn to him to write the words of a hymn for the great "Congrès national des Canadiens-Français" of 1880. Since Routhier was president of the Congress at the time, a happier choice could hardly have been made. His poem for "O Canada!" was widely praised on its first presentation.

Routhier, who wrote under the name of Jean Piquefort, was later Chief Justice of Quebec until his retirement from the Bench in 1906.

- **The Honourable Robert Stanley Weir**

Robert Stanley Weir (1856-1926) was born in Hamilton, in what was then Canada West. He took all his higher education in Montréal, and was qualified for both teaching and the law. He chose law and rose rapidly in the profession, becoming in due course, like Routhier, a judge first as Recorder of the City of Montréal and later to the Exchequer Court of Canada (now the Federal Court of Canada). He wrote both learned legal works and poetry, and his fame as a writer won him election as a Fellow of the Royal Society which Routhier had helped found.

Weir had been a Member of the Quebec Legislative Assembly for Argenteuil from 1903 to 1910, during which period he served in the Parent and Gouin Ministries as Minister without portfolio, Minister of Public Works or Speaker of the Legislative Assembly.

- **Parliamentary action**

By the time the World War broke out in 1914, "O Canada" was the best known patriotic song in Canada, edging out "The Maple Leaf Forever" and others less well-known today.

- 1924 - The association of Canadian Clubs passed a unanimous resolution recommending the Weir version as suitable for use at Club meetings.

Since then the I.O.D.E. and the Canadian Authors' Association have endorsed it and in 1958 the Native Sons of Canada found in favour of it.

- 1927 - An official version of "O Canada" was authorized for singing in Canadian schools and for use at public functions.

- 1942 - July 27 - The Prime Minister, the Right Honourable William Lyon Mackenzie King, was asked if he did not think this an appropriate time for proclaiming a national anthem. He replied that "There are times and seasons for all things and this time of war when there are other more important questions with which parliament has to deal, we might well continue to follow what has become the custom in Canada in recent years of regarding "God Save The King" and "O Canada" each as national anthems and entitled to similar recognition." He said further that this was his opinion, his government's opinion and he had no doubt it was the opinion of most people in the country.

Some years later, his successor as Prime Minister, the Right Honourable Louis St-Laurent made a similar statement.

- 1964 - A government resolution authorized the formation of a special joint committee to consider the status of "God Save The Queen" and "O Canada".

- 1966 - January 31 - The Prime Minister, the Right Honourable Lester B. Pearson, placed a notice of motion on the order paper "That the government be authorized to take such steps as may be necessary to provide that "O Canada" shall be the national anthem of Canada while "God Save The Queen" shall be the royal anthem of Canada.

- 1967 - March 15 - The special joint committee unanimously recommends that the government be authorized to adopt forthwith the music for "O Canada" composed by Calixa Lavallée as the music of the national anthem of Canada with the following notation added to the sheet music: With dignity, not too slowly.

"God Save The Queen" was found to be in the public domain as the royal anthem of Canada, but for "O Canada" the committee deemed it "essential to take such steps as are necessary to appropriate the copyright to the music providing that it shall belong to Her Majesty in right of Canada for all time. This provision would also include that no other person shall be entitled to copyright in the music or any arrangements or adaptations thereof."

The committee recommended further study of the lyrics. It discarded an otherwise acceptable bilingual version as being difficult for other ethnic groups in Canada to accept. It suggested keeping the original French version and using the Weir English version with minor changes - that is replacing two of the "Stand on guard" phrases with "From far and wide" and "God keep our land".

There was no trouble with the music copyright which had by now descended to Gordon V. Thompson. They were willing to sell for \$1, but the heirs of Judge Weir objected to the changes in the original version. Since Judge Weir died in 1926, the Weir version would not come into public domain until 1976. There was some doubt that the Weir family had legal grounds for objection since Thompson apparently held copyright on both music and English words. However the committee preferred to settle the matter amicably if at all possible. The Government acquired the rights from G.V. Thompson in 1970.

The version recommended by the committee:

O Canada, our home and native land
True patriot love in all thy sons command.
With glowing hearts we see thee rise
The True North strong and free,
From far and wide, O Canada
We stand on guard for thee.
God keep our land glorious and free
O Canada we stand on guard for thee,
O Canada we stand on guard for thee.

- 1968 - February 28 - The Mixed Special Committee recommended unanimously that the government be authorized to adopt forthwith the music composed by Lavallée, that Routhier's french words be adopted without being amended and that Weir's words be modified.
- 1972 - February 28 - The Secretary of State of Canada, the Honourable Gérard Pelletier, presented a bill in the House of Commons proposing the adoption of "O Canada" as the national anthem of Canada. The recommendations of the 1967 Committee are incorporated in the bill, which did not receive further study in Parliament and died on the order paper. The same legislation was reintroduced by Mr. Pelletier's successors at further sessions of Parliament; no action was ever taken.
- 1974 - October 4 - The Secretary of State of Canada, the Honourable Hugh Faulkner, presented the same bill. Bill C-11 died on the order paper on the first session of the 30th Parliament.

- 1976 - October 21 – The Secretary of State of Canada, the Honourable John Roberts, presented another bill related to the national anthem. Bill C-10 was not tabled in 2nd reading before the end of the second session of Parliament.
- 1977 - October 28 – At the beginning of the third session, Mr. Roberts presented again Bill C-9, which had the same fate as the first three versions.
- 1978 - April 10 – The member of Parliament, H. Herbert, presented Bill C-438 proposing the adoption of the national anthem based on the recommended versions of the Government as founded in Bill C-9. These versions proposed, however, the substitution of the “native land” with the “cherished land” in the english version. The proposed bill was unsuccessful as were previous measures relating to “O Canada”.
- 1980 - June 18 – The Secretary of State of Canada, the Honourable Francis Fox, presented a bill, similar to previously presented bills, on “O Canada”, fulfilling a promise made earlier in the House that “O Canada” be proclaimed as Canada's national anthem as soon as possible in this year of the centenary of the first rendition. The bill was unanimously accepted by the House of Commons and the Senate on June 27; Royal assent was given the same day.

July 1 – The Governor General, His Excellency the Right Honourable Edward Schreyer, proclaimed the Act respecting the National Anthem of Canada, thus making “O Canada” an official symbol of the country. A public ceremony was held at noon on Parliament Hill in front of thousands of Canadians. Descendants of Weir and Routhier were on the official platform, as well as the successor of Robitaille, the Honourable Jean-Pierre Côté.

• **English translation of Routhier's version**

O Canada! Land of our forefathers
Thy brow is wreathed with a glorious garland of flowers.
As in thy arm ready to wield the sword,
So also is it ready to carry the cross.
Thy history is an epic of the most brilliant exploits.

Ch. Thy valour steeped in faith
Will protect our homes and our rights
Will protect our homes and our rights.

• **Original poem by Weir**

1. O Canada! Our home and native land!
True patriot love in all thy sons command.
With glowing hearts we see thee rise,
The True North strong and free;
And stand on guard, O Canada,
We stand on guard for thee.

Refrain

O Canada! Glorious and free!
We stand on guard, we stand on guard for thee.
O Canada! We stand on guard for thee.

2. O Canada! Where pines and maples grow.
Great prairies spread and lordly rivers flow.
How dear to us thy broad domain,
From East to Western Sea!
Thou land of hope for all who toil!
Thou True North strong and free.

Refrain

O Canada! Glorious and free! etc.

3. O Canada! Beneath thy shining skies
May stalwart sons and gentle maidens rise
To keep thee steadfast thro' the years
From East to Western sea,
Our own beloved native land,
Our True North strong and free!

Refrain

O Canada! Glorious and free! etc.

4. Ruler supreme Who hearest humble pray'r,
Hold our Dominion in Thy loving care.
Help us to find O God in Thee
A lasting rich reward,
As waiting for the better day,
We ever stand on guard.

Refrain

O Canada! Glorious and free! etc.

B.2.2

Music and lyrics

As the National Anthem Act only sets the melody for the anthem, musicians are free to arrange the score to suit their requirements.

There is no copyright on the melody and the words of the national anthem, the Act having declared them to be in the public domain. It is possible, however, to copyright the arrangements made to the melody.

It is possible to translate the words of the national anthem in languages other than English or French; it should be kept in mind, however, that this translated version will not have an official status.

B.2-12



CHAPTER N-2

CHAPITRE N-2

An Act respecting the national anthem of
Canada

Loi concernant l'hymne national du Canada

Short title

1. This Act may be cited as the *National Anthem Act*. 1980-81-82-83, c. 5, s. 1.

1. Titre abrégé : «*Loi sur l'hymne national*». Titre abrégé
1980-81-82-83, ch. 5, art. 1.

National
anthem

2. The words and music of the song "O
Canada", as set out in the schedule, are desig-
nated as the national anthem of Canada. 1980-
81-82-83, c. 5, s. 2.

2. L'hymne national du Canada est «O
Canada», dont les paroles et la musique sont
reproduites à l'annexe. 1980-81-82-83, ch. 5,
art. 2. Hymne
national

Public domain

3. The words and music of the national
anthem of Canada are hereby declared to be in
the public domain. 1980-81-82-83, c. 5, s.3.

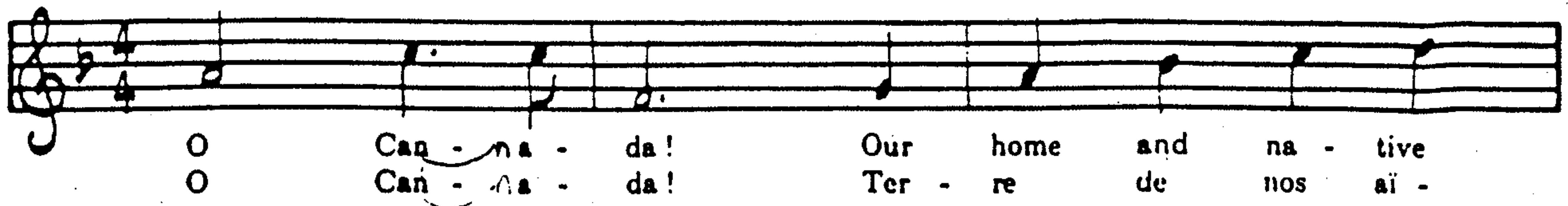
3. Les paroles et la musique de l'hymne
national du Canada appartiennent au domaine
public. 1980-81-82-83, ch. 5, art. 3. Domaine public

SCHEDULE/ANNEXE

(Section 2/article 2)

NATIONAL ANTHEM—HYMNE NATIONAL

O CANADA



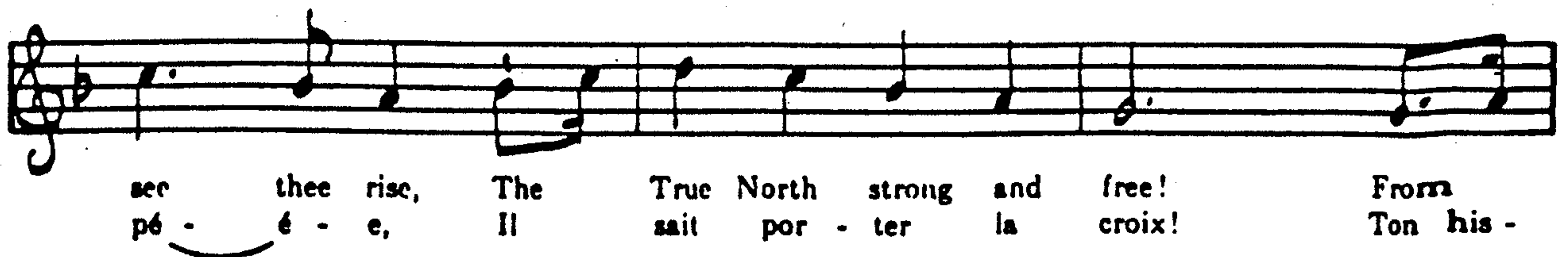
O Canada! Our home and native land!
O Canada! Terre de nos aïeux,
True patriot love in all thy sons command.



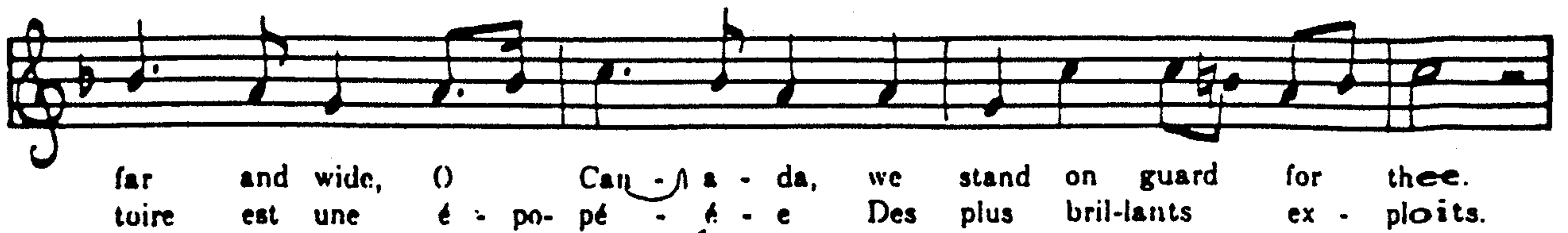
True patriot love in all thy sons command.
Ton front est ceint de fleurs
glorieuses!



With glowing hearts we see thee rise,
Car ton bras sait porter l'é-
toile
Il sait porter la croix!



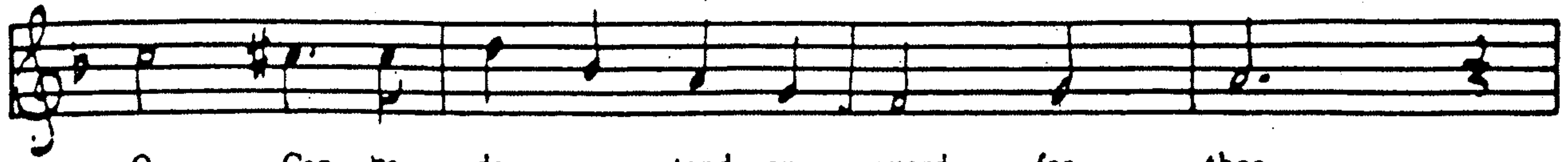
From the far and wide, () Canada, we stand on guard for thee.
Ton his-
toire est une épopée
Des plus brillants exploits.



Des plus brillants exploits.



God keep our land glorious and free!
Et ta valeur, de foi trem-pée,



O Can - na - da, we stand on guard for thee.
Pro - té - ge - ra nos foy - ers et nos droits.



O Can - na - da, we stand on guard for thee.
Pro - té - ge - ra nos foy - ers et nos droits.

1980-81-82-83, c. 5, Sch./1980-81-82-83, ch. 5, ann.

QUEEN'S PRINTER FOR CANADA © IMPRIMEUR DE LA REINE POUR LE CANADA
OTTAWA, 1985.

B.2.3

Playing of anthems at events

There is no specific rule as to when it is appropriate to sing the national anthem at an event. It is up to the organizers to determine if "O Canada" will be sung at the beginning or at the end of a ceremony. If two anthems are to be played at the beginning of an event, "O Canada" should be played first followed by the other one. When anthems are played at the end of an event, "O Canada" should be played last.

B.2.4

Etiquette during the playing of the national anthem

As a matter of respect and tradition, it is proper to stand for the playing of "O Canada" as well as for the anthem of any other nation.

It is traditional for civilian men to take off their hats during the playing of the national anthem. Women as well as children do not remove their hats on such occasions. Arms should be along the side of the body.

There is no law or behaviour governing the playing of the national anthem; it is left to the good citizenship of individuals.

B.2.5

Commercial use

"O Canada" and "God Save The Queen" are in the public domain and may be used without having to obtain permission from the Government.

For "The Maple Leaf Forever", one has to check with:

Canadian Musical Reproduction Rights Agency
111 Avenue Road, Suite 302
Toronto, Ontario
M5R 3J8
Tel: 416-926-1966

B

EMBLEMS

B.3

Anthems and patriotic songs

B.3.1

Anthems

Almost every country has a song, hymn or anthem universally known as its national anthem and though some of them go back as far as the 16th century, the institution of national anthems as such is comparatively recent.

The first recorded use of the term was in the "Daily Advertiser", September 28th, 1745, after a London performance at the Theatre Royal, Drury Lane. The reference is to Arne's patriotic song, and it says, "Gentlemen belonging to that house perform(ed) the 'anthem' of 'God Save Our Noble King'".

In Crosse's account of the "Grand Musical Festival" at York in 1825, he refers to the modern custom of describing it ("God Save The King") as the national anthem.

Other countries soon followed this British custom, and produced their own national anthems.

The word "anthem" is used loosely to include hymns, songs, instrumental marches, fanfares and salutes which have been authorized by heads of state or governments as the music to be used at official and state occasions, or compositions that have been gradually adopted by common usage for that purpose.

National anthems are primarily used to salute a monarch or head of state, but also as a compliment to official visitors. They are also played to create an atmosphere of solemnity or importance for various events from national occasions to athletic events. They are also used to strike a note of finality when the public gathers at concerts, theatres, etc.

Though often thought of simply as signature tunes, many are devout invocations of protection, prosperity, guidance, freedom of people, country and king. Most national anthems were composed for that purpose, but in some countries old words and music were adapted. Specially written poems were sometimes adapted to existing tunes. The tune of "God Save The Queen" for instance has been many times adapted with different words by other countries.

Some national anthems were written to order, but latterly the usual method has been national competition. Often the words have had to be altered over the years due to exigencies of personal, national or international relations.

Composers have often incorporated bits of national anthems in their work. Beethoven's variations on "God Save the Queen" were written "to show the British people what a treasure they have". Schumann used the "Marseillaise" three times, Wagner and Tchaikowsky and Litolff used it.

The two most widely known national anthems, "God Save the Queen" and the "Marseillaise" have never been proclaimed as such, but are used simply as a matter of tradition.

• **The Ode to Newfoundland**

The words of "The Ode to Newfoundland" were written by His Excellency Sir Cavendish Boyle, K.C.M.G., who was Governor of Newfoundland from 1901 to 1904. On November 8, 1902, the Ode was set to music composed by Professor E.R. Krippner and was officially adopted as the Newfoundland anthem. On May 20, 1904, the present musical setting, which was composed by Sir Hubert Parry, Bart., was officially substituted for the Krippner setting. On August 17, 1979, Royal Assent was given to legislation adopting the Ode to Newfoundland as the official provincial anthem of the province of Newfoundland.

When sun rays crown thy pine clad hills,
And summer spreads her hand,
When silvern voices tune thy rills,
We love thee, smiling land.

Refrain

We love thee, we love thee,
We love thee, smiling land.

As loved our fathers, so we love,
Where once they stook we stand;
Their prayer we raise to Heaven above,
God guard thee, Newfoundland

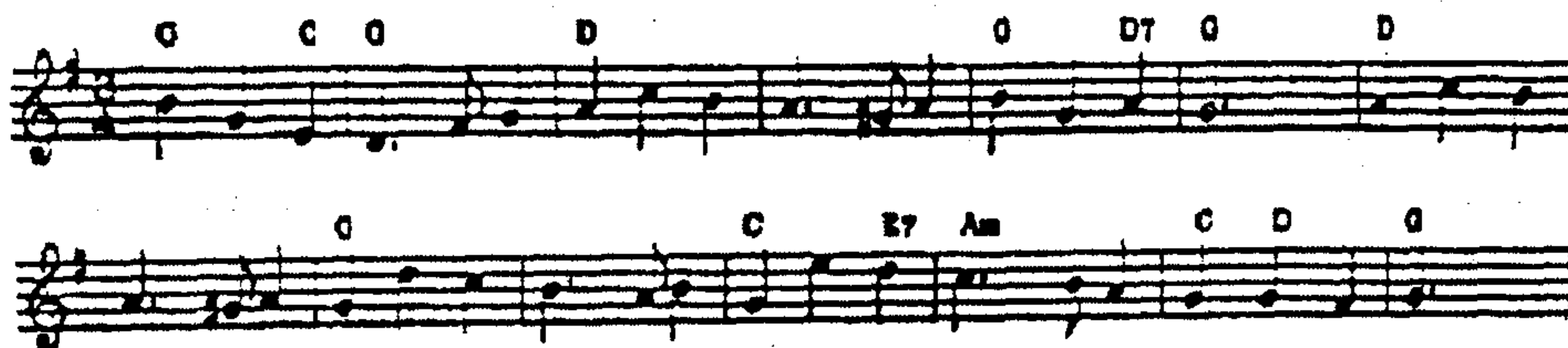
Refrain

God guard thee, God guard thee,
God guard thee, Newfoundland

• **Island hymn** (patriotic hymn of Prince Edward Island)

Miss L.M. Montgomery
Isula Beata

Lawrence W. Watson



1. Fair Island of the sea,
We raise our song to thee,
The bright and blest;
Loyally now we stand
As brothers, hand in hand,
and sing God save the land
We love the best.
2. Upon our princely Isle
May kindest fortune smile
In coming years,
Peace and prosperity
In all her borders be,
From every evil free,
And weakling fears.
3. Prince Edward Isle, to thee
Our hearts shall faithful be
Where'er we dwell;
Forever may we stand
As brothers, hand in hand,
And sing God save the land
We love so well.

- **The Marseillaise**

Rouget de Lisle wrote the "Marseillaise" during the night of April 24-25, 1792 at Strasbourg as a marching song for General Bonaparte's army of the Rhine. It was first performed at Strasbourg that April 29 by the band of the National Guard. Copies were soon printed and issued to the Marseille volunteers who adopted it as their marching song which led to its name. De Lisle was a captain of engineers and a musical amateur and though the "Marseillaise" undoubtedly underwent some changes at the hands of Gretry and Gossec before arriving at its present form, its original composition by de Lisle is no longer in dispute.

The "Marseillaise" was briefly superseded by "Partant pour la Syrie" as the national anthem of France during the reign of Napoleon III (1852-1870).

- **The Star Spangled Banner**

The American national anthem, which had been sung as a popular patriotic song since 1814, was proclaimed the national anthem of the United States in 1931.

The poem was written on board the British Frigate "HMS Surprise" in Baltimore harbour on the night of September 14, 1814 by Francis Scott Key who was detained aboard overnight by the British commander. He is said to have been inspired by the sight of the flag at dawn.

The music is "To Anacreon in Heaven" by John Stafford Smith, an English composer who died in 1836.

- **The Scots wha hae**

"Scots wha hae" is usually considered the Scottish national anthem. The words are by Robert Burns, written in 1793. The tune is so ancient its source is not known, though it has been traced to 1512.

B.3.2

Patriotic songs

- **Rule Britannia**

Composed by T.A. Arne for the masque "Alfred" with words by Thomson and Mallet. First performed at Cliefden House near Maidenhead on August 1, 1740. This was the residence of Frederick, Prince of Wales, and the occasion commemorated the accession of George I in 1714 and the birthday of Princess Augusta. It was performed in public at Drury Lane as a benefit for Mrs. Arne in 1745 but had previously been published as an appendix to Arne's "Music in the Judgment of Paris" in 1741.

- **The Maple Leaf Forever**

This song had great popularity in English Canada from its composition in 1867, partly because it was authorized for use in schools in many provinces. Because of the emphasis on the British connection it never gained much popularity in French Canada. However in a Book of Knowledge current in the 1920's it is listed and garlanded as "Canada's national anthem".

Words and music are by Alexander Muir (1830-1906) who came to Canada as a child and was educated at Queen's University. He taught school in Toronto for many years.

In 1867 the maple leaf first appeared in the coat of arms of both Ontario and Quebec and the song quickly became popular.

Muir also wrote another maple leaf song, "Canada, Land of the Maple Tree".

...We're Britons born and Britons still
And Britons aye shall be.
The Union Jack the flag we love
Shall guard our maple tree.

H.H. Godfrey wrote another called "The Land of the Maple"

Canada my Canada, my thought is all of thee
Thy mountain hains and smiling plains
That stretch from sea to sea.

Oh the land of the maple is the land for me
The home of the stalwart, the brave and the free.
The rose and the thistle, the shamrock and "lis"
All bloom in one garden "neath the maple tree".

- **Dominion hymn**

This little-known patriotic song was written by Sir Arthur Sullivan in honour of the new dominion. The tune is a strong, Salvation Army type melody.

God bless our wide Dominion
Our fathers' chosen land
And bind in lasting union
Each ocean's distant strand.
From where Atlantic terrors
Our hardy seamen train
To where the salt sea mirrors
The vast Pacific chain.

O, bless our wide Dominion
True freedom's fairest scene
Defend our people's union
God bless our Empire's Queen.

- **May God Preserve thee Canada** by R.S. Ambrose

Land of the forest and the lake
Land of the rushing river
Our prayers shall rise for they dear sake
Forever and forever.

- **Canada, The Gem in the Crown** by F.H. Torrington

Canada, the star and Dominion
That shines in the beautiful west
Where the sun in a robe of vermillion
Sinks softly and sweetly to rest.

- **God Preserve Our Native Land** by J. Davenport Kerrison

God preserve our native land
Fair Canada the free.....

B.3.3

Regional songs

A number of local and regional songs have come and gone, though some have more staying power than others.

“Toronto, the Pride of the North”
“On the old Ontario strand, my boys”
The Nova Scotia Song
The Banks of Newfoundland
Ye maidens of Ontario
Citadel Hill
The Alberta homesteader
A ballad of New Scotland
The poor little girls of Ontario
Saskatchewan girl's lament
The Cobalt song
Saskatchewan
Canaday-i-o
The Maid from Algoma -

Since 1967 we have had the very popular Centennial song “Ca-na-da”, written by Bobby Gimby and the Ontario song of the same year - “A place to stand”. The frequently sung “This land is your land”, is an adaptation of an American song of similar patriotic fervour, but a song just as popular, “Something to sing about”, is Canadian by context and composition.

B

EMBLEMS

B.4

Royal anthem "God Save The Queen"

B.4.1

History of "God Save The Queen"

Though usually attributed to Arne, there is good ground for believing it is really the work of Henry Carey, a singer and composer. It is said to have been written sometime between 1736 and 1740, but was first heard in public at a dinner in 1740 to celebrate the taking of Portobello by Admiral Vernon. Carey sang it as his own composition. The oldest copy is in "Harmonia Anglicana" of 1743 to which Carey was one of the chief contributors.

Several similar earlier airs exist in a manuscript of 1619 attributed to Dr. John Bull, an organist in the Chapel Royal during the reign of James I. In the same book is a song called "God Save the King", but the music is different.

The Scots claim it is based on an old carol of 1611 called "Remember O thou man" or "Franklyn is fled away" of 1669. It has also been traced to Purcell in 1696.

As a phrase from the Coverdale Bible of 1535, "God Save the King" was used as a naval watchword to which the countersign was "Long to reign over us".

For a long time the song was used as an expression of personal loyalty to the king and in translation it was used in Prussia, Denmark, and in Russia until 1833 when Czar Nicholas commissioned a new version. The tune has also been used in Sweden, Switzerland, Liechtenstein and the United States.

GOD SAVE THE QUEEN is sung in the United Kingdom as a matter of tradition. It has never been proclaimed the national anthem by an Act of Parliament or a Royal Proclamation.

B.4.2

Lyrics

1. God save our gracious Queen
Long live our noble Queen,
God save the Queen:
Send her victorious,
Happy and glorious,
Long to reign over us:
God save the Queen.

2. O Lord, our God, arise,
Scatter thine enemies,
And make them fall:
Confound their politics,
Frustrate their knavish tricks,
On thee our hopes we fix:
God save us all.

3. Thy choicest gifts in store,
On her be pleased to pour;
Long may she reign:
May she defend our laws,
And ever give us cause
To sing with heart and voice
God save the Queen.

B.4.3

Playing of "God Save The Queen" at events

"God Save The Queen" has no legal status in Canada, although it is considered as the royal anthem, to be played in the presence of members of the Royal Family or as part of the salute accorded to the Governor General and the lieutenant governors.

B.4.4

Commercial use

"God Save The Queen" is in the public domain and may be used without having to obtain permission from the Government.

B

EMBLEMS

B.5

National flag

B.5.1

A symbol of Canadian identity

The official ceremony inaugurating the new Canadian flag was held on Parliament Hill in Ottawa on February 15, 1965, with Governor General Georges Vanier, Prime Minister Lester B. Pearson, the members of the Cabinet and thousands of Canadians in attendance.

The Canadian Red Ensign, bearing the Union Jack and the shield of the royal arms of Canada, was lowered and then, on the stroke of noon, our new maple leaf flag was raised. The crowd sang the national anthem *O Canada* followed by the royal anthem *God Save the Queen*.

The following words, spoken on that momentous day by the Honourable Maurice Bourget, Speaker of the Senate, added further symbolic meaning to our flag: "The flag is the symbol of the nation's unity, for it, beyond any doubt, represents all the citizens of Canada without distinction of race, language, belief or opinion."

B.5.2

The birth of the Canadian flag

The search for a new Canadian flag started in earnest in 1925 when a committee of the Privy Council began to research possible designs for a national flag. However, the work of the committee was never completed.

Later, in 1946, a select parliamentary committee was appointed with a similar mandate, called for submissions and received more than 2,600 designs. Still, the Parliament of Canada was never called upon to formally vote on a design.

Early in 1964, Prime Minister Lester B. Pearson informed the House of Commons that the government wished to adopt a distinctive national flag. The 1967 centennial celebration of Confederation was, after all, approaching. As a result, a Senate and House of Commons Committee was formed and submissions were called for once again.

In October 1964, after eliminating various proposals, the committee was left with three possible designs — a Red Ensign with the fleur-de-lis and the Union Jack, a design incorporating three red maple leaves, and a red flag with a single, stylized red maple leaf on a white square. (Pearson himself preferred a design with three red maple leaves between two blue borders.)

Two heraldry experts, who both favoured a three-leaf design, played a decisive role in the choice of our flag: Alan Beddoe, a retired naval captain and heraldic adviser to the Royal Canadian Navy, and Colonel Fortescue Duguid, a heraldist and historian.

The names of Mr. John Matheson and Dr. George Stanley are well known in the story of the evolution of a new Canadian flag. Mr. Matheson, an Ontario Member of Parliament, was perhaps one of the strongest supporters of a new flag and played a key advisory role. Dr. Stanley was Dean of Arts at the Royal Military College in Kingston, and brought to the attention of the committee the fact that the Commandant's flag at the College — a maple leaf on a red and white ground — was quite attractive.

Yet no one single person can be credited with the design of Canada's national flag. Indeed, the design arose based on a strong sense of Canadian history and a result of a collaborative effort involving several Canadians. The combination of red, white and red first appeared in the General Service Medal issued by Queen Victoria. Red and white were subsequently proclaimed Canada's national colours by King George V in 1921. Three years earlier, Major General (later the Honourable) Sir Eugene Fiset had recommended that Canada's emblem be the single red maple leaf on a white field - the device worn by all Canadian Olympic athletes since 1904.

A key element of the national flag — the stylized maple leaf — was designed by Mr. Jacques St. Cyr while the proportions of the flag were outlined in a proposal to the Committee made by Mr. George Bist, a World War II veteran, and the precise coloration of the flag defined by Dr. Gunter Wyszecchi.

The committee eventually decided to recommend the single-leaf design, which was approved by resolution of the House of Commons on December 15, 1964, followed by the Senate on December 17, 1964, and proclaimed by Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II, Queen of Canada, to take effect on February 15, 1965.

The national flag of Canada, then, came into being, a credit to those eminent Canadians: the Right Honourable Lester B. Pearson, who wanted a distinctive national flag as a vehicle to promote national unity; John Matheson, who established the conceptual framework for a suitable flag, then sought out and combined the appropriate components to create it; and Dr. George Stanley, who provided the seminal concept - the central concepts of red-white-red stripes with a central maple leaf — in this process.

B.5.3

The first "Canadian flags"

- ✦ *The St. George's Cross* — an English flag of the 15th century — was carried by John Cabot, a Venetian sailing under English colours, and flown over Canadian soil when he reached the east coast of Canada in 1497.
- ✦ The *fleur-de-lis* was a symbol of French sovereignty in Canada from 1534, when Jacques Cartier landed and claimed the new world for France, until the early 1760s, when Canada was ceded to the United Kingdom. Although a number of French military flags were used in Canada during this period, including the white flag of la Marine royale after 1674, the fleur-de-lis held a position of some prominence.
- ✦ In the early 1760s, the official British flag was the two-crossed jack or the *Royal Union flag* (known more commonly as the Union Jack). Although first flown in 1621, the Royal Union flag was used at all British establishments on the North American continent from Newfoundland to the Gulf of Mexico. This flag is often referred to as the flag of Canada's United Empire Loyalists.
- ✦ Following the *Act of Union* between Great Britain and Ireland in 1801, the diagonal Cross of St. Patrick was incorporated with England's St. George's Cross and Scotland's Cross of St. Andrew. This gave the Royal Union flag its present-day configuration. This flag was used across British North America and in Canada even after Confederation in 1867.
- ✦ The *Red Ensign*, a red flag with the Union Jack in the upper corner, was created in 1707 as the flag of the British Merchant Marine. From approximately 1870 to 1904, it was used on land and sea as Canada's flag, with the addition of a shield in the fly bearing the quartered arms of Ontario, Quebec, Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Although its use on land had never been sanctioned except by public usage, in 1892 the British admiralty approved the use of the Red Ensign for Canadian use at sea. This gave rise to the name the *Canadian Red Ensign*.
- ✦ As new provinces entered Confederation, or when they received some mark of identification (sometimes taken from their seal), that mark was incorporated into the shield on the Canadian Red Ensign. By the turn of the century, the shield was made up of the coats of arms of the seven provinces then in Confederation.
- ✦ In 1924, this unofficial version of the Canadian Red Ensign was changed by an Order in Council and the composite shield was replaced with the shield from the royal arms of Canada, more commonly known as the Canadian Coat of Arms. At the same time, this new version was approved for use on Canadian government buildings abroad. A similar order in 1945 authorized its use on federal buildings within Canada until a new national flag was adopted.
- ✦ The Canadian Red Ensign was replaced by the red and white maple leaf flag on February 15, 1965.

B.5.4.

Elements of the national Flag of Canada

The maple leaf

Well before the coming of the first European settlers, Canada's aboriginal peoples had discovered the food properties of maple sap, which they gathered every spring. According to many historians, the maple leaf began to serve as a Canadian symbol as early as 1700.

Following are some examples of how the maple leaf grew in public consciousness as a symbol of our country until it finally became official on February 15, 1965, as an integral component of the national flag of Canada.

- ✦ In 1834, Ludger Duvernay is reported to have proposed the maple leaf as an emblem of Canada when the Société Saint-Jean-Baptiste was founded on June 24 of that year.
- ✦ In 1836, *Le Canadien*, a newspaper published in Lower Canada, referred to it as a suitable emblem for Canada.
- ✦ In August 1860, at a public meeting held in Toronto, the maple leaf was adopted as the national emblem of Canada for use in the decorations for the Prince of Wales' visit.
- ✦ In 1867, Alexander Muir, a Toronto schoolmaster and poet, composed the song *The Maple Leaf Forever*.
- ✦ In 1914, Canadian soldiers wore the maple leaf on their military badges, and it was the dominant symbol used by almost all Canadian regiments serving in the Great War (World War I).
- ✦ In 1939, at the beginning of World War II, Canadian troops once again used the maple leaf as a distinctive emblem, displaying it on regimental badges and Canadian army and naval equipment.

Red and white Canada's national colours

History records that in the first crusade, Bohemund I, a Norman lord, had red crosses cut from his mantles and distributed to the 12,000 crusaders, who then wore them as a distinctive badge on their garments.

In subsequent crusades, each nation was distinguished by a cross of a different colour. France long had a red cross on its banners while England used a white cross. Time and again in history, red and white are found as the colours of France or of England.

Red and white were approved as Canada's official colours in the proclamation of the Royal Arms of Canada in 1921 by King George V.

In 1957, the colour of the maple leaves on the shield of the royal arms of Canada was changed from green on a gold ground to red on a white ground in recognition of Canada's official colours.

B.5.5

You were asking ...

- ✦ When did the maple leaf become the emblem of Canada?

The maple leaf was historically used from the early days of Canada to symbolize the land and its people. It was first proposed as an emblem of Canada in 1834 when the Société Saint-Jean-Baptiste was founded; shortly thereafter, in 1836, *Le Canadien*, a newspaper published in Lower Canada, referred to it as a suitable emblem for Canada.

It was also used in the decorations for the visit of the Prince of Wales to Canada in 1860. It appears on the coats of arms granted to Quebec and Ontario in 1868 and as a distinctive emblem on the royal arms of Canada proclaimed in 1921. The maple leaf was for many years the symbol of the Canadian Armed Forces and was used to identify Canadian contingents in the two world wars. But it wasn't to receive official status until the National Flag of Canada was proclaimed by Her Majesty the Queen in 1965.

- ✦ What is the correct designation for the Canadian flag?

The official name is the national flag of Canada.

- ✦ When was the Canadian flag officially approved and how is it described?

The national flag of Canada was approved by Parliament in 1964 and proclaimed by Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II to take effect on February 15, 1965. It is a red flag, twice as long as it is wide, containing in its centre a white square bearing a red maple leaf. Red and white are Canada's official colours and, with the maple leaf, are the symbolic elements found in the Canadian flag.

- ✦ When were red and white designated Canada's official colours?

Red and white were designated Canada's colours by King George V on November 21, 1921, in the proclamation of the royal arms of Canada — Canada's coat of arms.

- ✦ What is the significance of the eleven points of the maple leaf?

The maple leaf, as found on the national flag, is a stylized design. The symbolism lies in the maple leaf itself, which is the traditional emblem of Canada. There is no special significance to the eleven points.

- ✦ What other flags were previously used in Canada?

The St. George's Cross — an English flag of the 15th century — was carried by John Cabot when he reached the east coast of Canada in 1497, sailing under English colours.

The fleur-de-lis was a symbol of French sovereignty in Canada from 1534, when Jacques Cartier landed and claimed the new world for France, until the early 1760s, when Canada was ceded to the United Kingdom.

First flown over Canada in 1621, the Royal Union Flag (the Union Jack) was used across British North America and in Canada even after Confederation in 1867.

From about 1870, various forms of the Canadian Red Ensign were used on land and sea as Canada's unofficial flag as well as the Union Jack. In 1945, the Canadian government authorized the use of the Red Ensign on federal buildings within Canada until such time as a new national flag was adopted.

B.5.6.

Dipping the flag

Dipping a carried flag means lowering it from a vertical position to one which is, variously 45 degrees from the horizontal, or, even further, touching the ground. The national flag, when carried, is never dipped or lowered to the ground. That practice — a form of salute — is reserved for military colours (and when the national flag is used as a military colour, it is not dipped to touch the ground).

B.5.7

Colour specifications

- **Printing ink colours**

The printing ink colours are **FIP red**: General Printing Ink, No. 0-712; Inmont Canada Ltd., No. 4T51577; Monarch Inks, No. 62539/0, Rieger Inks, No. 25564; or Sinclair and Valentine, No. RL163929/0. The closest pantone red number is O32

Note: To test consistency in the reproduction of FIP red, reflection density measurements should be made on a McBeth Model No. 1155SPI (or equivalent) densitometer. Reflection density using Wratten 58 (green) filter should be not less than 0.80 and not greater than 1.10 density units.

- **Paint colours**

Specifications for FIP red should refer to the colour CGSB 509-211 which is shown in CGSB 1-GP-12, Standard Paint Colours. Swatches of this colour may be purchased from the Publishing Section, Public Works and Government Services Canada. The paint colours are FIP red 509-211, and white: 513-201.

- **Weather-resistant product**

A special weather-resistant product has been approved for exterior primary signs where it is used for the red flag in the wordmark. This 3M product is referred to as cast-in "tomato" red vinyl No. 180-13.

When using FIP red for other applications that are subject to weathering, the use of this product is recommended.

B.5.8

Flying of flags on federal establishments

As a general rule, the national flag of Canada is the only one flown permanently on federal government buildings unless, of course, the facilities are shared with other jurisdictions. The national flag is also the corporate logo of the federal government and has come to symbolize the services provided by the Government of Canada.

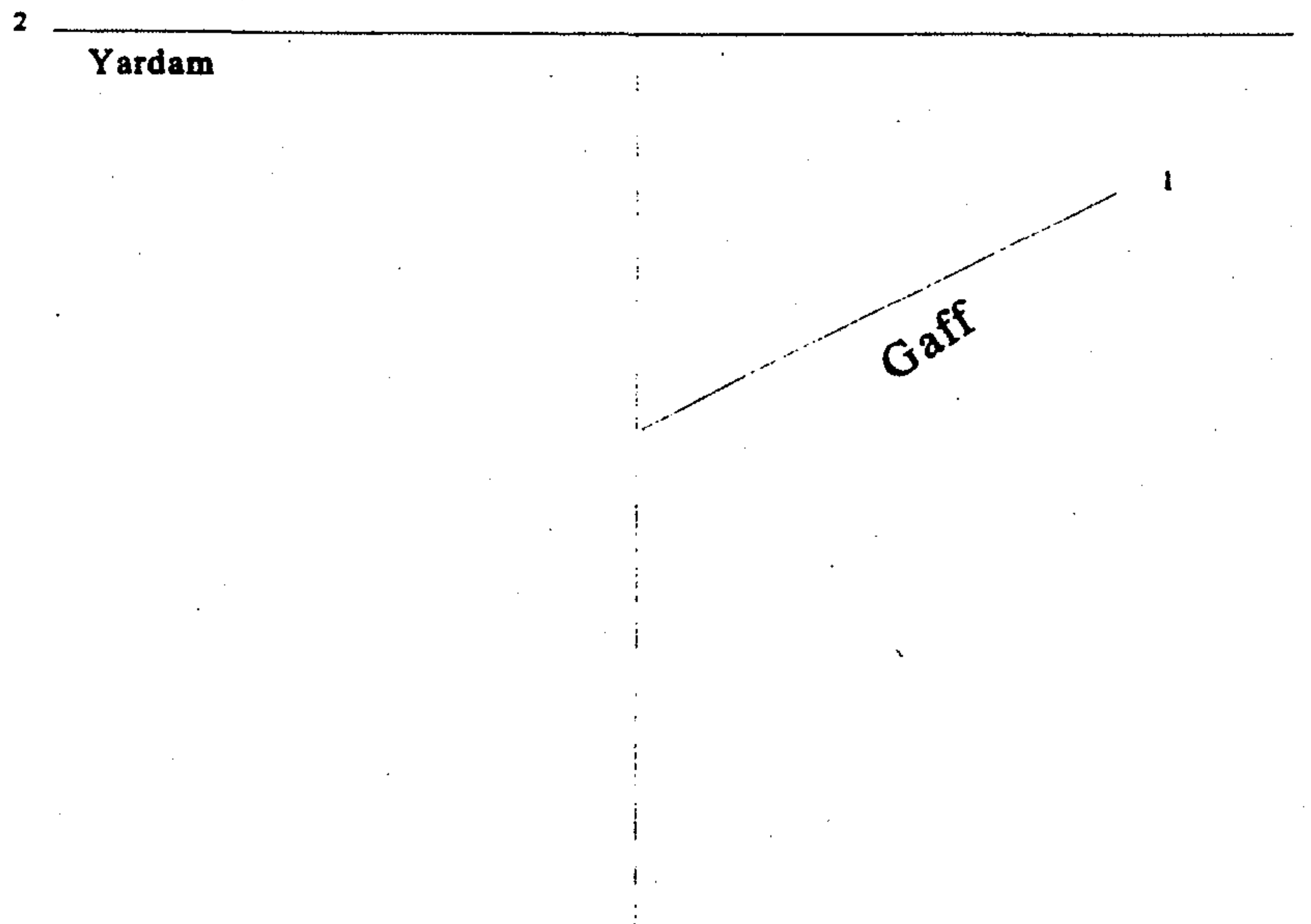
The flying of provincial, territorial or other flags on buildings or establishments occupied by Government of Canada agencies may create confusion in the minds of Canadians as to which level of government would be responsible for the services being provided.

B.5.9

Flying on marine-type mast

It is customary, on a marine-type mast with a gaff, to have the senior ranking flag flown from the gaff, then the next ranking flags are flown from left to right on the yard-arm; the house flag is flown at the top of the flag pole.

4



Marine-type mast
Precedence of flags

B.5.10

Pledge to the Canadian flag

There is no official pledge to the Canadian flag; however, there are no laws or statutes which prevent an association or an individual from adopting a form which will suit the purposes.

The following is presented as a possible form of pledge to the Canadian flag.*

**PLEDGE
TO THE CANADIAN FLAG**

To my Flag and to the country it
represents, I pledge RESPECT
and LOYALTY.

Wave with PRIDE from sea to sea
and within your folds, keep us
ever UNITED.

Be for all a symbol of LOVE,
FREEDOM and JUSTICE

God keep our FLAG

God protect our CANADA

**SALUT AU DRAPEAU
CANADIEN**

À mon drapeau et au pays qu'il
représente, je promets RESPECT
et FIDÉLITÉ.

D'une mer à l'autre, flotte avec
FIERTÉ et dans tes plis garde
nous toujours UNIS.

Sois, pour nous tous, un symbole
de l'AMOUR, de la LIBERTÉ et
de la JUSTICE

Dieu garde notre DRAPEAU

Dieu protège notre CANADA

* This text was proposed by Mr. Alexandre Cyr, when he was M.P. for Gaspé.

B.5.11 Half-masting of flag

The position of the flag when flying at half-mast will depend on its size, the length of the flagstaff and its location; but as a general rule, the centre of a flag should be exactly half-way down the staff. When hoisted to or lowered from half-mast position, a flag should first be raised to the masthead.

Flags are flown at the half-mast position as a sign of mourning.

The flag on the Peace Tower and flags on federal buildings, airports, military bases and other establishments are flown at half-mast when directed by the Department of Canadian Heritage.

The following are:

	Peace Tower	Canada & Abroad	Canada	Province/ Territory	Riding	Residence
Sovereign	X	X				
Members of the Royal Family in the first degree	X	X				
Governor General	X	X				
Prime Minister	X	X				
Former Governor General	X	X				
Former Prime Minister	X	X				
Member of the Canadian Ministry	X	X				
Lieutenant Governor	X			X		
Privy Councillor	X					X

	Peace Tower	Canada & Abroad	Canada	Province/Territory	Riding	Residence
	Peace Tower	Canada & Abroad	Canada	Province/Territory	Riding	Residence
Senator	X					X
Member of the House of Commons	X				X	
Territorial Commissioner				X		
Provincial Premier/Territorial Government Leader				X		
Member of Provincial/Territorial Legislature					X	
Another person honoured by province/territory				X		
Mayor						X
*Head of State/Head of Government of Commonwealth country	X					

B.5 - 12

	Peace Tower	Canada & Abroad	Canada	Province/Territory	Riding	Residence
Head of Mission accredited to Canada who dies while in office at Ottawa <u>Note</u> : only on day of funeral or day when remains leave Canada	X					
	Peace Tower	Canada & Abroad	Canada	Province/Territory	Riding	Residence
Members of the Royal Family other than those related in the first degree to Sovereign (subject to special instructions)	X		X			
*Head of a Foreign State (subject to special instructions)	X					
Person whom it is desired to honour (subject to special instructions)	X	X	X	X		X
Remembrance Day	X					
Workers Mourning Day April 28	X					
National Remembrance and Action on Violence Against Women December 6	X					

	Peace Tower	Canada & Abroad	Canada	Province/Territory	Riding	Residence
Commemorative service in honour of Canadians, held by groups on Parliament Hill who request it	X					

- * The Flag is also half-masted at the Lester B. Pearson Building (headquarters of the Department of Foreign Affairs, from sunrise to sunset.

“Death” may be taken to include the day of death and up to and including the day of the funeral.

During periods of half-masting, the flag is raised to full-mast on all federal government buildings, airports, and military bases and establishments on statutory holidays, and also on the Peace Tower while a Head of State is visiting Parliament Hill. These procedures do not apply while flags are half-masted for the death of the Sovereign when they are only raised to full-mast for the day on which the accession of the new Monarch is proclaimed.

On occasions requiring that one flag be half-masted, all flags flown together should also be half-masted. Flags will only be half-masted on those flagpoles fitted with halyards and pulleys. Some buildings fly flags from horizontal or angled poles, without halyards, to which flags are permanently attached; flags positioned as such will not be half-masted.

The flag is brought to the half-mast position by first raising it to the top on the mast and then immediately lowering it slowly to the half-mast position.

The position of the flag when flying at half-mast will depend on the size of the flag and the length of the flagstaff. It must be lowered at least to a position recognizably half-mast to avoid the appearance of a flag which has accidentally fallen away from the top of the mast, owing to a loose flag rope.

As soon as the Department is advised of the death of a person mentioned above, or of a person whom it is desired to honour, federal departments and agencies are contacted with the proper instructions first by telephone and immediately followed by the send-off of these instructions by telecopier. The offices of Protocol of the provinces and territories are also informed whenever the flag on the Peace Tower is flown at half-mast (except for a member of the Privy Council, a Senator or a member of the House of Commons)

B.5.12

Commercial Use

The *Trade Marks Act* protects the national flag of Canada against unauthorized use. Requests to use the flag should be addressed to the Department of Canadian Heritage (attention: Manager, Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion, fax: (819) 997-8550)

The national flag and representations of it should always be shown, represented or used in a dignified manner. It should not be defaced by way of printing or illustrations or masked by other objects, but displayed in a manner which may be described as aloft and free, in which all symbolic parts of the flag can be identified.

B.5.13

Sources for flags, banners and pins

The following are the items and suppliers for the flags, banners and pins.

- **Large flags (3' x 6')**

Scythes Inc.
128 Sterling Road
Toronto, Ontario
M6R 2B7
Tel: (416) 535-1151
1-800-268-1776

- **Hand flags (paper)**

All Seasons Display Ltd.
5250 Finch Avenue East
Unit 7,
Scarborough, Ontario
M1S 4P3
Tel: (416) 293-6591

- **Banners**

The Flag Shop
508 Rideau Street
Ottawa, Ontario
K1N 5Z6
Tel: (613) 230-5456

- **Canadian flag lapel pins**

Bursan Designs and Development Ltd.
331 Evans Avenue
Toronto, Ontario
M8Z 1K2
c/o Mrs. Cecilia Taylor
Tel: (416) 259-1136

Plastiques Gagnon Inc.
260 de Gaspé Avenue West
Saint-Jean-Port-Joli, Quebec
G0R 3G0
Tel: (418) 598-3361

- **Maple leaf pins and floating flag pins (#2030)**

Nemo-Brier Limited
120 Edmonton Street
Hull, Quebec
J8Y 6N2
Tel: (819) 771-6211

Boutons du Canada Limitée
7020 Allard
Lasalle, Quebec
H8N 1Y8
Tel: (514) 363-2550

- **Decals (2" x 4")**

Sealcraft Products Ltd.
6525 Northam Drive
Mississauga, Ontario
L4X 1J2
c/o Mr. Brent Bauer - Bob Fiorini
Tel: (416) 677-3200 or
Toll free: 1-800-268-4952

B

EMBLEMS

B.6

The Royal Union flag

• General

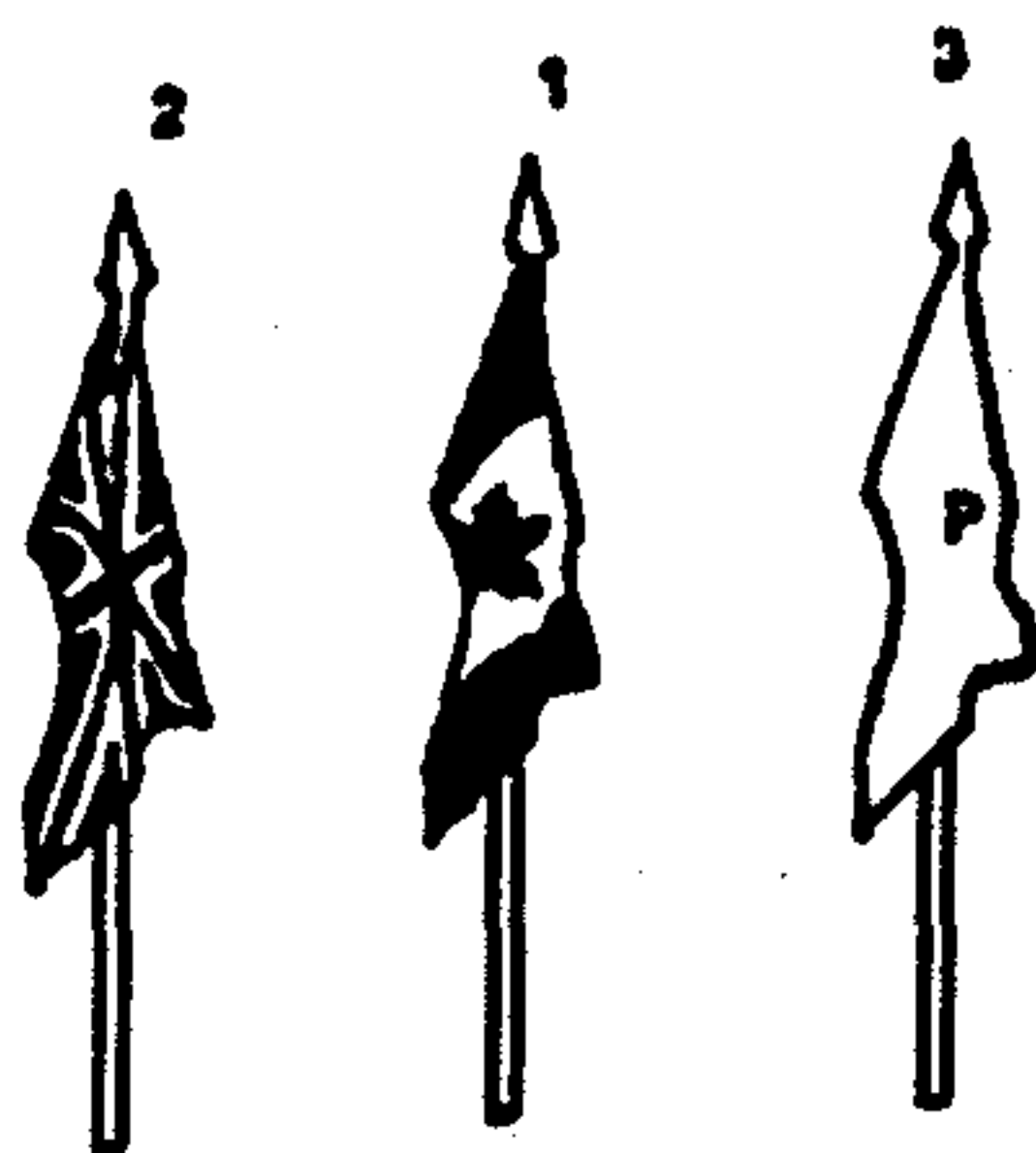
The Royal Union flag, commonly known as the "Union Jack", has a long history of usage in Canada dating back to the British settlement in Nova Scotia after 1621. Although the Red Ensign was widely used in Canada from the time of Confederation until the national flag was adopted in 1965, the Union Jack was the affirmed national symbol from 1904 and was the flag under which Canadian troops fought during the First World War. The Union Jack maintains its presence in Canada through its incorporation in the provincial flags of Ontario, Manitoba, and British Columbia.

When flown or displayed in Canada, the Union Jack serves two purposes. First, it is the national flag of the United Kingdom, and second, it is flown as a symbol of membership in the Commonwealth and allegiance to the Crown as approved by Parliament on December 18, 1964.

The order of precedence of the Union Jack in relation to provincial and territorial flags varies in accordance with the reason it is flown.

As seen from the spectator's viewpoint:

- when representing the United Kingdom as a sovereign nation, the Union Jack takes precedence before the flag of a province or territory (Figure 1);



(Provincial
flag)

Figure 1
Precedence - Representing the United Kingdom

B.6 - 2

- when representing Canada's membership in the Commonwealth or allegiance to the Crown, for example during a Royal Visit, the Union Jack is considered as a "symbolic flag" and as such is displayed after any other flag (Figure 2).

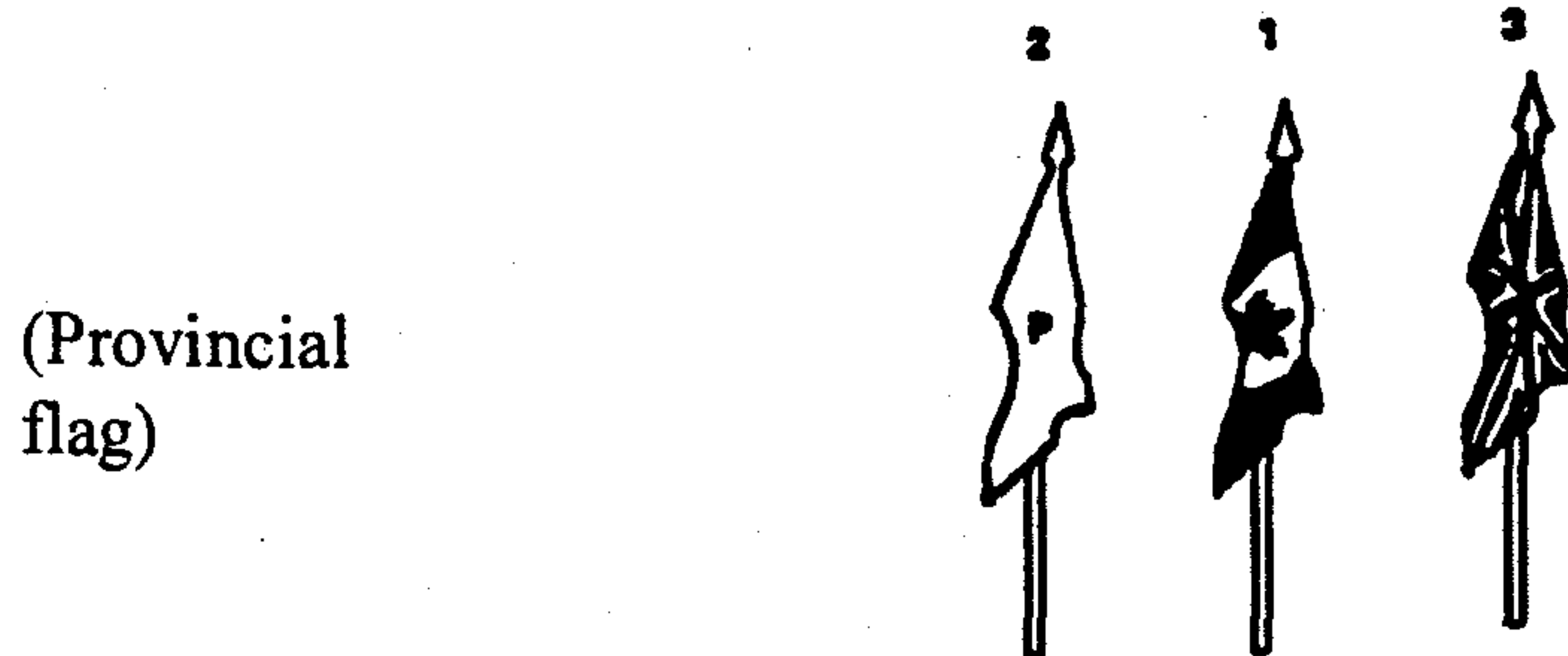


Figure 2
Precedence
Representing Canada's Membership in the Commonwealth

- **Special display**

When the Union Jack is flown as part of the display of flags during a visit by Her Majesty The Queen or members of the Royal Family, the following rules will apply:

- for Ottawa, three Canadian flags followed by a Union Jack will be displayed. This grouping applies to flags used for street lining and other displays. The rationale behind this is that instead of the usual sequence: Canadian flag, foreign flag, etc. these flags represent the following: Canada, the national flag of the Queen of Canada, Canada, and the Union Jack for Canada's allegiance to the Crown (Figure 3);

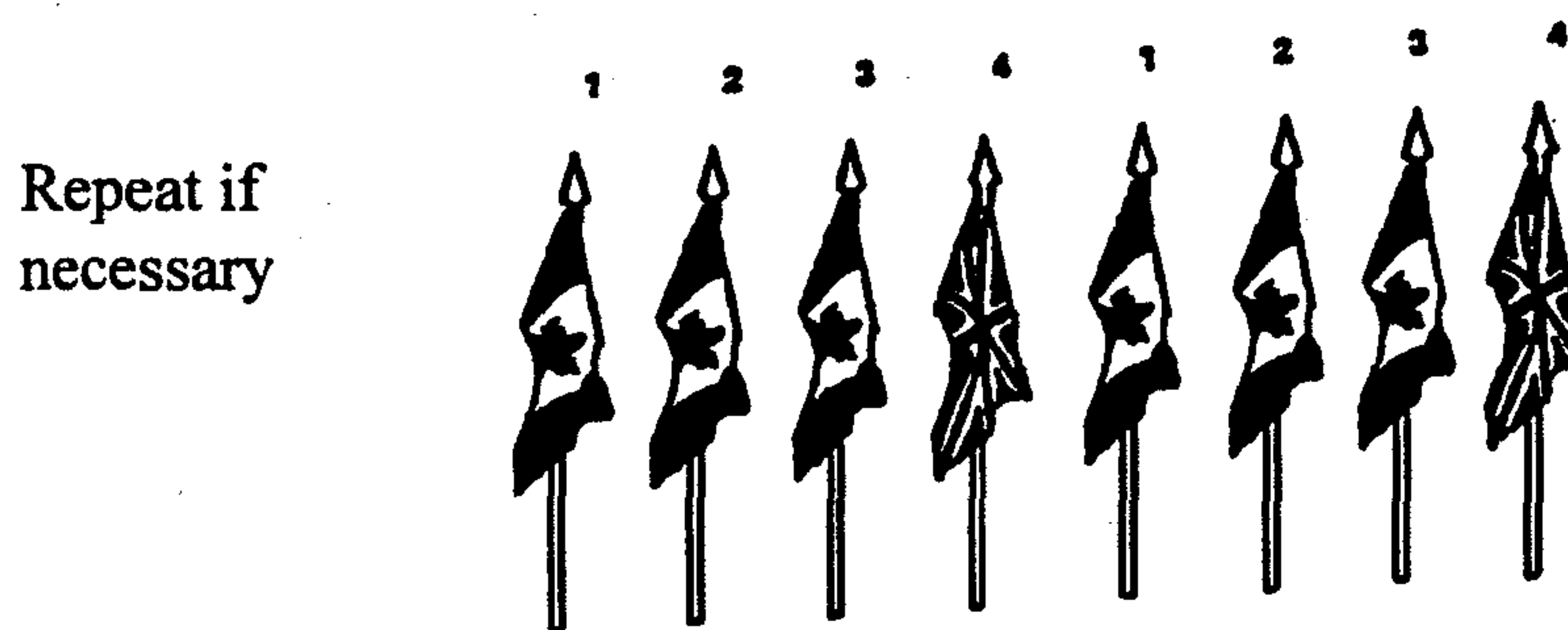
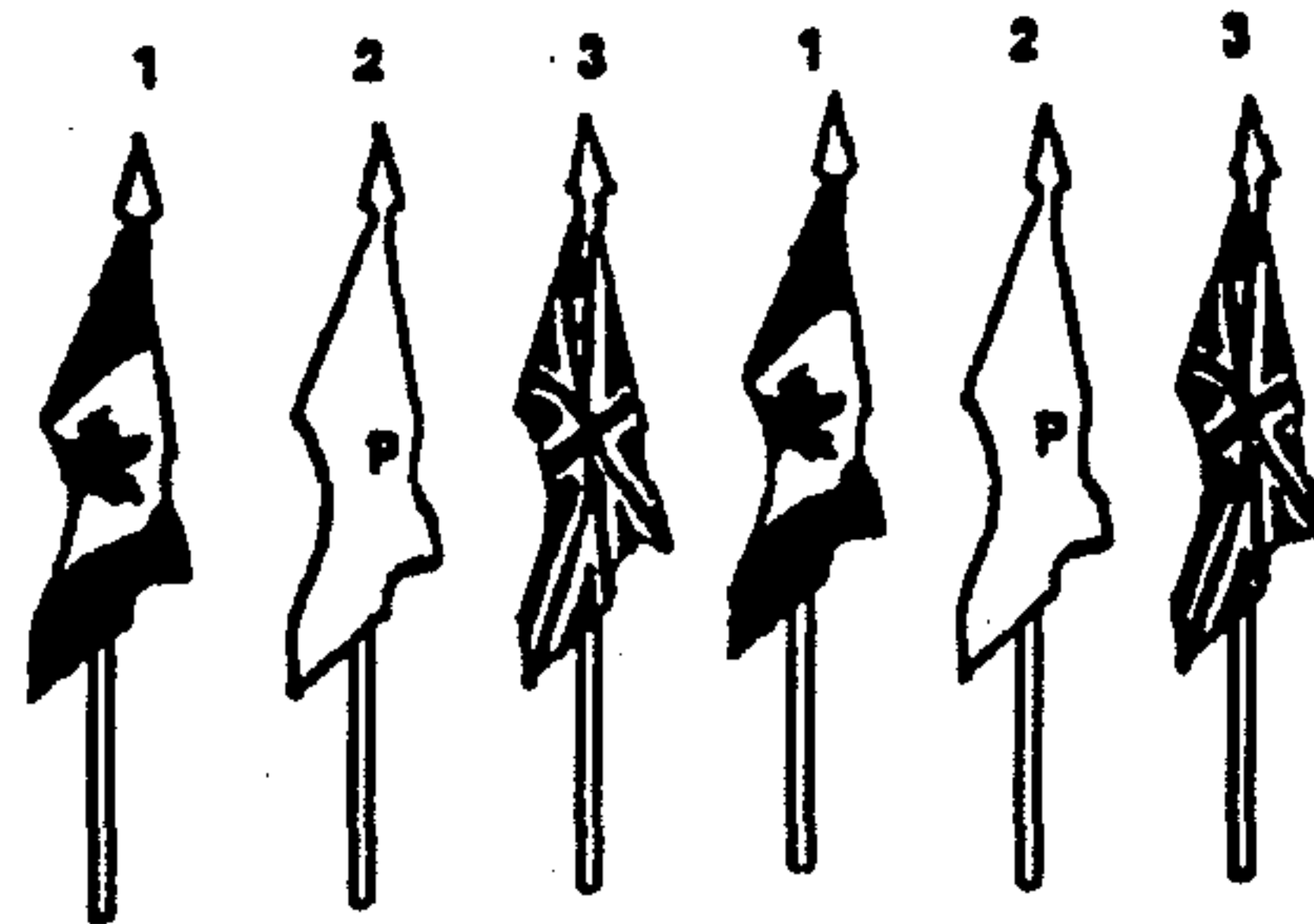


Figure 3
Precedence for Royal Visits in Ottawa

- outside Ottawa, the precedence will be one Canadian flag, one Provincial flag and one Union Jack. Here the provincial flag takes precedence before the Union Jack which symbolizes allegiance to the Crown (Figure 4).



Repeat if necessary
(Flag 2: provincial
flag)

Figure 4
Precedence for Royal Visit outside Ottawa

When the Union Jack is flown during a visit to Canada by a person representing the United Kingdom, the normal grouping of one Canadian flag and one Union Jack will be followed. On some occasions, it may be deemed necessary to add a provincial flag to the display. In this case the Union Jack will take precedence before the provincial flag as it represents the United Kingdom.

The Union Jack will, where physical arrangements allow, be flown along with the Canadian flag at federal buildings, airports, military bases, and other appropriate establishments within Canada, from sunrise to sunset, on the following occasions annually:

- the date of the official observance of Her Majesty The Queen's Birthday, on Victoria Day, the Monday preceding May 25;
- the anniversary of the proclamation of the Statute of Westminster (December 11); and
- the date of the official observance of Commonwealth Day (the second Monday in March).

Physical arrangements means the existence of at least two flag poles. The Canadian flag will always take precedence and will not be replaced by the Union Jack. Where only one pole exists, no steps shall be taken to erect an additional pole.

The Union Jack may be flown with the Canadian flag at the National War Memorial and at similarly appropriate locations in Canada in connection with ceremonies marking anniversaries of events in which Canadian forces participated with other Commonwealth forces.

B

EMBLEMS

B.7

Commonwealth flag

The Commonwealth flag consists of the Commonwealth symbol in gold on a blue background. The symbol consists of a radial grating forming the letter "C" surrounding a circular solid on which are super-imposed five latitudinal and five longitudinal lines to represent the globe. The symbol is centred on the rectangle and the dimensions of the rectangle are 2:1.

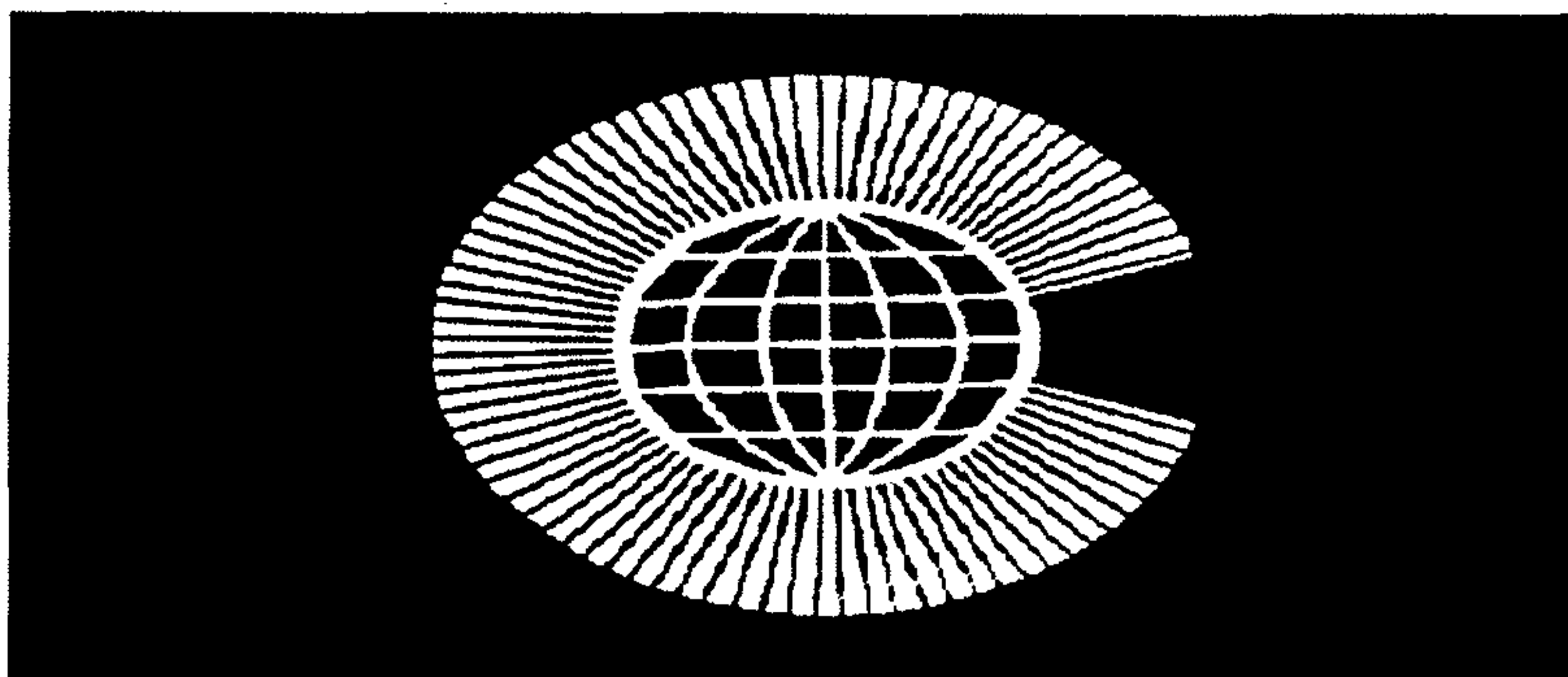
There is no significance in the number of rays and they do not seek to represent the number of countries within the Commonwealth.

The Commonwealth symbol was registered with The Patent Office in the United Kingdom under the "Trade Marks Acts, 1938" on the 26th of March 1976, and internationally with the World Intellectual Property Organisation (W.I.P.O.) in Switzerland.

As the colour tones of Admiralty Bunting vary from cloth to cloth depending on the country of manufacture and, of course, the dye used it was decided that when called upon to do so the Commonwealth Secretariat would describe the colours using as a reference the Pantone Range of printing inks [Pantone Inc., 590 Commerce Boulevard, Carlstad, New Jersey, 07072-3098, U.S.A, tel.: 1-201-935-5500., Website: <http://www.pantone.com>] as follows:

Blue Pantone 287

Yellow Pantone 108



[Information provided by the Commonwealth Secretariat, London]

B

EMBLEMS

B.8

Other national emblems

B.8.1

Beaver

The beaver has long been a symbol of Canada. By its traits, it symbolizes intelligence, industry and perseverance.

When the early settlers arrived in Canada, the Indian tribes already had distinctive emblems. They used them as signatures on treaties they made with the settlers. The beaver was used by the Huron.

In 1632, King Charles I approved a coat of arms bearing the beaver for Sir William Alexander, the founder of Nova Scotia.

In 1670, the beaver appears on the arms of the Hudson's Bay Company granted by Charles II.

In 1673, Frontenac asked the King of France to approve a coat of arms containing a beaver for Quebec City.

In 1832, when the City of Montréal was incorporated, the beaver appeared on its coat of arms.

The beaver also appeared with the maple leaf on the masthead of Le Canadien, a newspaper published in Lower Canada.

For a time, it was one of the emblems of the Société Saint-Jean-Baptiste. It is still found on the crest of the Canadian Pacific Railway Company.

Although the fur trade has declined, the beaver has remained a symbol of Canada.

In 1975, the Parliament of Canada adopted the beaver as a symbol of the sovereignty of Canada.

23-24 ELIZABETH II

23-24 ELIZABETH II

CHAPTER 35

CHAPITRE 35

An Act to provide for the recognition of the
Beaver (*Castor canadensis*) as a
symbol of the sovereignty of Canada

Loi portant reconnaissance du castor (*castor
canadensis*) comme symbole de la sou-
veraineté du Canada

[Assented to 24th March, 1975]

[Sanctionnée le 24 mars 1975]

Her Majesty, by and with the advice and
consent of the Senate and House of Com-
mons of Canada, enacts as follows:

Sa Majesté, sur l'avis et du consentement
du Sénat et de la Chambre des communes du
Canada, décrète:

Beaver as
symbol of
Canadian sover-
eignty

1. It is hereby recognized and declared
that the Beaver (*Castor canadensis*) is a
symbol of the sovereignty of Canada and it
is proclaimed that any representation of the
Beaver (*Castor canadensis*) when used by
Her Majesty in right of Canada shall be so
used and so regarded.

1. Il est reconnu et déclaré par les présen-
tes que le castor (*castor canadensis*) est un
symbole de la souveraineté du Canada et il
est proclamé que l'utilisation de toute repré-
sentation du castor (*castor canadensis*) par
Sa Majesté du chef du Canada a cette signi-
fication et est réputée l'avoir.

Le castor, sym-
bole de la souve-
raineté cana-
diennne

B.8.2

The maple tree

Trees have played a meaningful role in the historical development of Canada and continue to be of commercial, environmental and aesthetic importance to all Canadians. Maples contribute valuable wood products, sustain the maple sugar industry and help to beautify the landscape. Maple wood, which varies in hardness, toughness and other properties, is in demand for flooring, furniture, interior woodwork, veneer, small woodenware, and supports several flourishing industries in eastern Canada. Maple is also highly prized in furniture building and cabinet-making.

Since 1965, the maple leaf has been the centrepiece of the national flag of Canada and the maple tree bears the leaves that have become the most prominent Canadian symbol, nationally and internationally. Maple leaf pins and badges are proudly worn by Canadians abroad, and are recognized around the world.

Although the maple leaf is closely associated with Canada, the maple tree was never officially recognized as Canada's arboreal emblem until 1996.

Many Canadians in the forest sector have long requested that the Government select the maple tree as Canada's arboreal emblem. They now enjoy the use of the maple tree as an official symbol when promoting Canada as a world leader in sustainable forest management.

It is the generic maple species that is being proclaimed as Canada's arboreal emblem. Of the 150 known species of maple (genus *Acer*), only 13 are native to North America. Ten of these grow in Canada: Sugar, Black, Silver, Red, Mountain, Striped, Douglas, Vine and the Manitoba. With the exception of four species, native maples are large trees. At least one of the ten species grows naturally in every province.

All provinces have established arboreal emblems and this emblem is an important element within the family of national symbols.

The maple tree was officially proclaimed national arboreal emblem of Canada on April 25, 1996. It was published in the Canada Gazette May 15, 1996.

B.8.3

Maple leaf

The North American Indians have discovered the food properties of maple sap, which they gathered every spring, well before the coming of the first settlers.

As early as 1700, according to historians, the maple leaf served as a Canadian symbol.

In 1834, Ludger Duvernay is reported to have proposed the maple leaf as an emblem of Canada when the Société Saint-Jean-Baptiste was founded on the 24 of June of that year.

Also in 1834, the Société Saint-Jean-Baptiste of Lower Canada adopted the maple leaf as a distinctive insignia.

In 1836, Le Canadien, a newspaper published in Lower Canada, referred to it as a suitable emblem for Canada.

In 1860, at a public meeting held in Toronto in August, the maple leaf was adopted as the national emblem of Canada for use in the decorations for the Prince of Wales' visit.

In 1867, Alexander Muir, a Toronto schoolmaster, composed the song The Maple Leaf Forever.

It appears on the coats of arms granted to Quebec and Ontario in 1868 and as a distinctive emblem on the coat of arms of Canada proclaimed in 1921.

In 1914, Canadian soldiers wore the maple leaf on their military badges, as it was the dominant symbol used by almost all the Canadian regiments serving in the Great War.

In 1939, at the time of World War II, Canadian troops used the maple leaf as a distinctive sign, displaying it on regimental badges and Canadian army and naval equipment.

In 1957, the colour of the maple leaves on the arms of Canada was changed from green to red, one of Canada's official colours.

On February 15, 1965, the red maple leaf flag was inaugurated as the national flag of Canada.

B.8.4

Canada's national colours – red and white

History records that in the First Crusade Bohemund I, a Norman lord, had red crosses cut from his mantles and distributed to the 12,000 crusaders, who wore them as a distinctive badge on their garments.

In subsequent crusades, each nation was distinguished by a cross of a different colour. France long had a red cross on its banners while England used a white cross. Time and again in history red and white are found as the colours of France or of England.

Red and white were approved as Canada's official colours in the proclamation of her coat of arms in 1921.

B.8.5

Commercial use and protection of Canadian symbols and emblems

- **Purposes and conditions of use by the public of certain Canadian symbols and emblems**

1. Subject to section 2 and 3 any person may, in the design of souvenirs and articles of a commemorative nature, in the temporary decoration of premises and in displays in newspapers and other periodic publications, use reproductions of the following symbols and emblems:

- (a) the arms of Canada;
- (b) the national flag of Canada; and
- (c) the pictorial representation of a uniformed member of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police.

2. The symbols and emblems named in section 1 may be used for the purposes set out in section 1 on condition that:

- (a) the souvenir, commemorative article, temporary decoration or display;
 - (i) conforms to good taste;
 - (ii) is free from advertisement, other than the name of the firm;
 - (iii) is free from any implication that the firm, its workers wares or its services have received Government approval or authority;
 - (iv) will not be used as a premium or selling aid; and

- (v) will not, in the case of souvenirs or other commemorative articles, be sold or advertised or offered for sale after June 30, 1968, and, in the case of temporary decorations and displays, will be removed or discontinued not later than June 30, 1968; and
- (b) no application will be made for registration of any design or mark consisting of or involving any of such emblems or symbols.
- 3. The symbols and emblems named in section 1 may be shown for normal news purposes in newspapers and magazines, in cinemas and on television, but may not be used for advertising.
- 4. Any person may use a design or trademark incorporating the maple leaf that forms part of the national flag on the condition that:
 - (a) the use of the design or trademark conforms to good taste;
 - (b) an applicant for the registration of such design or trademark disclaims, in his application, the right to the exclusive use of the maple leaf; and
 - (c) the owner of such design or trademark will not attempt to prevent anyone else from using the maple leaf.

• **Use of Canadian symbols abroad as an element of a foreign trademark**

Under Article 6.ter of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property (Stockholm text, 1967),

“(1)(a) The countries of the Union agree to refuse or to invalidate the registration, and to prohibit by appropriate measures the use, without authorization by the competent authorities, either as trademarks or as elements of trademarks, of armorial bearings, flags, and other State emblems, of the countries of the Union, official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty adopted by them, and any imitation from a heraldic point of view.”

“(9) The countries of the Union undertake to prohibit the unauthorized use in trade of the State armorial bearings of the other countries of the Union when the use is of such a nature as to be misleading as to the origin of the goods.”

Pursuant to paragraph 3 of Article 6.ter Canada has notified to the World Intellectual Property Organization its wish to protect the Canadian flag, coat of arms and 11 point red maple leaf emblem against unauthorized use.

It is prohibited to use the arms or the flag of Canada in a design or trademark or as part of a design or trademark. It is authorized to use the eleven-point red maple leaf as a part of a design or trademark registered abroad by a Canadian company (Ex. Bata Ltd.).

- **Canada wordmark**

In Canada, the Government of Canada has exclusive rights of use of the Canada wordmark under the *Trade Marks Act*. However, the Government of Canada has not registered the Canada wordmark abroad as a trademark. However, protection may be sought under the general protection of the Canadian flag.

- **Use of flag for commercial purposes**

The use of the flag for commercial purposes is prohibited under the *Trade Marks Act* (this is apart from the protection on the Canadian wordmark under the *Trade Mark Act*). Internationally, the Canadian flag is protected under the Paris Convention for the protection of industrial property, to which Canada is party. Canada is party to the 1934 London text of the Paris Convention and Administrative Provisions of the 1967 Stockholm text.

The countries of the union agree to refuse or to invalidate the registration, and to prohibit by appropriate measures the use, without authorization by the competent authorities, either as trademarks or as part of trademarks, of armorial bearings, flags and other state emblems, of the countries of the union, official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty adopted by them, and any imitation from a heraldic point of view. Under the Paris Convention Canada has notified the Canadian flag to the predecessor organization of the World Intellectual Property Organization, which in turn has circulated the flag to all contracting parties.

B.8 - 8

P.C. 1965-1623



PRIVY COUNCIL • CONSEIL PRIVÉ

AT THE GOVERNMENT HOUSE AT OTTAWA
THURSDAY, the 2nd day of SEPTEMBER, 1965

PRESENT:

HIS EXCELLENCY

THE GOVERNOR GENERAL IN COUNCIL

His Excellency the Governor General in Council, on the recommendation of the Secretary of State, pursuant to subsection (2) of section 9 of the Trade Marks Act, is pleased hereby to consent on behalf of Her Majesty to the use by the public of the Arms of Canada, the National Flag of Canada, a pictorial representation of a uniformed member of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police and the eleven point maple leaf that forms a part of the National Flag of Canada for the purposes and on the conditions set out in the Schedule hereto.

CERTIFIED TO BE A TRUE COPY - COPIE CERTIFIÉE CONFOR

A handwritten signature in cursive script, reading "Gordon F. Chalmers".

CLERK OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL - LE GREFFIER DU CONSEIL PRI

P.C. 1965-1623
APPENDIX

PURPOSES AND CONDITIONS OF USE BY THE PUBLIC
OF CERTAIN CANADIAN SYMBOLS AND EMBLEMS

1. Subject to sections 2 and 3 any person may, in the design of souvenirs and articles of a commemorative nature, in the temporary decoration of premises and in displays in newspapers and other periodic publications, use reproductions of the following symbols and emblems:

- (a) the Arms of Canada;
- (b) the National Flag of Canada; and
- (c) the pictorial representation of a uniformed member of the Royal Canadian Mounted Police.

2. The symbols and emblems named in section 1 may be used for the purposes set out in section 1 on condition that:

- (a) the souvenir, commemorative article, temporary decoration or display;
 - (i) conforms to good taste;
 - (ii) is free from advertisement, other than the name of the firm;
 - (iii) is free from any implication that the firm, its wares or its services have received Government approval or authority;
 - (iv) will not be used as a premium or selling aid; and
 - (v) will not, in the case of souvenirs or other commemorative articles, be sold or advertised or offered for sale after June 30, 1968, and, in the case of temporary decorations and displays, will be removed or discontinued not later than June 30, 1968; and
- (b) no application will be made for registration of any design or mark consisting of or involving any of such emblems or symbols.

3. The symbols and emblems named in section 1 may be shown for normal news purposes in newspapers and magazines, in cinemas and on television, but may not be used for advertising.

4. Any person may use a design or trade mark incorporating the maple leaf that forms part of the National Flag on condition that:

- (a) the use of the design or trade mark conforms to good taste;
- (b) an applicant for the registration of such design or trade mark disclaims, in his application, the right to the exclusive use of the maple leaf; and
- (c) the owner of such design or trade mark will not attempt to prevent anyone else from using the maple leaf.

B.8.6

Tartans

■ Official tartans

• Nova Scotia tartan

The Nova Scotia tartan was designed by Mrs. Bessie Murray. It was registered in the books of the Court of the Lord Lyon on March 7, 1956 and adopted as the official tartan of the province under the authority of the Nova Scotia Tartan Act in 1963. Represented in the design are the blue of sea and sky, the dark and light greens of evergreens and deciduous trees characteristic of the province, the white of rocks and coastline surf, the gold of Nova Scotia's Royal Charter and the red symbolizing the lion rampant on the Nova Scotia crest.

• New Brunswick tartan

The New Brunswick tartan was designed by the Loomcrofters of Gagetown, New Brunswick. The design was adopted as the official tartan by Order in Council in 1959. The tartan is registered at the Court of the Lord Lyon, King of Arms of Scotland. Represented in the design are the forest green of lumbering; the meadow green of agriculture; the blue of coastal and inland waters; and an interweaving of gold, symbol of the province's potential wealth. The red blocks signify the loyalty and devotion of the early Loyalist settlers and the Royal New Brunswick Regiment.

• Manitoba tartan

The Manitoba tartan, designed by Hugh Kirkwood Rankine now registered at the Court of the Lord Lyon, King of Arms of Scotland, was given Royal Assent on May 1, 1962. The red squares represent the Red River Settlement; the green squares signify the natural resources of the province; the azure blue squares represent Lord Selkirk, the founder of the Red River Settlement; the dark green lines represent the people of different cultures and races who have enriched the life of the province; and the golden lines signify the grain and other agricultural products of Manitoba.

- **British Columbia tartan**

The province's tartan was designed by Earl K. Ward of Victoria and officially approved by the British Columbia Centennial Committee for the 1966-67 Centenaries. Represented in the design are the blue of the Pacific Ocean, the green of the forests, the red of the maple leaf, the white of the dogwood floral emblem, and the gold of the crown and sun in the provincial arms.

- **Prince Edward Island tartan**

Mrs. Jean Reid of Covehead designed the Prince Edward Island tartan which was adopted after a province wide contest of June 16, 1960. The reddish-brown signifies the redness of the soil, the green represents the grass and trees, the white is for the caps on the waves, the yellow for the sun.

- **Saskatchewan tartan**

Saskatchewan's official tartan, registered at the Court of the Lord Lyon, King of Arms of Scotland, was designed by Mrs. Frank L. Bastedo, the wife of a former lieutenant governor. The tartan has seven colours with gold representing prairie wheat; brown for summer fallow; green for the forests; red for the prairie lily; yellow for rapeseed flower and sun flower; white for snow; and black for oil and coal.

- **Alberta tartan**

Designed by the Edmonton Rehabilitation Society for the Handicapped, the Alberta tartan was given official recognition by an Act of the Legislature assented to March 30, 1961. The predominant colours are green for the province's forests and gold for its fields of wheat. Other attributes of the province are represented by blue for the skies and lakes, pink for the wild rose, and black for the mineral resources of coal and petroleum.

- **Northwest Territories tartan**

The official tartan of the Northwest Territories designed by Mrs. Janet Anderson Thomson was unveiled at the 48th Session of the Territorial Council in January of 1973. The new tartan is in the traditional design with colours of green and brown and shades of red.

- **Yukon tartan**

The tartan was designed in 1965 by Janet Couture, of Faro and was officially registered by Lord Lyon, King of Arms of Her Majesty's Register House in Edinburgh on October 24, 1984. A Yukon Tartan Act was passed during the fourth session of the 25th Legislature on November 29, 1984. Yukoner's pride in the territory is reflected in the brilliant colours of the Yukon tartan. This unique design incorporates stripes in varying widths of green, magenta, white, yellow, and purple on a crystalline blue background. The blue represents the Yukon's sparkling, glacier fed waters and its clear mountain skies. Magenta reflects the colour of the Yukon's floral emblem, the firewood of late summer. Green is symbolic of Yukon's great expanses of wilderness forest and purple symbolizes the majestic thrust of mountains into the northern sky. White represents the purity of the winter snow that crowns the mountain peaks and blankets the alpine meadows. The yellow represents the long, soft evenings of the midnight sun, and the Yukon's famous deposits of gold.

- **Non official tartans**

- **Maple leaf tartan**

The colours of the maple leaf through the changing seasons became the basis for the tartan designed by David Weiser in 1964. Known as the Maple leaf tartan, the pattern incorporates the green of the leaves' summer foliage, the gold which appears in early autumn, the red which appears with the coming of the first frost, and the brown tones of the fallen leaves.

- **Ontario tartan**

The creation of the tartan inspired by the Provincial coat of arms was recognized as a symbol of Ontario for almost a century. The yellow is for the three maple leaves which appear on the green background of the coat of arms. The red is for the Cross of St. George. The black is for the bear which appears at the top of the shield. The brown is the colour-combination created by the moose on the left and the deer on the right of the shield. These five colours go to make up the tartan.

- **Quebec tartan**

The Plaid of Quebec tartan owes its inspiration to the Provincial coat of arms which in turn reflects the history of the province. The colours of the tartan are taken from the three horizontal divisions of the shield. The blue is for the field of the upper division containing three fleurs de lys. The green is for the sprig of maple leaves on the lower division. The red is for the background of the centre division. The gold is for the lion rampant in the third division and also for the crown of the crest. The white is for the scroll with the motto "Je me souviens" (I remember).

- **Newfoundland tartan**

The Newfoundland tartan was designed by St. John's businessman Sam Wilansky in the early 60's. The tartan has the colours of gold, white, brown and red on a green background. The gold represents the sun rays; the green represents the pine clad hills; the white represents the cloak of snow; the brown represents the Iron Isle and the red represents the royal standard for which our fathers stood.

B.8.7

Personal flags and standards

- **the Sovereign and members of the Royal Family**

The Sovereign and members of the Royal Family are entitled to display personal flags and standards which are normally flown to denote their presence. These flags and standards are flown day and night at any building in which they are in residence or in which they are attending a public function.

Generally, personal flags and standards are flown behind the saluting base when troops are inspected and on Her Majesty's ships when they are aboard.

Normally, personal flags and standards are broken from the flag pole as members of the Royal Family step on the saluting base or enter the building and are lowered as they leave. The saluting base flag pole must therefore be rigged with halyards.

Her Majesty's Personal Canadian flag and standards of members of the Royal Family will take precedence before the national flag; they are never half-masted.

These flags and standards, like all personal flags, are never used by others.

Although Her Majesty The Queen has several standards and personal flags which are displayed according to the event and the location, in Canada, only The Queen's Personal Canadian flag will be displayed to mark her presence (as illustrated in Figure 1). Royal flags and standards are normally provided by the Household Staff and are lent to the Department of Canadian Heritage Visit Staff prior to the visit; The Queen's Personal Canadian flag is obtained from Rideau Hall.

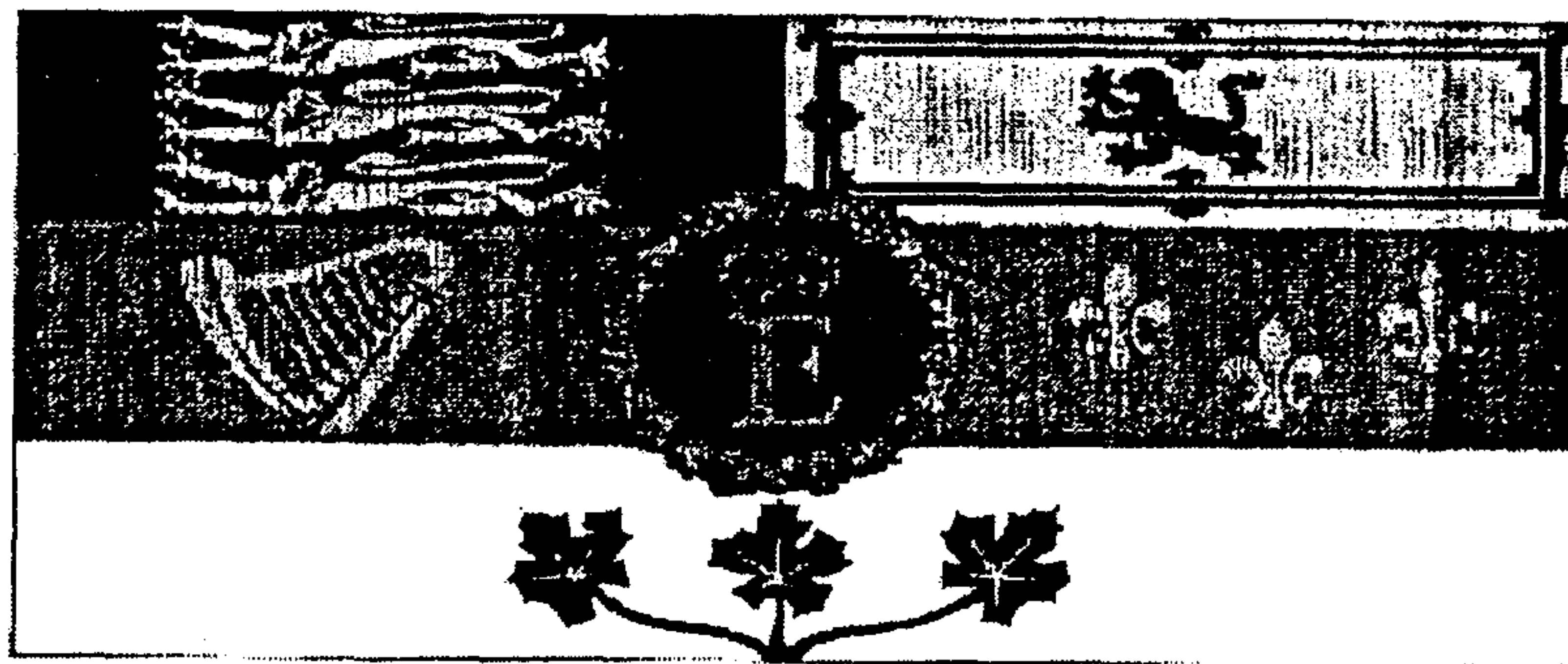


Figure 1

If more than one member of the Royal Family is present on an official visit, only the standard of the member taking precedence shall be flown.

Flags and standards of foreign heads of state may be flown as the occasion demands but normally only the foreign national flag is flown in connection with a Head of State visit. The foreign national flag will take precedence after the national flag.

• **The Governor General's flag**

The Governor General's flag (Figure 2) has precedence over all flags in Canada except The Queen's Personal Canadian flag and the flag of the Lieutenant Governor of a Province at the Lieutenant Governor's residence or on occasion when the Lieutenant Governor is performing his duties as The Queen's representative in the Province. The same provisions specified for the Sovereign's flag and other personal standards apply to the Governor General's flag.



Figure 2

• the Lieutenant Governor's flags

The flags of the lieutenant governors of provinces within the province of their jurisdiction are treated in a manner similar to the Governor General's flag and take precedence over all flags except The Queen's Personal Canadian flag (Figure 3).

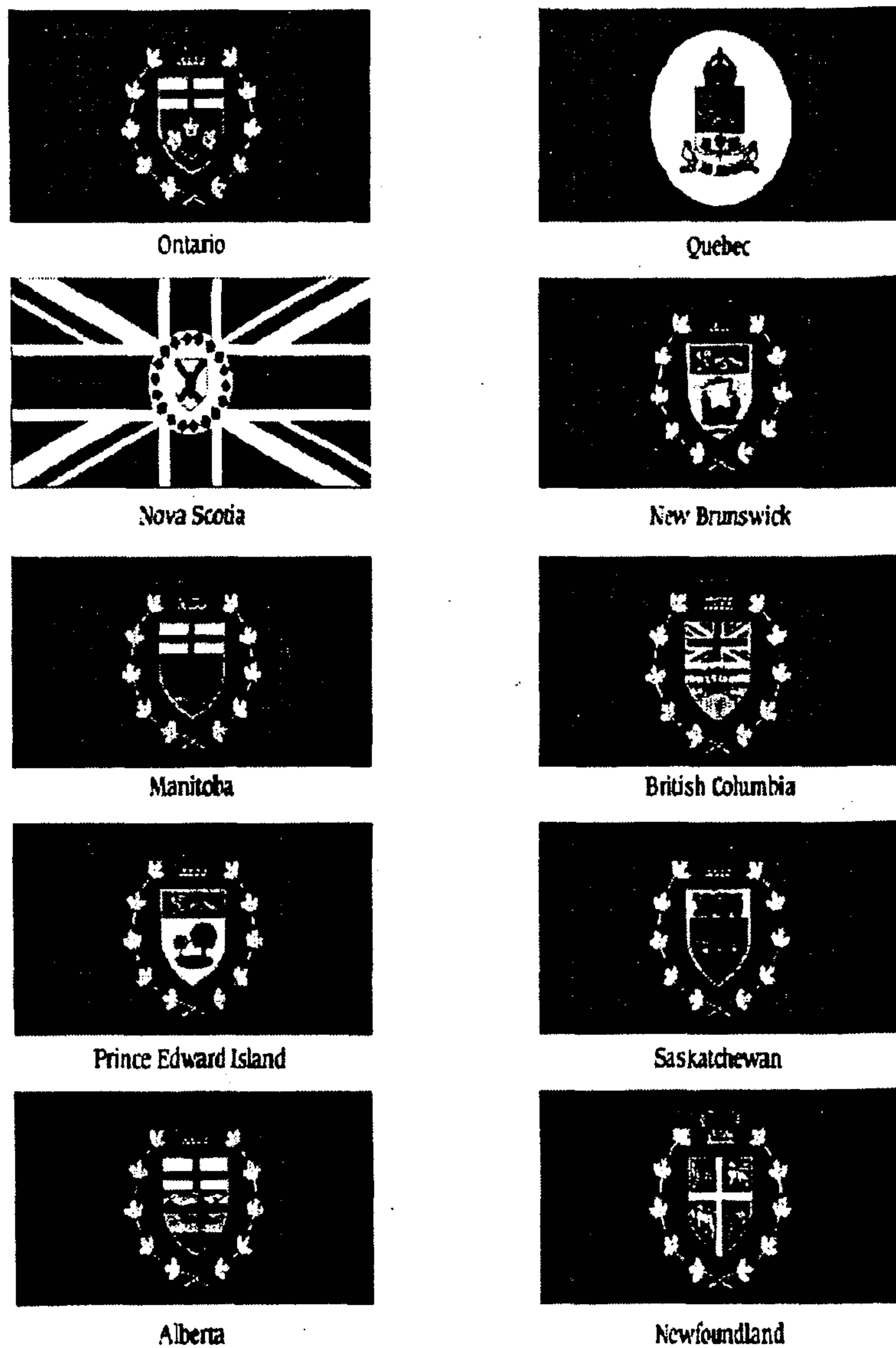


Figure 3

B.8.8

The Great Seal of Canada

The Great Seal of Canada is used on all state documents such as proclamations and commissions of cabinet ministers, senators, judges and senior government officials.

The seal is made of steel, weighs 3.75 kilograms and is 12.7 centimeters in diameter. The seal dates back to the beginning of the reign of Queen Elizabeth II, Queen of Canada. A new seal will be struck for her successor.

The seal bears the effigy of Queen Elizabeth II, in her robes, holding the orb and sceptre, and shows her sitting on the coronation chair.

The present seal was made by the Royal Canadian Mint. The inscriptions on it are in French and English. Previous Great Seals of Canada were inscribed in Latin.

The seal is kept by the Deputy Registrar General of Canada who is also the Deputy Minister of Industry. The Registrar General is Minister of Industry.

B.8 - 18



B

EMBLEMS

B.9

Protection of emblems outside Canada

B.9.1

Use of "Canada" and derivation thereof and Canadian symbols abroad

For a number of years the Canadian Government has sought to protect the word "Canada" and derivations thereof and such symbols as the Canadian flag, the coat of arms and the 11 point red maple leaf emblem from unauthorized use abroad, particularly in foreign trademarks and trade names. The basic reason for this policy is the desire to preserve Canada's image abroad and to help protect the interests of Canadian manufacturers and exporters in general.

B.9 - 2



(THE PARIS CONVENTION FOR THE PROTECTION OF INDUSTRIAL
PROPERTY IS THE PRINCIPAL INTERNATIONAL INSTRUMENT
REGULATING THE INTERNATIONAL TREATMENT TO BE AFFORDED
PATENTS, TRADEMARKS AND INDUSTRIAL DESIGNS.)

s.23



(3) Use of Canadian symbols abroad as an element of a foreign trademark

Under Article 6(*ter*) of the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property (Stockholm text, 1967),

“(1)(a) The countries of the Union agree to refuse or to invalidate the registration, and to prohibit by appropriate measures the use, without authorization by the competent authorities, either as trademarks or as elements of trademarks, of armorial bearings, flags, and other State emblems, of the countries of the Union, official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty adopted by them, and any imitation from a heraldic point of view.

“(9) The countries of the Union undertake to prohibit the unauthorized use in trade of the State armorial bearings of the other countries of the Union when the use is of such a nature as to be misleading as to the origin of the goods.”

s.23

(Extract from a memorandum (JLE-0370) dated March 29, 1984 to all missions abroad from the Department of External Affairs).

B.9.2

Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property

of March 20, 1883, (as revised at Brussels on December 14, 1900, at Washington on June 2, 1911, at The Hague on November 6, 1925, at London on June 2, 1934, at Lisbon on October 31, 1958, and at Stockholm on July 14, 1967, and as amended on October 2, 1979).

Article 6(ter)

[Marks: Prohibitions concerning State Emblems, Official Hallmarks and Emblems of Intergovernmental Organizations]

(1) (a) The countries of the Union agree to refuse or to invalidate the registration, and to prohibit by appropriate measures the use, without authorization by the competent authorities, either as trademarks or as elements of trademarks, of armorial bearings, flags, and other State emblems, of the countries of the Union, official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty adopted by them, and any imitation from a heraldic point of view.

(b) The provisions of subparagraph (a), above, shall apply equally to armorial bearings, flags, other emblems, abbreviations, and names, of international intergovernmental organizations of which one or more countries of the Union are members, with the exception of armorial bearings, flags, other emblems, abbreviations, and names, that are already the subject of international agreements in force, intended to ensure their protection.

(c) No country of the Union shall be required to apply the provisions of subparagraph (b), above, to the prejudice of the owners of rights acquired in good faith before the entry into force, in that country, of the Convention. The countries of the Union shall not be required to apply the said provisions when the use or registration referred to in subparagraph (a), above, is not of such a nature as to suggest to the public that a connection exists between the organization concerned and the armorial bearings, flags, emblems, abbreviations, and names, or if such use or registration is probably not of such a nature as to mislead the public as to the existence of a connection between the user and the organization.

(2) Prohibition of the use of official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty shall apply solely in cases where the marks in which they are incorporated are intended to be used on goods of the same or a similar kind.

(3) (a) For the application of these provisions, the countries of the Union agree to communicate reciprocally, through the intermediary of the International Bureau, the list of State emblems, and official signs and hallmarks indicating control and warranty, which they desire, or may hereafter desire, to place wholly or within certain limits under the protection of this Article, and all subsequent modifications of such list. Each country of the Union shall in due course make available to the public the lists so communicated.

Nevertheless such communication is not obligatory in respect of flags of States.

(b) The provisions of subparagraph (b) of paragraph (1) of this Article shall apply only to such armorial bearings, flags, other emblems, abbreviations, and names, of international intergovernmental organizations as the latter have communicated to the countries of the Union through the intermediary of the International Bureau.

(4) Any country of the Union may, within a period of twelve months from the receipt of the notification, transmit its objections, if any, through the intermediary of the International Bureau, to the country or international intergovernmental organization concerned.

(5) In the case of State flags, the measures prescribed by paragraph (1), above, shall apply solely to marks registered after November 6, 1925.

(6) In the case of State emblems other than flags, and of official signs and hallmarks of the countries of the Union, and in the case of armorial bearings, flags, other emblems, abbreviations, and names, of international intergovernmental organizations, and names, of international intergovernmental organizations, these provisions shall apply only to marks registered more than two months after receipt of the communication provided for in paragraph (3), above.

(7) In cases of bad faith, the countries shall have the right to cancel even those marks incorporating State emblems, signs, and hallmarks, which were registered before November 6, 1925.

(8) Nationals of any country who are authorized to make use of the State emblems, signs, and hallmarks, of their country may use them even if they are similar to those of another country.

(9) The countries of the Union undertake to prohibit the unauthorized use in trade of the State armorial bearings of the other countries of the Union, when the use is of such a nature as to be misleading as to the origin of the goods.

B.9 - 6

(10) The above provisions shall not prevent the countries from exercising the right given in paragraph (3) of Article 6(*ter*), Section B, to refuse or to invalidate the registration of marks incorporating, without authorization, armorial bearings, flags, other State emblems, or official signs and hallmarks adopted by a country of the Union, as well as the distinctive signs of international intergovernmental organizations referred to in paragraph (1), above.

[Extract from: World Intellectual Property Organizations, Geneva 1990].

B

EMBLEMS

B.10

Emblems of the provinces and territories

B.10.1

Arms

- **Ontario**

Royal Warrant of Queen Victoria, May 26, 1868

Gazetted, November 16, 1869

Augmented of crest, supporters and motto by Royal Warrant of
King Edward VII of February 27, 1909

Gazetted, April 24, 1909

- **Quebec**

Royal Warrant of Queen Victoria, May 26, 1868

Gazetted, November 16, 1869

Revised by Order of the Lieutenant Governor in Council, December 9, 1939

- **Nova Scotia**

Royal Warrant of King George V, January 19, 1929

restoring the Arms granted by King Charles I in 1625

Gazetted, November 30, 1929

- **New Brunswick**

Royal Warrant of Queen Victoria, May 26, 1868

Gazetted, November 16, 1869

Augmented of crest and motto by Order of the Lieutenant Governor in Council
in 1966

Augmented of supporters by Royal Warrant of Queen Elizabeth II,
September 24, 1984

Gazetted, February 8, 1985

- **Manitoba**

Royal Warrant of King Edward VII, May 10, 1905
Gazetted, September 23, 1905
Augmented of crest, supporters and motto by Warrant of Governor General
Ramon John Hnatyshyn, Governor General of Canada
Gazetted, December 5, 1992.

- **British Columbia**

Royal Warrant of King Edward VII, March 31, 1906
Gazetted, June 2, 1906
Crest and supporters assumed by the Province later granted by Royal Warrant
of Queen Elizabeth II, October 15, 1987
Gazetted, December 5, 1987

- **Prince Edward Island**

Royal Warrant of King Edward VII, May 30, 1905
Gazetted, September 23, 1905

- **Saskatchewan**

Royal Warrant of King Edward VII, August 25, 1906
Gazetted, October 13, 1906
Augmented of crest, supporters and motto by Royal Warrant of Queen
Elizabeth II (signed by Governor General Jeanne Sauvé),
September 16, 1986
Gazetted, October 4, 1986

- **Alberta**

Royal Warrant of King Edward VII, May 30, 1907
Gazetted, July 13, 1907
Augmented of crest, supporters and motto by Royal Warrant of Queen
Elizabeth II (signed by Governor General Edward Schreyer), July 30, 1980
Gazetted, September 1, 1980

- **Newfoundland**

Royal Warrant of King Charles I, January 1, 1637

- **Northwest Territories**

Approved by Queen Elizabeth II, February 24, 1956

- **Yukon**

Approved by Queen Elizabeth II, February 24, 1956

B.10.2

Flags

- **Ontario**

Act of Legislature assented to April 14, 1965
Queen Elizabeth II's approval of use of Royal Union flag given on
May 11, 1965
Flag raised on May 21, 1965

- **Quebec**

Order of the Lieutenant Governor in Council, January 21, 1948
Flag raised on January 21, 1948
Act of Legislature assented to March 9, 1950
The Quebec flag must be flown on or in front of the municipal building where the
meetings of the council are held, to the right if two flags are flown or in the
middle in other cases. (Article 318.1 of Division IX of the "Loi sur les élections
contestées")

- **Nova Scotia**

Royal Warrant of King George V, January 19, 1929
assigning Arms and Banner
(Not known when flag first raised)

- **New Brunswick**

Royal Warrant of Queen Victoria, May 26, 1868
assigning Arms and Banner
Flag design proclaimed by the Lieutenant Governor, February 24, 1965

- **Manitoba**

Act of Legislature assented to May 11, 1965
Queen Elizabeth II's approval of use of Royal Union flag given
on August 27, 1965
Flag raised on May 12, 1966

- **British Columbia**

Royal Warrant of King Edward VII, March 31, 1906
assigning Arms and Banner
Flag adopted by Order of the Lieutenant Governor in Council on June 27, 1960

- **Prince Edward Island**

Royal Warrant of King Edward VII, May 30, 1905
assigning Arms and Banner
Act of Legislature assented to March 24, 1964

- **Saskatchewan**

Act of Legislature assented to March 31, 1969
Proclaimed by the Lieutenant Governor on September 22, 1969

- **Alberta**

Act of Legislature assented to May 1, 1968
Proclaimed into force June 1, 1968

- **Newfoundland**

Act of Legislature assented to May 28, 1980

- **Northwest Territories**

Ordinance of the Territorial Council assented to January 1, 1969

- **Yukon**

Ordinance of the Territorial Council assented to December 1, 1967

B.10.3

Other emblems

Although national emblems have great significance and appeal, it is natural that in a country as big as Canada thoughts should also turn to the flowers or other familiar things that remind Canadians of their particular home surroundings. We look with special affection on the flowers that we remember from our youth, and perhaps that is why so many of the state flowers of the United States and the provincial and territorial flowers of Canada were first chosen by a vote of the schoolchildren.

All ten provinces and the two territories of Canada have official floral emblems. They also have other provincial symbols (such as tree, gemstone, colours, bird, mineral, tartan, plant, mammal).

- **Ontario**

In Ontario, the white trillium (*Trillium grandiflorum*), also known as the wake-robin and the white lily, was officially adopted in 1937. It was recommended by a special committee of botanists to the Ontario Horticultural Association, which canvassed the views of other horticultural societies in the province, also of high schools and collegiate institutes. In a British botanical work published in 1760 there is a reference to the trilliums as "the herb True Love of Canada."

The white pine, the amethyst and the colours green and yellow are other symbols of Ontario.

- **Quebec**

In Quebec, the white garden lily (*Lilium candidum*) was officially adopted in 1963. The lily was chosen because of its connection with the historical origins of Quebec. It replaced the wild iris, symbol of the fleur-de-lis, for many years the unofficial emblem of the province.

The snowy owl (*Nyctea scandiaca*) and the yellow birch (*Betula alleghaniensis* Britton) are the other symbols of Quebec.

- **Nova Scotia**

In Nova Scotia, the trailing arbutus or mayflower (*Epigaea repens* L) was officially adopted in 1901, when an act of the legislature stated that it "is hereby declared to be and from time immemorial to have been the emblem of Nova Scotia." As far back as 1825 it was used as a decorative motif on the front page of the Nova Scotian. During the 19th century it appeared on the buttons of the Nova Scotia militia, and on postage stamps along with the rose, the thistle and the shamrock.

The Nova Scotia tartan (the first provincial-territorial tartan in Canada; registered with the Court of the Lord Lyon, King of Arms of Scotland, 1956), the red spruce, the agate (gemstone) and the stilbite (mineral) are other symbols of Nova Scotia.

- **New Brunswick**

In New Brunswick, the purple violet, (*Viola palmata*, var, *cucullata*) was officially adopted in 1936. The agencies active in this choice were the Women's Institutes, the Lieutenant Governor and finally the schoolchildren.

The New Brunswick tartan, the balsam fir and the black-capped chickadee are other symbols of New Brunswick.

- **Manitoba**

In Manitoba, the prairie crocus, or anemone patens (*Pulsatilla ludoviciana*), also known as the pasque-flower, the windflower and – because of its furry petals – sometimes called the gosling plant, was officially adopted in 1906. Interest had first been aroused by the Manitoba Horticultural Society. A subsequent vote amongst schoolchildren put the crocus in first place, the prairie lily second and the wild rose third.

The Manitoba tartan, the white spruce and the great gray owl are other symbols of Manitoba.

- **British Columbia**

In British Columbia, the flower of the dogwood tree (*Cornus Nuttalli*) became the official floral emblem in 1956. The columbine had also been suggested.

The British Columbia tartan, the western red cedar, jade, and the Steller's jay are other symbols of British Columbia.

- **Prince Edward Island**

In Prince Edward Island, the lady's slipper was designated as the province's floral emblem in 1947. A more precise botanical name, *Cypripedium acaule*, was included in an amendment to the Floral Emblems Act in 1965.

The Prince Edward Island tartan and the blue jay are other symbols of Prince Edward Island.

- **Saskatchewan**

In Saskatchewan, the orange-red lily (*Lilium philadelphicum* L. var. *Andinum*), also known as the prairie lily, was officially adopted in 1941. The suggestion was made by the Saskatchewan Natural History Society to a special committee that had been set up to consider the matter.

In 1945 the prairie chicken, or sharp-tailed grouse, was declared a provincial emblem. The association of animal emblems, with other provinces (e.g., the bison or buffalo in Manitoba) is usually the result of these animals appearing on the provincial coat of arms. The white birch, wheat (sheaf), the sharp-tailed grouse and the potash are other symbols of Saskatchewan.

- **Alberta**

In Alberta, the wild rose (*Rosa acicularis*) was officially adopted in 1930. The Women's Institutes took up and passed on to the Department of Education a suggestion by the editor of an Edmonton newspaper that a provincial floral emblem should be selected. The final choice was made by the schoolchildren of the province.

The Alberta tartan, the lodgepole pine, the petrified wood, the great horned owl, the Rocky Mountain big horn sheep and the colours blue and gold are other symbols of Alberta.

- **Newfoundland**

In Newfoundland, the pitcher-plant (*Sarracenia purpurea*), also known as the Indian dipper and the huntsman's cup, was suggested for use on the coinage by Queen Victoria and was made an official emblem in 1954.

The caribou is also an accepted emblem of Newfoundland. In Beaumont Hamel Park in France, a life-size bronze statue of a caribou commemorates the historic attack on Beaumont Hamel, July 1, 1916, when almost the entire Newfoundland Regiment was wiped out. A replica in Bowring Park, St. John's, was unveiled in July 1, 1928. The gemstone labradorite is another symbol of Newfoundland.

- **Northwest Territories**

Emblems of the territories were officially adopted in 1957. For the Northwest Territories, the floral emblem is the creamy-white mountain avens (*Dryas integrifolia*), which blooms in profusion for a short time each spring. The jack pine and the native gold are also other symbols of the Northwest Territories.

- **Yukon**

The floral emblem of the Yukon Territory is the magenta-purple fireweed (*Epilobium angustifolium*), which by late July covers the hills and roadsides. The Yukon tartan, the lazulite (gemstone) and the common raven are other symbols of the Yukon Territory.



Chapter C

Heraldry

C

HERALDRY

C.1

Development of heraldry

Armorial bearings came into use as a means of identification. They were important in both times of peace and war.

Centuries ago, few persons could read; nor had our ancestors the advantage of newspaper portraits, moving pictures, or the thousand other ways we now possess of recognizing and identifying people. Heraldry may be described as a form of picture-writing, worked out in the Middle Ages to afford a means of recognition. At that time, people had fine artistic perceptions, and utilized bright colours in developing a system of heraldry that was not only ingenious and practical, but also very beautiful.

Despite printing, photography and other modern inventions, we still make use of emblems, badges and other symbols. The maple leaf at once suggests Canada; the thistle, Scotland; the rose, England; the shamrock, Ireland; the leek, Wales; the lily, France. Each one is used and regarded as an emblem. The people of the Middle Ages transformed this method of appealing to the eye into a system in which the coat of arms was the most elaborate form. In fact the system became a science.

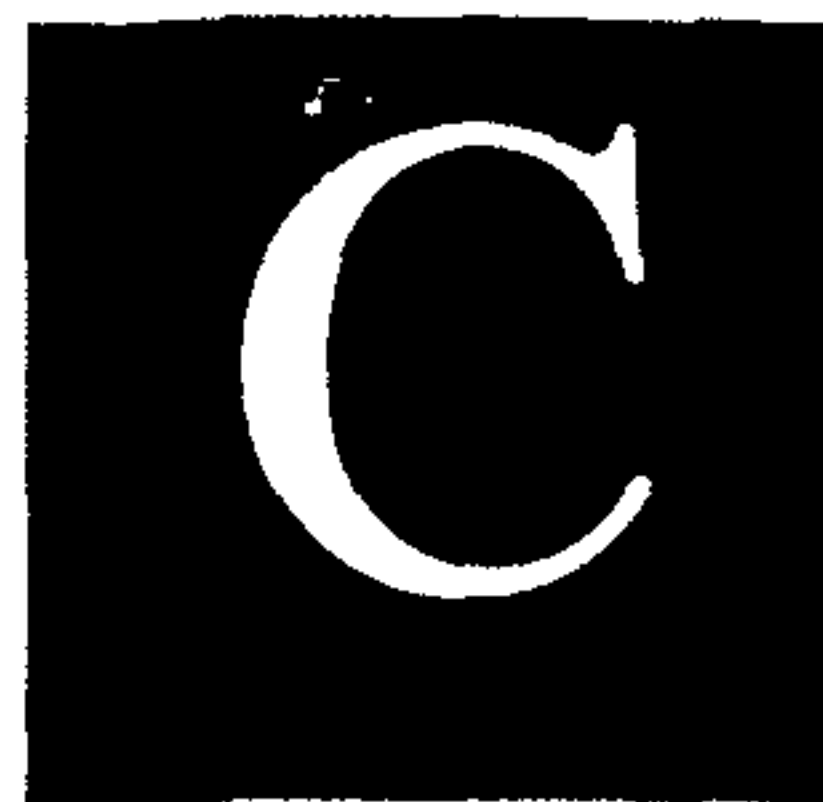
It is curious to note that no country has abandoned the practice of using armorial bearings, emblems and symbols being important for preserving traditions and inspiring love of country. Of these symbols, the coat of arms and the flag are the chief elements. Although the flag is the more frequently used, the coat of arms is the oldest and often serves as the foundation for the flag.

The use of coat-armour began in a thoroughly practical manner. Uniforms were unknown and would have been too expensive in early times. Therefore soldiers carried banners bearing the emblems of their chiefs. On going into battle, every man of importance took care to have his armorial bearings, that was, his identification mark, clearly painted on his shield so that he would be recognized when the visor of his helmet was down. When he travelled on peaceful occasions, he had it embroidered on his coat; he had it carved on the front of his house and, when lodged at an inn, he would announce that he was staying there by hanging up his shield outside. Young people of social position, though seldom taught to read or write, were carefully trained in armoury. When a competitor found himself in a town the day before a tournament began, he would know who was there by merely glancing at the shields, which their owners had displayed.

Beginning with a simple use of badges and devices, heraldry developed into a science that did more than merely identify a man; it contrived to make known, in a small space, a surprising amount of information about his social position and family history. From his coat of arms, it might be possible to tell that his father was still alive, that he was a younger son, that he was married, that he was descended from this or that family, that he belonged to a younger branch of his family, and so forth. For example, the arms of the Prince of Wales are the royal arms with certain markings that indicate that he is an eldest son of a Sovereign who is still living. In contrast, the arms of a Royal Duke are the royal arms with certain other markings that show him to be a younger son of a Sovereign. Cadetcy, meaning descent from a junior branch of a family, is shown by what are called "differences", while "quarterings" indicate a right to bear the arms of more than one family.

The subject of quarterings and differences is important enough to warrant further clarification. A coat of arms is a sort of heirloom, shared by several members of a family. Supposing that early in the Middle Ages, some men assumed or were granted arms. These might be very simple, for example, say a gold band slanting across a blue field. Each eldest son, on succeeding to the leadership of the family, would inherit the right to that simple device. Assuming the family had continued in unbroken line to that time, the arms would also retain their original form, unless through marriage the arms of other families had been incorporated. The younger sons of the founder would use their father's arms with modifications. These modifications could be the inclusion of an object in the field or on the band, or as a border about the shield; this being a "difference". As each younger son established a branch of the family, the process would begin again; the eldest sons inheriting the simpler form, the younger sons adding further differences.

The right to use arms descended to daughters as well as to sons. It often happened that men married women who, like themselves, were "armigerous", that is to say, entitled to arms. This led to "quartering". Originally, in such a case, two shields would be used. If this was found to be inconvenient, the arms were halved or, in the technical language of heraldry, "impaled". In other words, the husband's own arms occupied the right while his wife's assumed the left half of his shield. Further, if the wife was in a heraldic sense an heiress, that is to say, if she had no brother, her children would quarter her arms. They would divide the family shield into four, placing their father's arms in the first and fourth quarters, and their mother's arms in the second and third quarters. Subsequent marriages might lead to fresh quarterings, and a family of considerable antiquity might thereby embody in its arms a number of coats, each indicative of marriage and descent.



HERALDRY

C.2

The Canadian Heraldic Authority¹

- **How was it created?**

Within the Commonwealth, all matters relating to heraldry are part of the Royal Prerogative. Armorial bearings are granted or confirmed by the Sovereign or by one of Her Majesty's officers of arms who has been delegated to exercise this power.

In 1947, the Letters Patent defining the authority of the Governor General expressly authorized the Governor General to exercise all the prerogatives, power and authorities that His Majesty George VI held as King of Canada. Since then, the Crown in Right of Canada has proclaimed a national flag, created a system of Canadian honours and repatriated the Constitution.

Although Canada assumed exercise of the full array of prerogative powers, authorization had never been sought for granting armorial bearings in Canada. Until heraldry was repatriated to Canada, Canadians who wished to acquire arms from a lawfully established authority under the Crown, were obliged to obtain them from one of Her Majesty's two heraldic offices in the United Kingdom: the College of Arms in London or the Court of the Lord Lyon in Edinburgh.

Clearly, it was time to create an indigenous Canadian mechanism for granting arms to Canadians and for promoting existing and future Canadian heraldic symbols.

The mechanism was created by new Letters Patent, signed by Her Majesty on the advice of Her Canadian Privy Council, which authorize and empower: "Our authorities lawfully belonging to Us as Queen of Canada in respect of the granting of armorial bearings in Canada". With these brief historic words, Canada became the first Commonwealth country to repatriate the exercise of this ancient authority.

¹ From Rideau Hall's publication titled "The Canadian Heraldic Authority", August 1990.

On June 4, 1988, then Governor General Jeanne Sauvé authorized the creation of the Canadian Heraldic Authority, which is the vehicle for administering the vice-regal heraldic responsibilities. Following creation of the Authority, new coat of arms have been granted and existing arms and symbols affirmed, using the Governor General's exercise of the Royal Prerogative of The Queen of Canada. These grants and affirmations strengthen Canada's identity, celebrate the nature of our communities and our families, and reinforce our pride in our country and in the Canadian family.

- **What are its objectives?**

The principal objective of the Canadian Heraldic Authority is to ensure that all Canadians who wish to use heraldry will have access to it. The Authority also encourages good heraldic practice in Canada by working to the highest standards of the art form and by developing research and registration procedures that are consistent with an international level of excellence.

Many of the records created by the Authority are accessible to the public, which helps to increase the awareness Canadians have of their heraldic heritage and the possibilities inherent in creating a new Canadian heraldry.

- **How is it structured?**

The Canadian Heraldic Authority is headed by His Excellency the Governor General. The officers, listed in order of seniority, are the Herald Chancellor, a position filled by the Secretary to the Governor General; the Deputy Herald Chancellor, who is the Deputy Secretary, Chancellery, a part of the Office of the Secretary to the Governor General; and the Chief Herald of Canada, principal advisor, who is also the Director of Heraldry, one of two programs administered by the Chancellery, the other being the Directorate of Honours. The Directorate of Heraldry includes other officers, the main ones being Athabaska Herald, responsible for policy and programs; Saint-Laurent Herald, who is Registrar and custodian of the Authority's Seal; and Fraser Herald, who is the Authority's principal artist.

Developing and maintaining a heraldic system and a national heraldry program for a country as geographically large, and as diverse in its social and cultural character, as Canada, is a challenging task. The Chief Herald and the other officers of the Authority arrange for consultations as required with senior representatives of federal departments and agencies, provincial governments and other societies and associations to ensure that the new Canadian heraldic system is appropriately sensitive to the heraldic needs of all Canadians.

- **How does it operate?**

The Authority's major activities include:

- granting of new arms;
- registration of new grants and of existing arms, flags and badges;
- registration of native symbols;
- registration of military badges, flags and other insignia of the Canadian Forces;
- registration of genealogical information related to inheritance or arms;
- provision of information on correct heraldic practice;
- provision of information on heraldic artists who produce graphic or architectural projects and manufactured products;
- development of, and involvement in, national and regional heraldic ceremonies.

Requests for new arms or registrations of arms already granted take the form of a "petition" addressed to the Chief Herald of Canada. They should set out the background of the petitioner, and, in the case of registrations of existing symbols, information on the original grant and a description of the legal relationship, by statute or descent of the petitioner, to the original recipient.

All petitions are reviewed by the Chief Herald, who seeks a warrant from the Herald Chancellor or his Deputy to grant the arms or other heraldic device deemed fitting in particular circumstances. If the warrant is issued, detailed design discussions are undertaken under the supervision of the Chief Herald or one of the other heralds. Once agreement has been reached regarding the content of the new symbol, Letters Patent are prepared, setting out the terms of the grant and providing a painting of the new arms.

Copies of all new grants are made for the archives of the Authority and the notice of the grant is published in the Canada Gazette. A more detailed description of the petition process for the various types of petitioners is available on request from the Authority.

Because arms are defined in law as a grant of honour from the Crown, the eligibility of individuals seeking arms is assessed in relation to their contributions to the country. The petitioner is responsible for the costs related to processing the petition, including artwork and research costs incurred in producing the granting documents. Average costs and detailed estimates are provided by the Authority in response to each petition.

As might be expected, the Authority is generating a historically significant body of documentation. At the heart of the process is a new national armorial, the Public Register of Arms, Flags and Badges of Canada. This cumulative index records, in pictures and text, the authority's armorial grants and registrations.

A separate record series has been created to hold genealogical registration files in support of claims to bear arms by lawful descent from an original recipient; in matters of personal heraldry, the Authority adheres to the principle of one person, one coat of arms. This requires creation of separate versions of an original grant or registration to distinguish different members of a family within one generation and in successive generations.

The Canadian heralds have introduced aesthetic innovations to the art form, taking advantage of the symbolism suggested by Canadian historical and natural landscape as well as by the particular needs of individual petitioners.

Although a great deal of development work remains, it is possible to create a Canadian heraldic system that is aesthetically innovative, true to the art form and alive with the dramatic possibilities of serving a bilingual, multicultural nation. It gives rise to new symbols that are an accurate and worthy reflection of Canadians, their governments and institutions; the people of this country can help shape the system and keep the Authority fully aware of their desires in heraldic matters. Proposals and questions should be sent to the:

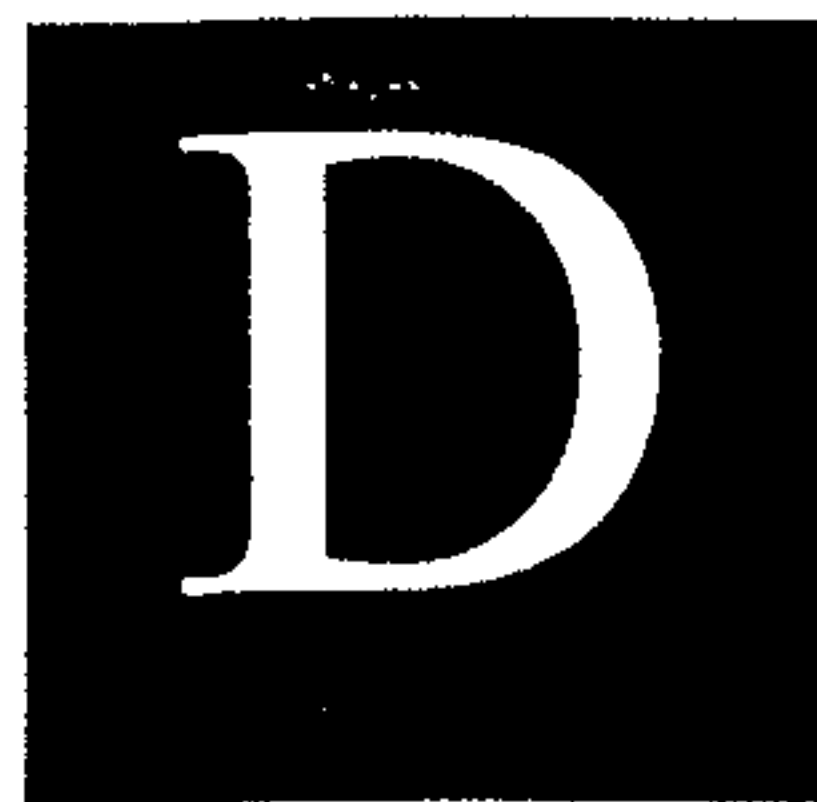
Chief Herald of Canada
Canadian Heraldic Authority
Rideau Hall
Ottawa, Ontario
K1A 0A1

Telephone: (613) 991-2227
Facsimile: (613) 991-1681



Chapter D

Holidays/Special Days



HOLIDAYS/SPECIAL HOLIDAYS



CHAPTER H-5

An Act respecting Holidays

SHORT TITLE

Short title 1. This Act may be cited as the *Holidays Act*. R.S., c. H-7, s. 1.

CANADA DAY

Canada Day 2. (1) July 1, not being a Sunday, is a legal holiday and shall be kept and observed as such throughout Canada under the name of "*Canada Day*".

When July 1 is a Sunday (2) When July 1 is a Sunday, July 2 is a legal holiday and shall be kept and observed as such throughout Canada under the name of "*Canada Day*". R.S., c. H-7, s. 2; 1980-81-82-83, c. 124, s. 1.

REMEMBRANCE DAY

Remembrance Day 3. November 11, being the day in the year 1918 on which the Great War was triumphantly concluded by an armistice, is a holiday and shall be kept and observed as such throughout Canada under the name of "*Remembrance Day*". R.S., c. H-7, s. 3.

VICTORIA DAY

Victoria Day 4. The first Monday immediately preceding May 25 is a legal holiday and shall be kept and observed as such throughout Canada under the name of "*Victoria Day*". R.S., c. H-7, s. 4.

CHAPITRE H-5

Loi instituant certains jours de fête légale

TITRE ABRÉGÉ

1. *Loi instituant des jours de fête légale*. Titre abrégé S.R., ch. H-7, art. 1.

FÊTE DU CANADA

2. (1) Le 1^{er} juillet est jour de fête légale; il est célébré dans tout le pays sous le nom de «fête du Canada». Institution de la fête

(2) Lorsque le 1^{er} juillet tombe un dimanche, le jour de fête légale est le 2 juillet. S.R., ch. H-7, art. 2; 1980-81-82-83, ch. 124, art. 1. Report

JOUR DU SOUVENIR

3. Le 11 novembre est jour férié en commémoration de l'armistice qui a mis fin en 1918 à la Grande Guerre; il est célébré dans tout le pays sous le nom de «jour du Souvenir». S.R., ch. H-7, art. 3. Institution de la fête

FÊTE DE VICTORIA

4. Le lundi qui précède le 25 mai est jour de fête légale; il est célébré dans tout le pays sous le nom de «fête de Victoria». S.R., ch. H-7, art. 4. Institution de la fête

D

HOLIDAYS/SPECIAL HOLIDAYS

D.2

Public holidays

AT THE NATIONAL LEVEL	1998	1999	2000	2001
New Year's Day	Jan. 1	Jan. 1	Jan. 1	Jan. 1
Good Friday	April 10	April 2	April 21	April 13
Easter Monday	April 13	April 5	April 24	April 16
Victoria Day (Monday preceding May 25)	May 18	May 24	May 22	May 21
Canada Day *	July 1	July 1	July 1	July 1
Labour Day (first Monday of September)	Sept. 7	Sept. 6	Sept. 4	Sept. 3
Thanksgiving Day (second Monday of October)	Oct. 12	Oct. 11	Oct. 9	Oct. 8
Remembrance Day	Nov. 11	Nov. 11	Nov. 11	Nov. 11
Christmas	Dec. 25	Dec. 25	Dec. 25	Dec. 25
Boxing Day	Dec. 26	Dec. 26	Dec. 26	Dec. 26
Commonwealth Day (<u>not a holiday</u> ; second Monday of March)	March 9	March 8	March 13	March 12

* The Holidays Act provides that July 2 is Canada Day when July 1 is a Sunday.

D.2 - 2

IN THE PROVINCES AND TERRITORIES (in addition to holidays at the national level)

ONTARIO	Civic Holiday [first Monday of August]
QUEBEC	National Day [June 24]
NOVA SCOTIA	Natal Day [first Monday of August, except in Halifax where it varies from year to year, usually August or July]
NEW BRUNSWICK	New Brunswick Day [first Monday of August]
MANITOBA	Civic Holiday [first Monday of August]
BRITISH COLUMBIA	British Columbia Day [first Monday of August]
PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND	Natal Day [by proclamation, usually on first Monday of August]
SASKATCHEWAN	Civic Holiday [first Monday of August]
ALBERTA	Alberta Family Day [third Monday of February] Heritage Day [first Monday of August]
NEWFOUNDLAND	Celebrated on nearest Monday St. Patrick's Day [March 17] St. George's Day [April 23] Discovery Day [June 24] Memorial Day [July 1] Orangemen's Day [July 12] Regatta Day / Civic Holiday [fixed by municipal council orders]
NORTHWEST TERRITORIES	Civic Holiday [first Monday of August]
YUKON	Discovery Day [third Monday of August]

D

HOLIDAYS/SPECIAL HOLIDAYS

D.3

Canada Day

D.3.1

Background

On June 20, 1868, a proclamation signed by the Governor General, Lord Monck, called upon all Her Majesty's loving subjects throughout Canada to join in the celebration of the anniversary of the formation of the union of the British North America provinces in a federation under the name of Canada on July 1.

The July 1 holiday was established by statute in 1879, under the name *Dominion Day*.

There is no record of organized ceremonies after this first anniversary, except for the 50th anniversary of Confederation in 1917, at which time the new Centre Block of the Parliament Buildings, under construction, was dedicated as a memorial to the Fathers of Confederation and to the valour of Canadians fighting in the First World War in Europe.

The next celebration was held in 1927 to mark the Diamond Jubilee of Confederation. It was highlighted by the laying of the cornerstone by the Governor General of the Confederation Building on Wellington Street and the inauguration of the Carillon in the Peace Tower.

Since 1958, the government has arranged for an annual observance of Canada's national day with the Secretary of State of Canada in charge of the coordination. The format provided for a Trooping the Colours ceremony on the lawn of Parliament Hill in the afternoon, a sunset ceremony in the evening followed by a mass band concert and fireworks display.

Another highlight was Canada's Centennial in 1967 when Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II attended the celebrations with Parliament Hill again being the backdrop for a large scale official ceremony.

D.3 - 2

The format changed in 1968 with the addition of multicultural and professional concerts held on Parliament Hill including a nationally televised show. Up until 1975, the focus of the celebrations, under the name "Festival Canada", was held in the National Capital Region during the whole month of July and involved numerous cultural, artistic and sport activities, as well as municipalities and voluntary organizations. The celebration was cancelled in 1976 but was reactivated in 1977.

A new formula was developed in 1980 whereby the National Committee (the federal government organization charged with planning Canada's Birthday celebrations) stressed and sponsored the development of local celebrations all across Canada. "Seed money" was distributed to promote popular and amateur activities organized by volunteer groups in hundreds of local communities. The same approach was also followed for the 1981 celebrations with the addition of fireworks displays in 15 major cities across the nation.

On October 27, 1982, July 1 which was known as "Dominion Day" became "Canada Day".

Since 1985, Canada Day Committees are established in each province and territory to plan, organize and coordinate the Canada Day celebrations locally. Grants are provided by the Department to those committees.

D.3.2

Dominion Day

- **Origin and special observance**

Proclamation requiring celebration of July 1: on June 20, 1868 a proclamation issued by the Governor General, Lord Monck, enjoined and called upon all Her Majesty's loving subjects throughout Canada to join in the celebration of the Anniversary of the formation of the Dominion of Canada on the 1st of July, 1868. This proclamation, a copy of which is attached, was published in the Canada Gazette on Saturday, June 20, 1868.

Act respecting Dominion Day, 1879: on May 15, 1879, Royal Assent was given to "An Act to make the first day of July a Public Holiday by the name of Dominion Day" (House of Commons Debates, 1879, Vol. II, p. 2047).

Attached is a copy of the Act of 1879 as printed in the Revised Statutes of Canada, 1886, Chapter III.

Also attached is a brief extract from newspaper reports indicating that citizens left Ottawa, Toronto and Quebec City on July 1, 1879 and there were no public ceremonies.

Proclamation respecting the celebration of the 50th Anniversary: on June 16, 1917, the Governor General, the Duke of Devonshire, issued a proclamation appointing Monday the 2nd Day of July 1917 for the special celebration of the 50th Anniversary of Confederation. A copy of this proclamation is attached.

Attached is a memorandum of reports in the Press of events on Parliament Hill and at Westminster Abbey on Monday, July 2, 1917.

Diamond Jubilee of Confederation Act, 1927-Incorporation of the National Committee: On February 18, 1927, Royal Assent was given to an act to incorporate a National Committee for the celebration of the Diamond Jubilee of Confederation - 17 George V, Chap. 6. This Act is entitled the Diamond Jubilee of Confederation Act, 1927.

The Committee, called the Corporation comprised about seventy persons including the Governor General and his wife, the lieutenant-governors of the provinces, the Prime Minister of Canada and seven members of the Cabinet (but not the Secretary of State), the Chief Justice, several privy councillors including the former Prime Minister, the speakers of both Houses, the Leader of the Opposition, the premiers

D.3 - 4

of all the provinces, several senators and the Leader of the Opposition in the Senate, the Clerk of the Privy Council, the Under Secretary of State, the Dominion Archivist, the Under Secretary of State for External Affairs and the heads of a number of organizations such as the National Council of Women, the Trades and Labour Congress, the United Farmers of Alberta, I.O.D.E., Bar Association, the National Battlefields Commission, the Canadian Legion, etc.

The objects of the Corporation were to make and carry out necessary arrangements in cooperation with the provinces and other bodies for an effective celebration of the sixtieth anniversary of the formation of the Dominion of Canada, and to administer and distribute a grant of \$250,000. The affairs of the corporation were administered by an executive committee; the Secretary of State of Canada convened the first meeting of this committee.

1927 Celebration across Canada: The National Committee issued a booklet entitled "Order of Proceedings" for national Thanksgiving by the people of Canada for Sunday, July 3, as a suggestion for local committees across Canada for a public religious ceremony at 2:30 p.m. in each local time zone under the direction of the lieutenant-governor or mayor or other senior person in the community. The Prime Minister, the Right Honourable William Lyon Mackenzie King, who was a Presbyterian, had edited this booklet; it was found to be not acceptable for Roman Catholic usage.

The Committee issued a forty-eight page pamphlet, illustrated in colour, containing suggestions for historical pageants, floats and tableaux for the guidance bibliography of Canadian history.

1927 Ottawa Confederation: the National Committee organized the program of national celebration at Ottawa which began at 11:00 a.m. on Friday July 1, 1927 with the laying of the cornerstone by the Governor General of the Confederation Building at the corner of Bank and Wellington Streets, and continued with the inauguration of the Carillon in the Peace Tower, the planting of the Confederation maple trees on Parliament Hill and, in the afternoon, addresses by the Governor General, the Prime Minister and the Leader of the Opposition and descendants of Fathers of Confederation interspersed with public singing lead by a centenary choir and schoolchildren. There was a very large dinner given by the National Committee in the Parliament buildings in the evening of July 1 preceded by a historical pageant parade.

**EXTRACTS FROM THE CANADA GAZETTE
AND THE CITIZEN ON DOMINION DAY**

**EXTRACT FROM
The Canada Gazette published by Authority,
Ottawa, Saturday, June 20, 1868**

**PROCLAMATION
CANADA**

By His Excellency the Right Honourable Charles Stanley Viscount Monck,
Baron Monck of Ballytrammon, in the County of Wexford, in the Peerage of Ireland,
and Baron Monck of Ballytrammon, in the County of Wexford, in the Peerage of the
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, Governor General of Canada, &c.,
&c., &c.

To all to whom these presents shall come, or whom the same may concern -- GREETING:

JOHN A. MACDONALD, Min. of Justice.

WHEREAS by Royal Proclamation dated at Windsor Castle on the 22nd day of May,
in the year of our Lord 1867, Her Most Gracious Majesty did ordain, declare, and
command, that on and after the 1st day of July, 1867, the Provinces of Canada, Nova Scotia
and New Brunswick should form and be one Dominion under the name of Canada;

AND WHEREAS the anniversary of the formation of the Dominion of Canada falls
upon Wednesday, the 1st day of July next ensuing:

AND WHEREAS it is meet and proper that the said Anniversary should be observed
and kept;

NOW KNOW YE, that I, Charles Stanley Viscount Monck, Governor General of
Canada, do hereby proclaim and appoint WEDNESDAY, the FIRST day of JULY next,
as the day on which the Anniversary of the formation of the Dominion of Canada be duly
celebrated. And I do hereby enjoin and call upon all Her Majesty's loving subjects
throughout Canada to join in the due and proper celebration of the said Anniversary of the
said FIRST day of JULY next.

Given under my Hand and Seal at Arms, at the Government House, in the
CITY of OTTAWA, in the said Dominion, this TWENTIETH day of JUNE,
in the year of Our Lord, one thousand eight hundred and sixty-eight and in the
thirty-first year of Her Majesty's Reign.

MONCK.

BY COMMAND,

HECTOR L. LANGEVIN, Secretary of State

The Dominion Day Act, 1879

(as printed in Revised Statutes of Canada, 1886, Chapter III)

1. Throughout Canada, in each and every year, the first day of July, not being a Sunday, shall be a legal holiday, and shall be kept and observed as such, under the name of "Dominion Day". 42V., c.47, s.1.

2. When the first day of July is a Sunday, the second day of July shall be, in lieu thereof, throughout Canada, a legal holiday and shall be kept and observed as such under the same name. 42V., c.47, s.2.

.....
The *Dominion Day Act*, c.88, in the Revised Statutes of 1952, shows only two changes: The inverted commas are omitted, and the concluding words are "under the name of Dominion Day" instead of "under the same name".

Newspaper reports on Dominion Day 1879

The Ottawa Citizen, July 2, 1879 reported as follows on events at Ottawa. On Page 4, under the headlines - Our National Holiday - How it was observed - Picnics, cricket matches - the report says:

"Yesterday was the 12th anniversary of the confederation of the several Provinces of the Dominion, and the day was, of course, observed as a general holiday. Our citizens tore themselves away from the dust and heat of the city. No public demonstration was arranged."

Under the date-line July 1

at Toronto the report says:

"Dominion day passed off very quietly,
Citizens swarmed out the city by boat and rail;"

and at Quebec City:

"Numbers of people are leaving the city by almost
every boat for seaside resorts."

EXTRACT FROM

**The Canada Gazette
Published by Authority
Ottawa, Saturday, June 16, 1917
(page 4408)**

PROCLAMATION

**DEVONSHIRE
(L.S.)**

C A N A D A

**GEORGE THE FIFTH, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom of Great
Britain and Ireland and of the British Dominions beyond the Seas, King,
Defender of the Faith, Emperor of India.**

**To all to whom these presents shall come, or whom the same may in anywise concern, -
- GREETING:**

A PROCLAMATION

**E.L. NEWCOMBE,
Deputy Minister of Justice
Canada.**

**WHEREAS the first day of July next, being Dominion Day, falls upon a Sunday, and
furthermore the said day in this present year marks the Fiftieth Anniversary of the
Confederation of Our Dominion of Canada, We deem it expedient that the following day,
Monday, the second day of the said month of July, be appointed and set apart for the
celebration of Dominion Day, and for the special celebration of the said Anniversary,-**

**NOW KNOW YE that by and with the advice of Our Privy Council for Canada We
do proclaim and declare by this our Proclamation that Monday, the second day of July next
be and is hereby appointed for the celebration in this present year of Dominion Day and for
the special celebration of the Fiftieth Anniversary of the Confederation of Our Dominion
of Canada.**

**Of all which Our loving subjects and all others whom these presents may concern,
are hereby required to take notice and to govern themselves accordingly.**

D.3 - 8

In Testimony Whereof, We have caused these Our Letters to be made Patent, and the Great Seal of Canada to be hereunto affixed. WITNESS: Our Right Trusty and Right Entirely Beloved Cousin and Counsellor, Victor Christian William, Duke of Devonshire, Marquess of Hartington, Earl of Devonshire, Earl of Burlington, Baron Cavendish of Hardwicke, Baron Cavendish of Keighley, Knight of Our Most Noble Order of the Garter; One of Our Most Honourable Privy Council; Knight Grand Cross of Our Most Distinguished Order of Saint Michael and Saint George; Knight Grand Cross of Our Royal Victorian Order, Governor General and Commander-in-Chief of Our Dominion of Canada.

At our Government House, in Our City of OTTAWA, this SIXTH day of JUNE, in the year of Our Lord one thousand nine hundred and seventeen, and in the eighth year of our Reign.

By Command,

Thomas Mulvey,
Under-Secretary of State.

The Citizen, Ottawa, Monday, July 2, 1917

Events of Sunday, July 1, 1917

- p. 1. Messages of congratulation to Governor General
- p. 5. Erection of new flagstaff on Printing Bureau
- p. 8. Special sermons in churches.

The Citizen, Ottawa, Tuesday, July 3, 1917

Events of Monday, July 2, 1917

- p.1. Semi-centennial celebrated by ceremony at 12 noon on Parliament Hill, Ottawa.

New Parliament building, under construction, dedicated as a memorial to confederation fathers and to the valour of Canadians fighting in front line.

Ceremony attended by Governor General, members of Government, senators, M.P.s, judiciary, Defence personnel, clergy, etc.

Special dais & the new building decorated with British, French & U.S. & allied flags.

Speeches by Governor General, the Duke of Devonshire; the Prime Minister, Sir Robert Borden; Leader of Opposition, Sir Wilfrid Laurier.

Arrangements for the ceremony were made by the Minister of Trade & Commerce. The Right Honourable Sir George Foster, head of the semi-centennial parliamentary committee, and were carried out by the Officer Commanding the Ottawa Garrison, Col. S. Maynard Rogers, the head of the Dominion Police, Sir Percy Sherwood, and by the Gentleman Usher of the Black Rod, Colonel E.J. Chambers.

When the Governor General concluded his speech, the choir sang "O Canada" and the Governor General touched a button releasing a Union Jack to unveil the following inscription carved on the central pillar of Confederation Hall inside the main entrance of the Parliament buildings.

July 1917
On the fiftieth anniversary of the confederation
of British Colonies in North America
as
the Dominion of Canada
the Parliament and people
dedicated this building
in process of reconstruction
after damage by fire, on February 3, 1916
as a memorial of
the deeds of their Forefathers
and of the valour of those Canadians
who in the Great War fought for the
Liberties of Canada
of the Empire
and of Humanity

Taking part in the ceremony were 7 military units which paraded to Parliament Hill at 11 o'clock; 250 veterans, Dominion police, city police, fire brigade, boy scouts and girl guides,

March past, Governor General took salute.

On platform in addition to above were some deputy Ministers, Sheriff, and aldermen.

p.7. Commemoration of the 50th anniversary of the Dominion of Canada held at Westminster Abbey, London, attended by the King and Queen, Queen Alexandra and Princess Patricia accompanied by Sir George Perley, Minister for Canadian Overseas Forces, London and General Sir Richard Turner O/C Canadian Troops. The King faced Wolfe's monument draped with flags of Canadian troops overseas.

Service opened with "O Canada"; address by the Dean of Westminster, Doxology, Kipling's recessional, The Maple Leafs, and National anthem. Guard of Honour inspected by the King; Queen received flowers from widows and mothers of Canadian troops.

Parade & celebration were held in Toronto and Welland.

D

HOLIDAYS/SPECIAL HOLIDAYS

D.4

Commonwealth Day

In 1973 the National Council in Canada of the Royal Commonwealth Society in a letter to Prime Minister Pierre Elliot Trudeau suggested that the idea of Commonwealth Day to be observed simultaneously throughout the Commonwealth be included on the agenda for the Heads of Government Meeting to be held in Ottawa that year. The proposal was not included in the agenda of that meeting but did appear as a Canadian item on the agenda of the 1975 meeting.

At that time the heads of Government agreed that the Commonwealth Secretariat be asked to select a date for such an observance that would not have any untoward historical connotations. At the meeting of senior officials in Canberra in May 1976, the Canadian proposal that the second Monday in March be set as Commonwealth Day was adopted.

Until 1977 it was the practice in Canada to observe Commonwealth Day on an ad hoc basis in conjunction with Victoria Day (a statutory holiday), also by proclamation the Queen's Birthday.

The celebration of Commonwealth Day entails no uniform manner of observance of Commonwealth Day upon member countries, it being left to each country to mark that day as it considers suitable. It is not a statutory holiday; rather it is a day of observance by close to one billion persons of their common bonds and the contribution of the Commonwealth of Nations to the creation of a harmonious global environment.

D

HOLIDAYS/SPECIAL HOLIDAYS

D.5

International days, weeks, years and decades as declared by the United Nations

NOTE: To obtain update information, please contact the United Nations Association in Canada at (613) 232-5751 or visit their web site at <http://www.unac.org/unfaq/>

Since the early days of the United Nations system, the UN has established a set of Days and Weeks) (as listed below), Years and Decades to help focus the world on the issues in which the UN has an interest.

INTERNATIONAL DAYS

DATE	EVENT
March 8	INTERNATIONAL WOMEN'S DAY
March 21	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR THE ELIMINATION OF RACIAL
March 22	WORLD WATER DAY
March 23	WORLD METEOROLOGICAL DAY
April 7	WORLD HEALTH DAY
April 23	WORLD BOOK AND COPYRIGHT DAY
May 3	WORLD PRESS FREEDOM DAY
May 15	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF FAMILIES
May 17	WORLD TELECOMMUNICATIONS DAY
May 31	WORLD NO-TOBACCO DAY
June 4	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF INNOCENT CHILDREN VICTIMS OF AGGRESSION

D.5 - 2

DATE	EVENT
June 5	WORLD ENVIRONMENT DAY
June 17	WORLD DAY TO COMBAT DESERTIFICATION AND DROUGHT
June 26	INTERNATIONAL DAY AGAINST DRUG ABUSE AND ILLICIT TRAFFICKING INTERNATIONAL DAY IN SUPPORT OF VICTIMS OF TORTURE
1st Saturday of July	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF COOPERATIVES
July 11	WORLD POPULATION DAY
August 9	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF THE WORLD'S INDIGENOUS PEOPLE
September 8	INTERNATIONAL LITERACY DAY Human Resources Development Canada
September 8	INTERNATIONAL LITERACY DAY
September 16	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR THE PRESERVATION OF THE OZONE LAYER
3 rd Tuesday of September	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF PEACE Annual opening of the U.N. General Assembly
During last week in September	WORLD MARITIME DAY
October 1	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR OLDER PERSONS
1 st Monday of October	WORLD HABITAT DAY
October 9	WORLD POST DAY
2 nd Wednesday of October	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR NATURAL DISASTER REDUCTION
October 16	WORLD FOOD DAY
October 17	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR THE ERADICATION OF POVERTY

DATE	EVENT
October 24	UNITED NATIONS DAY AND WORLD DEVELOPMENT INFORMATION DAY
November 16	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF TOLERANCE
November 20 (varies)	UNIVERSAL CHILDREN'S DAY
November 20	AFRICA INDUSTRIALIZATION DAY
November 21	WORLD TELEVISION DAY
November 29	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF SOLIDARITY WITH THE PALESTINIAN PEOPLE
December 1	WORLD AIDS DAY
December 2	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR THE ABOLITION OF SLAVERY
December 3	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR DISABLED PERSONS
December 5	INTERNATIONAL VOLUNTEER DAY FOR ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT
December 7	INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION DAY
December 10	HUMAN RIGHTS DAY
December 29	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY

D.5 - 4

INTERNATIONAL WEEKS

DATE	EVENT
March 21-28	WEEK OF SOLIDARITY WITH THE PEOPLES STRUGGLING AGAINST RACISM AND RACIAL DISCRIMINATION
October 24 to 30	DISARMAMENT WEEK
Week of November 11	INTERNATIONAL WEEK OF SCIENCE AND PEACE
November 25 to December 10	16 DAYS OF ACTIVITISM AGAINST GENDER VIOLENCE

INTERNATIONAL DECADES AND YEARS

DATE	EVENT
1990-1999	UNITED NATIONS DECADE OF INTERNATIONAL LAW
1990-2000	INTERNATIONAL DECADE FOR THE ERADICATION OF COLONIALISM
1991-2000	FOURTH UNITED NATIONS DEVELOPMENT DECADE
1991-2000	SECOND TRANSPORT AND COMMUNICATIONS DECADE IN AFRICA
1991-2000	UNITED NATIONS DECADE AGAINST DRUG ABUSE
1990-1999	INTERNATIONAL DECADE FOR NATURAL DISASTER REDUCTION
1990-1999	THIRD DISARMAMENT DECADE
1993-2002	SECOND INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT DECADE FOR AFRICA
1993-2002	ASIAN AND PACIFIC DECADE FOR DISABLED PERSONS

DATE	EVENT
1993-2003	THIRD DECADE TO COMBAT RACISM AND RACIAL DISCRIMINATION
1994-2003	INTERNATIONAL DECADE FOR THE WORLD'S INDIGENOUS PEOPLE
1995-2004	UNITED NATIONS DECADE FOR HUMAN RIGHTS EDUCATION
1997-2006	UNITED NATIONS DECADE FOR THE ERADICATION OF POVERTY
1998	INTERNATIONAL YEAR OF THE OCEAN 50TH ANNIVERSARY OF THE UNIVERSAL DECLARATION OF HUMAN RIGHTS
1999	INTERNATIONAL YEAR OF OLDER PERSONS CENTENNIAL OF THE FIRST INTERNATIONAL PEACE CONFERENCE
2000	INTERNATIONAL YEAR FOR THE CULTURE OF PEACE INTERNATIONAL YEAR OF THANKSGIVING
2001	INTERNATIONAL YEAR OF VOLUNTEERS

D

HOLIDAYS/SPECIAL HOLIDAYS

D.6

National days, weeks and months

NATIONAL DAYS

NOTE: Whenever possible official titles are in both official languages.

To obtain update information, please contact: Reference Canada at (613) 941-4823

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
January 21	WEEDLESS WEDNESDAY Canadian Council on Smoking and Health	Tel.: (613) 567-3050 or provincial councils WWW : http://www.cctc.ca
January 31- February 1	CANADIAN APICULTURAL RESEARCH SYMPOSIUM Canadian Honey Council	Tel.: (306) 862-3844 Fax: (306) 862-5122 Location: Laval, QC
February (date to be determined)	HEALTH CANADA'S CENSUS DAY	Health Canada Tel.: (613) 941-6085
February 15	NATIONAL FLAG OF CANADA DAY	Department of Canadian Heritage Tel.: (819) 994-1616
February 16	NATIONAL HERITAGE DAY (NOTE: This day is not legislated by Canadian Government)	The Heritage Canada Foundation Tel.: (819) 237-1066 if busy: (819) 237-1867
February 22	THINKING DAY Girl Guides of Canada	Tel.: (416) 487-5281 WWW: http://www.girlguides.ottawab.com
March 8	INTERNATIONAL WOMEN'S DAY	Status of Women Canada Tel.: (613) 995-7835
March 9	COMMONWEALTH DAY	Canadian Heritage Tel.: (819) 994-9520
March 20	INTERNATIONAL FRANCOPHONIE DAY Association canadienne d'éducation de la langue française (ACELF)	Tel.: (418) 681-4661 Fax: (418) 681-3389

D.6 - 2

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
March 21	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR THE ELIMINATION OF RACIAL DISCRIMINATION	Canadian Heritage Tel.: (819) 994-9520
March 22	WORLD WATER DAY United Nations Association in Canada	Tel.: (613) 232-5751
March 23	WORLD METEOROLOGICAL DAY United Nations Association in Canada	Tel. (613) 232-5751
March 24	WORLD TUBERCULOSIS DAY Canadian Society for International Health	Tel. (613) 241-5785 WWW: http://www.csih.org
March 27	WORLD THEATRE DAY	Canadian Centre of the International Theatre Institute
April 1-3	QUEBEC ENVIRONMENTAL TECHNOLOGY TRADE SHOW Association québécoise des techniques de l'environnement	Tel.: (514) 270-7110 (Mr. Dubois) English information available on request)
April 2-4	DAFFODIL DAYS Canadian Cancer Society	Tel.: (416) 961-7223 or local offices
April 7	WORLD HEALTH DAY Canadian society for International Health	Tel.: (613) 241-5785 WWW: http://csih.org
April 8	NATIONAL LAW DAY Canadian Bar Association	Tel.: (613) 237-2925 or provincial bar associations E-mail: info@cba.org
April 17	EQUALITY DAY Status of Women Canada	Tel.: (613) 995-7835
April 17	INTERNATIONAL HEMOPHILIA DAY Canadian Hemophilia Society	Toll-free: (800) 668-2686
April 22	EARTH DAY	

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
April 23	INTERNATIONAL BOOK DAY	The United Nations Cultural, Educational and Scientific Co- operation Organization Tel.: (418) 692-3333
April 24	WORLD DAY FOR LABORATORY ANIMALS Canadian Federation of Humane Societies	Tel.: (613) 224-8072 Toll-free: (888) 678-2347 WWW: http://www.infoweb.magi.com/~ofhs
April 28	DAY OF MOURNING Canadian Labour Congress	Tel.: (613) 521-3400 WWW: http://www.clc-ctc.ca
May 2	ASTRONOMY DAY Royal Astronomical Society of Canada	Tel.: (416) 924-7973 or local astronomical organizations E-mail: rasc@rasc.ca WWW: http://www.rasc.ca
May 3	WORLD PRESS FREEDOM DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
May 8	WORLD RED CROSS DAY Canadian Red Cross Society	Tel.: (613) 739-3000 or regional offices
May 9	RAISE THE FLAG DAY Kinsmen and Kinnettes	Toll-free: (800) 742-5546 ext. 213 or local clubs WWW: http://www.kinclubs.ca
May 12	CANADA HEALTH DAY Canadian Public Health Association	Tel.: (613) 725-3769
May 12	INTERNATIONAL NURSES DAY Canadian Nurses Association	Tel.: (613) 237-2133 (Ondina Love) or provincial or territorial nursing associations
May 15	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF FAMILIES	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
May 17	WORLD TELECOMMUNICATIONS DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
May 18	INTERNATIONAL MUSEUMS' DAY International Council of Museums Canadian Museums' Association	Tel.: (613) 567-0099 or local museums and provincial museum associations

D.6 - 4

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
May 25	NATIONAL MISSING CHILDREN'S DAY RCMP Missing Children's Registry	Tel.: (613) 993-1525 WWW: http://www.childcybersearch.org
May 25	NATIONAL TAP DANCE DAY Canadian Dance Teacher's Association	Tel.: (613) 352-4950
May 29	NATIONAL TRANSPORTATION DAY National Transportation Week Inc.	Peter Brenmae Tel.: (613) 736-1350 WWW: http://www.tac-atc.ca/programs/ntw.htm
May 31	WORLD NO-TOBACCO DAY Canadian Society for International Health	Tel.: (613) 241-5785 WWW: http://www.csih.org
June 5	WORLD ENVIRONMENT DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
June 8	OCEANS DAY Canadian Wildlife Federation	Tel.: (613) 721-2286 Toll-free: (800) 563-9553 WWW: http://www.cwf-fcf.org
June 17	WORLD DAY TO COMBAT DESERTIFICATION AND DROUGHT	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
June 20	AFRICAN REFUGEE DAY	Local refugee organizations
June 21	NATIONAL ABORIGINAL DAY INDIAN AND NORTHERN AFFAIRS CANADA	Tel.: (613) 953-9730 (Diane Parsons)
June 26	INTERNATIONAL DAY AGAINST DRUG ABUSE AND ILLICIT TRAFFICKING	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
June 27	ARMED FORCES DAY Department of National Defence	Tel.: (613) 995-2534 or armed forces bases Dates and activities vary from province to province
July 1	CANADA DAY Canadian Heritage	Tel.: (819) 994-9520 or regional offices
July 4	INTERNATIONAL COOPERATION DAY International Cooperative Alliance	Tel.: (613) 789-5492

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
July 11	WORLD POPULATION DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
July 18	PARKS DAY Canadian Heritage	Tel.: (613) 994-9520
August 9	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR THE WORLD'S INDIGENOUS PEOPLE	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
August 13	INTERNATIONAL LEFT-HANDERS DAY Left-Handers International	Tel.: (913) 234-2177 (Kansas, U.S.A.)
September (first Monday in September)	LABOUR DAY	Labour Canada: 997-2617
September 5-7	CANADIAN INTERNATIONAL AIR SHOW	Tel.: (416) 393-6061 Fax: (416) 393-6269
September 8	INTERNATIONAL LITERACY DAY National Literacy Secretariat	Tel.: (819) 953-5280 or local literacy organizations
September 15	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF PEACE (Opening of the United Nations)	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
September 16	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR THE PRESERVATION OF THE OZONE LAYER	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
September 20	TERRY FOX RUN Terry Fox Foundation	Tel.: (416) 924-8252 or provincial offices Toll-free: (800) 387-1200 WWW: http://www.terryfoxrun.org
September 27	AIDS WALK CANADA Canadian AIDS Society	Tel.: (613) 230-3580 WWW: http://www.cdnaids.ca
September 30	NATIONAL AND INTERNATIONAL TRANSLATION DAY Translation Services	Public Works and Government Services Canada Tel.: (819) 997-8844 or translation organizations
October 1	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR OLDER PERSONS Division of Ageing and Seniors	Health Canada Tel.: (613) 952-7608

D.6 - 6

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
October 4	NATIONAL PSORIASIS WALK	Psoriasis Society of Canada Tel.: (902) 443-8680 Toll-free: (800) 656-4494
October 5	SCHIZOPHRENIA (WALK OF THE WORLD)	Schizophrenia Society of Canada Tel.: (416) 445-8204
October 5	WORLD HABITAT DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
October 9	WORLD POST DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
October 14	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR NATURAL DISASTER REDUCTION	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
October 16	WORLD FOOD DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
October 17	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR THE ERADICATION OF POVERTY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
October 18	PERSONS DAY Status of Women Canada	Tel.: (613) 995-7835
October 23	NATIONAL PSORIASIS CONFERENCE Psoriasis Society of Canada	Tel.: (902) 443-8680 Toll-free: (800) 656-4494
October 24	UNITED NATIONS DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
October 24	WORLD DEVELOPMENT INFORMATION DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
November 8	ROENTGEN DISCOVERY DAY Cent-X-95	Tel.: (416) 480-6104
November 11	REMEMBRANCE DAY Royal Canadian Legion	Tel.: (613) 235-4391 or local branches WWW: http://www.legion.ca
November 15	INTERNATIONAL PEN DAY OF THE IMPRISONED WRITER PEN Canada	Tel.: (416) 703-8448 E-mail: penca@web.net WWW: http://www.pencanada.ca

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
November 20	AFRICA INDUSTRIALIZATION DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
November 20	NATIONAL CHILD DAY Health Canada	Childhood and Youth Division Tel.: (613) 952-1220
November 25	INTERNATIONAL DAY TO END VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN	Status of Women Canada Tel.: (613) 995-7835
November 29	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF SOLIDARITY WITH THE PALESTINIAN PEOPLE	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
December 1	WORLD AIDS DAY Canadian AIDS Society	Tel.: (613) 230-3580 (Lisa McCann) WWW: http://www.cdnaids.ca
December 2	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR THE ABOLITION OF SLAVERY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
December 3	INTERNATIONAL DAY OF DISABLED PERSONS Office for Disability Issues	Tel.: (819) 997-2412 TTY.: (800) 561-9706 WWW: indic.ca/odi
December 5	INTERNATIONAL VOLUNTEER DAY FOR ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
December 6	NATIONAL DAY OF REMEMBRANCE AND ACTION ON VIOLENCE AGAINST WOMEN	Status of Women Canada Tel.: (613) 995-7835
December 10	HUMAN RIGHTS DAY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
December 29	INTERNATIONAL DAY FOR BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751

NATIONAL WEEKS

Jan. 17-24	ROYAL BANK CANADIAN HOCKEY WEEK Canadian Amateur Hockey Association	Tel.: (403) 777-3636 WWW: http://www.canadianhockey.ca
Jan. 17-25	NATIONAL SKI WEEK Canadian Ski Council	Tel.: (905) 677-0020

D.6 - 8

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
Jan. 19 to 26	NATIONAL NON-SMOKING WEEK Canadian Council for Tobacco Control	Tel. (613) 567-3050 or provincial councils WWW: http://www.cctc.ca
Feb. 1-7 (first week in Feb.)	EATING DISORDER AWARENESS WEEK National Eating Disorder Information Centre	Tel.: (416) 340-4156 Fax: (416) 340-5888 Bulimia Anorexia Nervosa Association (BANA) Tel.: (519) 253-7545
Feb. 1-7	INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT WEEK Canadian International Development Agency	Tel.: (819) 997-5006 Toll-free: (800) 230-6349
Feb. 1 to 7	WHITE CANE WEEK Canadian National Institute for the Blind	Tel.: (416) 480-7580
Feb. 9 to 16	CITIZENSHIP AND HERITAGE WEEK Canadian Heritage Tel.: (819) 997-0958 or regional offices	Citizenship and Immigration Canada Tel.: (613) 954-8991 WWW: http://www.cicnet.ci.gc.ca
Feb. 15 to 22	GUIDE - SCOUT WEEK Scouts Canada Tel.: (613) 224-5131 WWW: http://www.scout.ca	Girl Guides of Canada Tel.: (416) 487-5281 WWW: http://www.girlguides.ottawab.com
March (dates vary in all provinces)	SOCIAL WORK WEEK Canadian Association of Social Workers	Tel.: (613) 729-6668 or provincial associations
March (dates to be determined)	NATIONAL FARM SAFETY WEEK Canada Safety council	Tel.: (613) 739-1535
March 2-8	NATIONAL PHARMACY AWARENESS WEEK Canadian Pharmaceutical Association	Tel.: (613) 523-7877 or provincial associations E-mail: media@cdnpharm.ca WWW: http://www.cdnpharm.ca
March 8-14	INTERNATIONAL WOMEN'S WEEK Status of Women Canada	Tel.: (613) 995-7835
March 16-22	NATIONAL FRANCOPHONIE WEEK Association canadienne d'éducation de la langue française (ACELF)	Tel.: (418) 681-4661 Fax: (418) 681-3389

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
March 16-22	NATIONAL FRANCOPHONIE WEEK Association canadienne d'éducation de la langue française (ACELF)	Tel.: (418) 681-4661 Fax: (418) 681-3389
March 21-28	WEEK OF SOLIDARITY WITH PEOPLE STRUGGLING AGAINST RACISM AND RACIAL DISCRIMINATION	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
April 3-4	NATIONAL 30-HOUR FAMINE WEEK World Vision Canada	Toll-free: (888) 832-6463
April 5 to 11	NATIONAL WILDLIFE WEEK Canadian Wildlife Federation	Tel.: (613) 721-2286 or regional Environment Canada offices Toll-free: (800) 563-9453 WWW: http://www.cwf-fcf.org
April 19-25	EARTH WEEK Earth Day Canada	Tel.: (416) 599-1991
April 19-25	NATIONAL CREDIT EDUCATION WEEK Credit Association of Canada	Tel.: (306) 382-1177
April 19-25	NATIONAL PHYSIOTHERAPY WEEK Canadian Physiotherapy Associations	Tel.: (416) 932-1888 or provincial associations Toll-free: (800) 387-8679 WWW: http://www.physiotherapy.ca
April 19 to 25	NATIONAL SOIL CONSERVATION WEEK Agriculture and Agri-Food Canada	Tel.: (613) 759-1000 or regional offices
April 19 to 25	NATIONAL VOLUNTEER WEEK Canadian Heritage	Tel.: (819) 994-9520 (contact local volunteer bureaus first)
April 19 to 26 (third full week of April)	NATIONAL ORGAN DONOR AWARENESS WEEK Multiple Organ Retrieval and Exchange (MORE)	Tel.: (416) 921-1130 or provincial health ministries or local transplant centres WWW: http://www.transplant-ontario.org
April 20-26	ALLERGY AWARENESS WEEK Allergy Foundation of Canada	Tel.: (306) 373-7591
May 1 to 7	NATIONAL SUMMER SAFETY WEEK Canada Safety Council	Tel.: (613) 739-1535

D.6 - 10

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
May 1 to 7	SPINAL HEALTH WEEK Ontario Chiropractic Association	Tel. (905) 629-8211
May 1 to 7	ANIMAL HEALTH WEEK Canadian Veterinary Medical Association	Tel.: (613) 236-1162 WWW: http://www.upei.ca/~cvma
May 3 to 9	BE KIND TO ANIMALS WEEK Regina Humane Societies	Tel.: (306) 543-6363 or local offices
May 3 to 9	NATIONAL FOREST WEEK Canadian Forestry Association	Tel.: (613) 232-1815 or provincial associations
May 4 to 10	NATIONAL COMPOSTING AWARENESS WEEK Composting Council of Canada	Tel.: (416) 535-0240 E-mail: ccc@compost.org WWW: http://www.compost.org
May 4 to 10	NATIONAL MENTAL HEALTH WEEK Canadian Mental Health Association	Tel.: (416) 484-7750 or regional offices
May 4 to 10	RESPECT FOR LAW WEEK Optimist International	Tel.: (514) 595-4401 or local police forces
May 7 to 10	MULTIPLE SCLEROSIS CARNATION CAMPAIGN Multiple Sclerosis Society of Canada	Toll-free: (800) 268-7582 or local chapters WWW: http://www.mssoc.ca
May 10 to 16	NATIONAL POLICE WEEK RCMP	Tel.: (613) 993-8423 or local RCMP detachments
May 11 to 17	NATIONAL NURSING WEEK Canadian Nurses Association.	Tel. : (613) 237-2133 (Ondina Love) or provincial or territorial nursing associations
May 11 to 17	NATIONAL SUN AWARENESS WEEK Canadian Dermatology Association	Tel.: (613) 730-6262 Toll-free: (800) 267-3376
May 17 to 23	NATIONAL ROAD SAFETY WEEK Canada Safety Council	Tel.: (613) 739-1535
May 18 to 24	NORTH AMERICAN OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH WEEK Canadian Society of Safety Engineers	Tel.: (905) 893-1689

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
May 19 to 22	ABORIGINAL AWARENESS WEEK Health Canada	Tel.: (613) 957-3362 (contact local Aboriginal organizations first)
May 22 to June 19	SUMMER ACTIVE '98 - ParticipACTION	Tel.: (416) 954-1212
May 30 to June 7	NATIONAL WATER SAFETY WEEK Canadian Red Cross Society	Tel.: (613) 739-3000 or regional offices
May 31 to June 6	INTERGENERATIONAL WEEK B.C. Council for the Family	Tel.: (604) 660-0675 United Generations Ontario Tel.: (416) 955-9787
May 31 to June 7	NATIONAL TRANSPORTATION WEEK National Transportation Week Inc.	Tel.: (613) 736-1350 WWW: http:// www.tac- atc.ca/programs/ntw.htm
June 1 to 7	NATIONAL ACCESS AWARENESS WEEK	National Access Awareness Toll-free: (888) 808-6229
June 6 to 14	NATIONAL SAFE BOATING WEEK Canadian Coast Guard	Tel.: (613) 998-1668 Toll-free: (800) 267-6687
June 14 to 20	NATIONAL PUBLIC SERVICE WEEK	Treasury Board Tel.: (613) 957-2422
September	EYE HEALTH CANADA WEEK	Canadian Association of Optometrists Tel.: (613) 235-7924
Sept. 13 to 18	17 TH CONGRESS OF THE WORLD ENERGY COUNCIL	Energy Council of Canada Tel.: (613) 952-6469
Sept. 14 to 20	NATIONAL MASSAGE THERAPY AWARENESS WEEK Canadian Massage Therapist Alliance Tel.: (416) 968-2149	or provincial offices WWW: <a href="http://www.collinscan.com/~collin/cli
entspgs/cmtai.html">http://www.collinscan.com/~collin/cli entspgs/cmtai.html
Sept. 20 to 26	WORLD MARITIME WEEK	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
Oct. 4 to 10	FIRE PREVENTION WEEK Fire Prevention Canada	Tel.: (613) 736-8131 Toll-free: (800) 668-2955 E-mail: christine@cafc.ca

D.6 - 12

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
Oct. 5 to 11	NATIONAL FAMILY WEEK	Family Service Canada Tel.: (613) 722-9006
Oct. 11 to 17	COMMUNITY CARE WORKER WEEK Canadian Association for Community Care	Tel.: (613) 241-7510 or provincial associations for information on regional activities
Oct. 11 to 17	NATIONAL COOPERATION WEEK International Cooperation Alliance	Tel.: (613) 789-5492
Oct. 16 to 20	NATIONAL SCHOOL SAFETY WEEK Canada Safety Council	Tel.: (613) 739-1535
Oct. 16 to 25	NATIONAL SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY WEEK Industry Canada	Tel.: (613) 990-6527 (contact regional offices first)
Oct. 17 to 25	CELIAC AWARENESS WEEK Canadian Celiac Association	Tel.: (905) 507-6208 Toll-free: (800) 363-7296
Oct. 18 to 24	NATIONAL DENTAL HYGIENE WEEK Canadian Dental Hygienist Association	Tel.: (613) 224-5515
Oct. 19 to 26	AMNESTY INTERNATIONAL WEEK Amnesty International Tel.: (613) 744-7667 (English section) (604) 294-5160 (Pacific region)	(514) 766-9766 (Francophone section) (416) 929-9477 (Toronto office) WWW: http://www.amnesty.org
Oct. 23 to 29	DISARMAMENT WEEK	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
Oct. 25 to 31	NATIONAL BLOCK PARENTS WEEK National Block Program of Canada	Tel.: (604) 594-6788 Toll-free: (800) 663-1134 (Canada)
Oct. 25 to 31	NATIONAL OCCUPATIONAL THERAPY WEEK Canadian Association of Occupational Therapists	Tel.: (613) 523-2268 or provincial associations WWW: http://www.caot.ca
Oct. 25 to 31	SMALL BUSINESS WEEK Business Development Bank of Canada	Tel.: (514) 283-5611 (contact local offices first)
November (dates to be determined)	GEOGRAPHY AWARENESS WEEK National Geographic Society	Toll-free: (800) 892-5148 WWW: http://www.nationalgeographic.com

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
November (dates to be determined)	RESTORATIVE JUSTICE WEEK Correctional Service Canada, Chaplaincy Department	Tel.: (613) 996-9034 E-mail: chaplain@magi.com
Nov. 1 to 7	CANADA'S CAREER WEEK Human Resources Development Canada	Tel. (819) 953-7456 or Human Resources Centres
Nov. 1 to 7	NATIONAL CRIME PREVENTION WEEK	Local police forces or the RCMP
Nov. 1 to Jan. 31	CHRISTMAS SEAL CAMPAIGN Canadian Lung Association	Tel.: (613) 747-6776 Fax: (613) 747-7430 WWW: http://www.lung.ca
Nov. 2 to 8	NATIONAL 4-H WEEK Canadian 4-H Council	Tel.: (613) 723-4444 WWW: http://www.4-h-canada.ca
Nov. 5 to 11	VETERANS WEEK Veterans Affairs	Tel.: (613) 992-7470 WWW: http://www.vac-acc.gc.ca
Nov. 8 to 14	NATIONAL SENIORS' SAFETY WEEK Canada Safety Council	Tel.: (613) 739-1535
Nov. 10 to 15	INTERNATIONAL WEEK OF SCIENCE AND PEACE	United Nations Association in Canada Tel.: (613) 232-5751
Nov. 15 to 21	NATIONAL ADDICTION AWARENESS WEEK Nechi Institute for alcohol and Drug Education	Tel.: (403) 460-4304 WWW: http://www.nechi.com
Nov. 15 to 21	NATIONAL MARFAN AWARENESS WEEK Canadian Marfan Association	Tel.: (905) 826-3223 or local offices
Nov. 23 to 30	NATIONAL AIDS AWARENESS WEEK Canadian AIDS Society	Tel.: (613) 230-3580 E-mail: casinfo@web.net WWW: http://www.cdnaids.ca
Nov. 24 to 30	NATIONAL HOME FIRE SAFETY WEEK Canada Safety Council	Tel.: (613) 739-1535
Dec. 1 to 7	NATIONAL SAFE DRIVING WEEK Canada Safety Council	Tel.: (613) 739-1535

D.6 - 14

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
<u>NATIONAL MONTHS</u>		
January	ALZHEIMER AWARENESS MONTH Alzheimer Society of Canada	Toll-free: (800) 616-8816 or local offices WWW: http://alzheimer.ca
February	BIG SISTERS MONTH Big Sisters of Canada	Tel.: (613) 729-3891 or local chapters
February	HEART MONTH Heart and Stroke Foundation of Canada	Tel.: (613) 569-4361 or local offices Toll-free: (888) 473-4636 WWW: http://www.hsf.ca
February	BLACK HISTORY MONTH National Film Canada	Tel.: (613) 860-0849 or local black community organizations
March	NATIONAL KIDNEY MONTH	Kidney Foundation of Canada Toll-free: (800) 361-7494
March	RED CROSS MONTH	Canadian Red Cross Society Tel.: (613) 739-3000
March	NATIONAL NUTRITION MONTH Dietitians of Canada	Tel.: (416) 596-0857 WWW: http://www.dietitians.ca
March	NATIONAL EPILEPSY MONTH Epilepsy Canada	Tel.: (514) 845-7855 or local offices Toll-free: (800) 860-5499 WWW: http://www.epilepsy.ca
March	HELP FIGHT LIVER DISEASE MONTH Canadian Liver Foundation	Tel.: (416) 964-1953 Toll-free: (800) 563-5483 E-mail: clf@liver.ca WWW: http://www.liver.ca
March	LEARNING DISABILITIES AWARENESS MONTH Learning Disabilities Association of Canada	Tel.: (613) 238-5721 E-mail: ldataac@fox.nstn.ca WWW: http://www.educ.queenu.ca/~Ida
April	CANCER MONTH Canadian Cancer Society	Tel.: (416) 961-7223 or local offices

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
April	DENTAL HEALTH MONTH Canadian Dental Association	Tel.: (613) 523-1770 or provincial associations
April	NEW HOMES MONTH Canadian Home Builders' Association	Tel.: (613) 230-3060 E-mail: chba@chba.ca WWW: http://www.chba.ca
April	PARKINSON AWARENESS MONTH Parkinson Foundation of Canada	Toll-free: (800) 437-6464 WWW: http://www.parkinson.ca
April	STAY ALERT....STAY SAFE MONTH Stay Alert....Stay Safe Organization	Tel.: (416) 480-8225 Toll-free: (800) 301-7277 WWW: http://www.sass.ca
May	ALLERGY AWARENESS MONTH Allergy Asthma Information Association	Tel.: (905) 712-2242
May	CYSTIC FIBROSIS MONTH Canadian Cystic Fibrosis Foundation- Quebec's Ministry of the Environment	Tel.: (416) 485-9149 or regional offices toll-free: (800) 378-2233 WWW: http://www.ccfs.ca
May	HUNTINGTON'S DISEASE AWARENESS MONTH Huntington Society of Canada	Tel.: (519) 622-1002 or regional offices Toll-free: (800) 998-7398 WWW: http://www.hsc-ca.org
May	HEARING AWARENESS MONTH Canadian Hearing Society	Tel.: (416) 964-9595 or regional offices TDD: (416) 964-0023 E-mail: info@chs.ca WWW: http://www.chs.ca
May	MEDIC ALERT MONTH Canadian Medic Alert Foundation	Tel.: (416) 696-0267 Toll-free: (800) 668-1507
May	SPEECH AND HEARING AWARENESS MONTH Canadian Association of Speech- Language Pathologists and Audiologists	Tel.: (613) 567-9968 Fax: (613) 567-2859 E-mail: caslpa@ca WWW: http://www.caslpa.ca
June	NATIONAL SPINA BIFIDA AND HYDROCEPHALUS AWARENESS MONTH The National Spina Bifida and Hydrocephalus Association of Canada	Tel.: (204) 925-3650 Toll-free: (800) 565-9488 E-mail: spinab@mts.net WWW: http://www.sbhac.ca

D.6 - 16

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
June	SENIORS' MONTH Division of Ageing and Seniors	Health Canada Tel.: (613) 952-7606 (collect calls accepted from seniors) or provincial associations
September	ARTHRITIS MONTH Arthritis Society	Tel.: (416) 979-7228 or local chapters Toll-free: (800) 321-1433 WWW: http://www.arthritis.ca
September	BIG BROTHERS AND BIG SISTERS MONTH Big Brothers and Big Sisters of Canada	Tel.: (905) 639-0461 or local agencies Toll-free: (800) 263-9133 WWW: http://www.bbbsc.ca
October	AUTISM MONTH Autism Society Canada	Tel.: (416) 922-0302 or provincial offices
October	BREAST CANCER AWARENESS MONTH Breast Cancer Action, Support and Resource Centre	Tel.: (613) 736-5921 or Canadian Cancer Society offices and local medical clinics
October	CANADA EXPORT TRADE MONTH Foreign Affairs and International Trade Canada	Tel.: (613) 992-9396
October	CANADIAN QUALITY MONTH National Quality Institute	Toll-free: (800) 263-9648 WWW: http://www.nqi.com
October	LUPUS AWARENESS MONTH Lupus Canada	Toll-free: (800) 661-1468
October	NATIONAL CHILD ABUSE PREVENTION MONTH Independent Order of Foresters Child	Abuse Prevention Foundation Tel.: (416) 429-3000 Toll-free: (800) 268-6267 (Canada)
October	NATIONAL FLU PREVENTION AWARENESS MONTH Canadian Public Health Association	Tel.: (613) 725-3769 Fax: (613) 725-9826
October	PSORIASIS AWARENESS MONTH Psoriasis Society of Canada	Tel.: (902) 443-8680 Toll-free: (800) 656-4494
October	RENOVATION MONTH Canadian Home Builders' Association	Tel.: (613) 230-3060 or local offices

DATE	EVENT	CONTACT
October	STAMP MONTH Canada Post Corporation	Toll-free: (800) 565-4362 or local post offices
October	SUDDEN INFANT DEATH SYNDROME (SIDS) AWARENESS MONTH Canadian Foundation for the Study of Infant Deaths	Tel.: (416) 488-3260 Toll-free: (800) 363-7437
October	WOMEN HISTORY MONTH IN CANADA Status of Women Canada	Tel.: (613) 995-7835
November	ADOPTION AWARENESS MONTH Adoption Council of Canada	Tel.: (613) 235-1566 E-mail: acc@freenet.carleton.ca
November	AMARYLLIS MONTH Huntington Society of Canada	Tel.: (519) 622-1207 Toll-free: (800) 998-7398 WWW: http://www.hsc-ca.org
November	CARDIO-PULMONARY RESUSCITATION AWARENESS MONTH Heart and Stroke Foundation of Canada	Tel.: (613) 569-4361 or provincial offices Toll-free: (888) 473-4636 WWW: http://www.hfs.ca
November	CROHN'S AND COLITIS AWARENESS MONTH Crohn's and Colitis Foundation of Canada	Tel.: (416) 920-5035 Toll-free: (800) 387-1479 E-mail: ccfc@netccm.ca WWW: http://www.ccfc.ca
November	OSTEOPOROSIS MONTH Osteoporosis Society of Canada	Tel.: (416) 696-2663 Toll-free: (800) 463-6842
November	DIABETES MONTH Canadian Diabetes Association	Tel.: (416) 363-3373 or local offices Toll-free: (800) 361-1306
November	FUR MONTH IN CANADA	Fur Council of Canada Tel.: (514) 844-1945

D

HOLIDAYS/SPECIAL HOLIDAYS

D.7

Thanksgiving and Remembrance Day

The first Thanksgiving Day in Canada after Confederation was observed on April 15, 1872, to celebrate the recovery of The Prince of Wales (later King Edward VII) from a serious illness.

No record is found of a Thanksgiving Day between 1872 and 1879.

From 1879 to 1898, both inclusive, it was observed on a Thursday in November. In 1899, it was fixed on a Thursday in October, where it stayed until 1907, with the exception of 1901 and 1904 when the date was fixed on a Thursday in November.

From 1908 to 1921, it was observed on a Monday in October, the exact date being appointed by proclamation.

From 1921 to 1930, the *Armistice Day Act* provided that Thanksgiving would be observed on Armistice Day, which was fixed by statute on the Monday of the week in which November 11 fell.

In 1931, Parliament adopted an Act to amend the *Armistice Day Act*, providing that the day should be observed on November 11 and that the day should be known as "Remembrance Day".

Accordingly, the old practice was resumed of fixing Thanksgiving Day by proclamation, and it has been since 1931 on the second Monday of October, with the exception of 1935 where, after Thanksgiving Day had been fixed on October 14, it was decided to hold the general election on that date. A new proclamation was issued deferring the observance to October 24, a Thursday. This resulted in a great deal of controversy and the practice of observance on a Thursday was not pursued in future years.

From 1936 to 1956, inclusive, a proclamation was issued yearly to appoint the second Monday of October as Thanksgiving Day. In 1957, a proclamation was issued fixing permanently Thanksgiving Day on that day, thus eliminating the necessity of an annual proclamation.

Prior to 1867, there had been proclamations issued in Canada, the first one recorded being for 1799. Attached is a list of the dates of the proclamations and observance of General Thanksgiving Days, and reasons therefore.

D.7 - 2

Proclamation and Observance of General Thanksgiving Days and reasons
therefore.

LOWER CANADA

Date of Observance	Reasons
Thursday, 10 Jan. 1799	In signal victory over our enemy and for the manifold and inestimable blessings which our Kingdoms and Provinces have received and daily continue to receive
Thursday, 12 Aug. 1802	For God's mercies
Thursday, 21 Apr. 1814	For glorious victories over our enemies
Tuesday, 13 Sept. 1814	End of sanguinary contest in Europe and to give the Dominions blessings of Peace
Thursday, 6 Apr. 1815	End of the war with the United States of America and restoration of the blessings of Peace
Tuesday, 21 May 1816	End of war between Great Britain and France
Wednesday, 6 Feb. 1833	Cessation of cholera
Wednesday, 1 Nov. 1834	End of quarantine of ships at Grosse Isle
Monday, 26 Feb. 1838	For the termination of the Rebellion

UPPER CANADA

Tuesday, 18 June 1816	End of war between Great Britain and France
Thursday, 14 Feb. 1833	To continue God's mercies
Thursday, 30 Oct. 1834	To continue God's mercies
Tuesday, 6 Feb. 1838	To continue God's mercies

PROVINCE OF CANADA

Date of Observance	Reasons
Thursday, 3 Jan. 1850	For God's mercies and cessation of grievous disease
Wednesday, 4 June 1856	For restoration of Peace with Russia
Thursday, 3 Nov. 1859	For abundant harvest and continuation of Peace
Thursday, 6 Dec. 1860	For God's mercies
Wednesday, 11 Nov. 1863	For abundant harvest and continuation of Peace
Wednesday, 18 Oct. 1865	For God's mercies

C O N F E D E R A T I O N

Monday, 15 April 1872	For restoration to health of H.R.H. the Prince of Wales
Thursday, 6 Nov. 1879	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Wednesday, 3 Nov. 1880	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 20 Oct. 1881	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 9 Nov. 1882	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 8 Nov. 1883	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 6 Nov. 1884	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 12 Nov. 1885	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 18 Nov. 1886	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Tuesday, 21 June 1887	50 th Anniversary of Her Majesty's accession to Throne
Thursday, 17 Nov. 1887	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 15 Nov. 1888	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 7 Nov. 1889	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 6 Nov. 1890	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 12 Nov. 1891	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 10 Nov. 1892	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 23 Nov. 1893	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 22 Nov. 1894	Blessings of an abundant harvest

C O N F E D E R A T I O N (continued)

Date of Observance	Reasons
Thursday, 21 Nov. 1895	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 26 Nov. 1896	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Tuesday, 22 June 1896	Diamond Jubilee of H.M. Queen Victoria
Thursday, 25 Nov. 1897	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 24 Nov. 1898	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 19 Oct. 1899	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 18 Oct. 1900	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 28 Nov. 1901	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 26 June 1902	King Edward VII's Coronation (cancelled, changed to 9 th of August 1902)
Saturday, 9 Aug. 1902	King's Coronation, as a day of General Thanksgiving and rejoicing
Thursday, 16 Oct. 1902	As a day of General Thanksgiving
Thursday, 15 Oct. 1903	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 17 Nov. 1904	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 26 Oct. 1905	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 18 Oct. 1906	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Thursday, 31 Oct. 1907	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 9 Nov. 1908	Blessings of an abundant harvest

CONFEDERATION (continued)

Date of Observance	Reasons
Monday, 25 Oct. 1909	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 31 Oct. 1910	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 30 Oct. 1911	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 28 Oct. 1912	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 20 Oct. 1913	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 12 Oct. 1914	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 11 Oct. 1915	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 9 Oct. 1916	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 8 Oct. 1917	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 14 Oct. 1918	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 13 Oct. 1919	Blessings of an abundant harvest
Monday, 18 Oct. 1920	Blessings of an abundant harvest

By Statute

Monday, 8 Nov. 1921	On Armistice Day
Monday, 7 Nov. 1922	On Armistice Day
Monday, 6 Nov. 1923	On Armistice Day
Monday, 10 Nov. 1924	On Armistice Day
Monday, 9 Nov. 1925	On Armistice Day
Monday, 8 Nov. 1926	On Armistice Day
Monday, 7 Nov. 1927	On Armistice Day

CONFEDERATION (continued)

Date of Observance	Reasons
Monday, 6 Nov. 1928	On Armistice Day
Monday, 11 Nov. 1929	On Armistice Day
Monday, 10 Nov. 1930	On Armistice Day
By Proclamation	
Monday, 15 Oct. 1931	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 10 Oct. 1932	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 9 Oct. 1933	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 8 Oct. 1934	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Thursday, 24 Oct. 1935	(first fixed on Monday Oct. 14, then changed to Oct. 24, due to General elections on Oct. 14)
Monday, 12 Oct. 1936	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 11 Oct. 1937	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 10 Oct. 1938	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured

C O N F E D E R A T I O N (continued)

Date of Observance	Reasons
Monday, 9 Oct. 1939	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 14 Oct. 1940	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 13 Oct. 1941	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 12 Oct. 1942	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 11 Oct. 1943	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 9 Oct. 1944	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 8 Oct. 1945	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 14 Oct. 1946	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 13 Oct. 1947	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 11 Oct. 1948	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured

C O N F E D E R A T I O N (continued)

Date of Observance	Reasons
Monday, 10 Oct. 1949	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 9 Oct. 1950	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 8 Oct. 1951	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 13 Oct. 1952	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 12 Oct. 1953	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 11 Oct. 1954	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 10 Oct. 1955	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 8 Oct. 1956	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Monday, 14 Oct. 1957	For general thanksgiving to Almighty God for the blessings with which the people of Canada have been favoured
Since 1958	Proclamation of 1957 fixing for the years thereafter Thanksgiving Day on second Monday in October



THE CANADA GAZETTE LA GAZETTE DU CANADA

OTTAWA, TUESDAY, FEBRUARY 5, 1957

VINCENT MASSEY
(L.S.)

CANADA

ELIZABETH THE SECOND, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom, Canada and Her other Realms and Territories QUEEN, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith.

To ALL To Whom these Presents shall come or whom the same may in anywise concern,
GREETING:

A PROCLAMATION

F. P. VARCOE, *Deputy Attorney General*, WHEREAS Our birthday falling on the twenty-first day of April it is thought fit to appoint the first Monday immediately preceding the twenty-fifth day of May as the day upon which Our birthday is to be officially celebrated in Canada in 1957 and each year thereafter.

Now Know Ye that We do hereby proclaim and declare by this Our Proclamation that the first Monday immediately preceding the twenty-fifth day of May is hereby fixed for the celebration in Canada of Our birthday in the year of Our Lord one thousand nine hundred and fifty-seven and each year thereafter.

Of ALL Whom Our Loving Subjects and all others whom these Presents may concern are hereby required to take notice and to govern themselves accordingly.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF We have caused these Our Letters to be made Patent and the Great Seal of Canada to be hereunto affixed. WITNESSETH: Our Right Trusty and Well-beloved Counsellor, VINCENT MASSEY, Member of Our Order of the Companions of Honour, Governor General and Commander-in-Chief of Canada.

85292

At Our Government House, in Our City of Ottawa, this Thirty-first day of January in the year of our Lord One thousand nine hundred and fifty-seven and in the Fifth year of Our Reign.

By Command,

C. STEIN,
Under Secretary of State.

7-3

GOD SAVE THE QUEEN

EMERSON CLOUTIER, C.M.G., O.A., D.S.P.,
Queen's Printer, and Controller of Stationery
Ottawa

OTTAWA, MARDI 5 FÉVRIER 1957

VINCENT MASSEY
(L.S.)

CANADA

ELIZABETH DEUX, par la Grâce de Dieu, REINE du Royaume-Uni, du Canada et de ses autres royaumes et territoires, Chef du Commonwealth, Défenseur de la Foi.

A TOUS CEUX à qui les présentes parviendront ou qu'elles pourront de quelque manière concerner.—SALUT:

PROCLAMATION

F. P. VARCOE, *Sous-procureur général*, VU le fait que Notre anniversaire de naissance tombe le vingt et unième jour d'avril, il est jugé à propos de désigner le premier lundi précédant immédiatement le vingt-cinquième jour de mai comme le jour où Notre anniversaire de naissance doit être officiellement célébré au Canada en 1957 et chaque année par la suite.

SAVOIR DONC MAINTENANT que Nous proclamons et déclarons par Notre présente proclamation que le premier lundi précédant immédiatement le vingt-cinquième jour de mai est par les présentes désigné pour la célébration au Canada de Notre anniversaire de naissance, en l'an de grâce mil neuf cent cinquante-sept et chaque année par la suite.

De ce qui précède, Nos fidèles sujets et tous ceux que les présentes peuvent concerner sont par les présentes requis de prendre connaissance et d'agir en conséquence.

En foi de quoi, Nous avons fait émettre Nos présentes Lettres Patentes et à icelles fait apposer le Grand Sceau du Canada. TÉMOIN: Notre très fidèle et bien-aimé Conseiller, VINCENT MASSEY, membre de Notre Ordre des Compagnons d'honneur, Gouverneur général et Commandant en chef du Canada.

En Notre Hôtel du Gouvernement, en Notre Cité d'Ottawa, ce trois et unième jour de janvier en l'an de grâce mil neuf cent cinquante-sept, le cinquième de Notre-Règne.

Par ordre,

Le Sous-secrétaire d'Etat,
C. STEIN.

7-3

DIEU SAUVE LA REINE

EMERSON CLOUTIER, C.M.G., O.A., D.S.P.,
Imprimeur de la Reine et Contrôleur de la Papeterie
Ottawa

D

HOLIDAYS / SPECIAL DAYS

D.8

Victoria Day

- **Sovereign's birthday**

The Sovereign's birthday has been celebrated in Canada since the reign of Queen Victoria (1837-1901).

May 24, Queen Victoria's birthday, was declared a holiday by the Legislature of the Province of Canada in 1845.

After Confederation, the Queen's birthday was celebrated every year on May 24 unless that date was a Sunday, in which case a proclamation was issued providing for the celebration on May 25.

After the death of Queen Victoria in 1901, an Act was passed by the Parliament of Canada establishing a legal holiday on May 24 in each year (or May 25 if May 24 fell on a Sunday) under the name Victoria Day.

The birthday of King Edward VII, who was born on November 9, was by yearly proclamation during his reign (1901-1910) celebrated on Victoria Day.

It was not an innovation to celebrate the birthday of the reigning sovereign on the anniversary of the birth of a predecessor. In Great Britain, the birthdays of George IV (1820-1830) and William IV (1830-1837) were celebrated on June 4, birthday of George III (1760-1820).

The birthday of King George V, who reigned from 1910 to 1935, was celebrated on the actual date, June 3 or, when that was a Sunday, by proclamation on June 4.

The one birthday of King Edward VIII, who reigned in 1936, was also celebrated on the actual date, June 23.

King George VI's birthday, which fell on December 14, was officially celebrated in the United Kingdom on a Thursday early in June. Up to 1947 Canada proclaimed the same day but in 1948 and further years settled on the Monday of the week in which the United Kingdom celebration took place. George VI reigned from 1936 to 1952.

D.8 - 2

The first birthday of Queen Elizabeth II, in 1952, was also celebrated in June.

Meanwhile, Canada continued to observe Victoria Day. An amendment to the Statutes of Canada in 1952 established the celebration of Victoria Day on the Monday preceding May 25.

From 1953 to 1956, the Queen's birthday was celebrated in Canada on Victoria Day, by proclamation of the Governor General, with Her Majesty's approval. In 1957, Victoria Day was permanently appointed as the Queen's birthday in Canada. In the United Kingdom, the Queen's birthday is celebrated in June.

Attached is a list giving the dates of the observance in Canada of the Sovereign's birthday since Queen Victoria.

**Observance in Canada
of the Sovereign's Birthday**

Sovereign	Official celebration	Natural birthday
Queen Victoria (1837-1901)	May 24	May 24
King Edward VII 9 (1901-1910)	May 24 (Victoria Day)	November
King George V (1910-1935)	June 3	June 3
King Edward VIII (1936)	June 23	June 23
King George VI 14 (1936-1952)	<p>Wednesday June 9, 1937</p> <p>Thursday June 9, 1938</p> <p>Saturday May 20, 1939 (Royal Visit)</p> <p>Thursday June 13, 1940</p> <p>Monday June 9, 1941</p> <p>Monday June 8, 1942</p> <p>Wednesday June 2, 1943</p> <p>Thursday June 8, 1944</p> <p>Thursday June 14, 1945</p> <p>Monday June 10, 1946</p> <p>Tuesday June 10, 1947</p> <p>Monday June 7, 1948</p> <p>Monday June 6, 1949</p> <p>Monday June 5, 1950</p> <p>Monday June 4, 1951</p>	December
Queen Elizabeth II (1952 -)	<p>Monday June 9, 1952</p> <p>since 1953, on Victoria Day</p>	April 21

D.8.1

Proclamation of 1957



THE CANADA GAZETTE LA GAZETTE DU CANADA

OTTAWA, TUESDAY, FEBRUARY 5, 1957

OTTAWA, MARDI 5 FÉVRIER 1957

VINCENT MASSEY
(L.S.)

VINCENT MASSEY
(L.S.)

CANADA

CANADA

ELIZABETH THE SECOND, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom, Canada and Her other Realms and Territories QUEEN, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith.

ELIZABETH DEUX, par la Grâce de Dieu, REINE du Royaume-Uni, du Canada et de ses autres royaumes et territoires, Chef du Commonwealth, Défenseur de la Foi.

To All To Whom these Presents shall come or whom the same may in anywise concern,
GREETING:

A tous ceux à qui les présentes parviendront ou qu'elles pourront de quelque manière concerner,—SALUT:

A PROCLAMATION

PROCLAMATION

F. P. VARCOE, Deputy Attorney General, WHEREAS Our birthday falling on the twenty-first day of April it is thought fit to appoint the first Monday immediately preceding the twenty-fifth day of May as the day upon which Our birthday is to be officially celebrated in Canada in 1957 and each year thereafter.

F. P. VARCOE, Sous-procureur général, VU le fait que Notre anniversaire de naissance tombe le vingt-et unième jour d'avril, il est jugé à propos de désigner le premier lundi précédant immédiatement le vingt-cinquième jour de mai comme le jour où Notre anniversaire de naissance doit être officiellement célébré au Canada en 1957 et chaque année par la suite.

Now Know Ye that We do hereby proclaim and declare by this Our Proclamation that the first Monday immediately preceding the twenty-fifth day of May is hereby fixed for the celebration in Canada of Our birthday in the year of Our Lord one thousand nine hundred and fifty-seven and each year thereafter.

SACHES DONC MAINTENANT que Nous proclamons et déclarons par Notre présente proclamation que le premier lundi précédant immédiatement le vingt-cinquième jour de mai est par les présentes désigné pour la célébration au Canada de Notre anniversaire de naissance, en l'an de grâce mil neuf cent cinquante-sept et chaque année par la suite.

Of All Whom Our Loving Subjects and all others whom these Presents may concern are hereby required to take notice and to govern themselves accordingly.

De ce qui précède, Nos fidèles sujets et tous ceux que les présentes peuvent concerner sont par les présentes requis de prendre connaissance et d'agir en conséquence.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF We have caused these Our Letters to be made Patent and the Great Seal of Canada to be hereunto affixed. WITNESS: Our Right Trusty and Well-beloved Counsellor, VINCENT MASSEY, Member of Our Order of the Companions of Honour, Governor General and Commander-in-Chief of Canada.

En foi de quoi, Nous avons fait émettre Nos présentes Lettres Patentes et à icelles fait apposer le Grand Sceau du Canada. TÉMOIN: Notre très fidèle et bien-aimé Conseiller, VINCENT MASSEY, membre de Notre Ordre des Compagnons d'honneur, Gouverneur général et Commandant en chef du Canada.

85292

At Our Government House, in Our City of Ottawa, this Thirty-first day of January in the year of our Lord One thousand nine hundred and fifty-seven and in the Fifth year of Our Reign.

En Notre Hôtel du Gouvernement, en Notre Cité d'Ottawa, ce trente et unième jour de janvier en l'an de grâce mil neuf cent cinquante-sept, le cinquième de Notre-Règne.

By Command,
C. STEIN,
Under Secretary of State.

Par ordre,
Le Sous-secrétaire d'Etat.
C. STEIN.

7-3

GOD SAVE THE QUEEN

7-3

DIEU SAUVE LA REINE

D

HOLIDAYS / SPECIAL DAYS

D.9

Boxing Day

The day after Christmas, the Feast of St. Stephen, the first Christian martyr, is better known as Boxing Day. The term may come from the opening of church poor boxes that day; maybe from the earthenware boxes with which boy apprentices collected money at the doors of their masters' clients.

Nowadays, we often see, in certain families, gifts (boxes) given to those who provide services throughout the year.

“Boxing Day” is listed in the Canada Labour Code as a holiday.



Chapter E

Orders, Decorations and Medals

E

ORDERS, DECORATIONS AND MEDALS

(Reproduced from the Governor General's web site (<http://www.gc.ca/>) and from brochures published by the Chancellery.)

E.1

The Canadian honours system

Since the days of early human civilization, people have been honoured for their talents, values, or actions. In Greek and Roman times, laurel leaves were given to outstanding citizens. In the Middle Ages, special decorations marked the shields of heroes. For thousands of years, Aboriginal peoples have honoured one another with special names, symbols and in sacred ceremonies. With the arrival of Europeans in Canada, people received traditional honours from the Crown which have historical links to France or the United Kingdom. Many of the honours which continue to be given by The Queen in Great Britain were available to Canadians until the development of distinctly Canadian honours in the last 50 years.

Today, granting honours is a lasting way of paying tribute to people for exceptional achievement, acts of bravery, service or actions that have benefited Canada or humanity in general. The Crown remains the source of all Honours. As the Head of State, only The Queen may create an order, decoration or medal. Following the creation of an honour, the governor General makes the appointments and often personally makes the presentations.

Over recent years, a broadly-based system, which also includes the granting of coats of arms, has been developed to honour Canadians in a variety of ways.

ORDERS

Orders recognize significant achievements and conspicuous service in varying degrees in important fields of human endeavour. They are: the Order of Canada, the Order of Military Merit, the Royal Victorian Order, and the Most Venerable Order of the Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem.

The **Order of Canada** was created on 1 July 1967, the 100th anniversary of Confederation to recognize people who have made a difference to our country. From local citizens to national and international personalities, all Canadians are eligible for the Order of Canada -- our country's highest honour for lifetime achievement.

Three different levels of membership honour people whose accomplishments vary in degree and scope: Member, Officer and Companion. Since 1967, more than 3,500 people have received the Order of Canada.

E.1 - 2

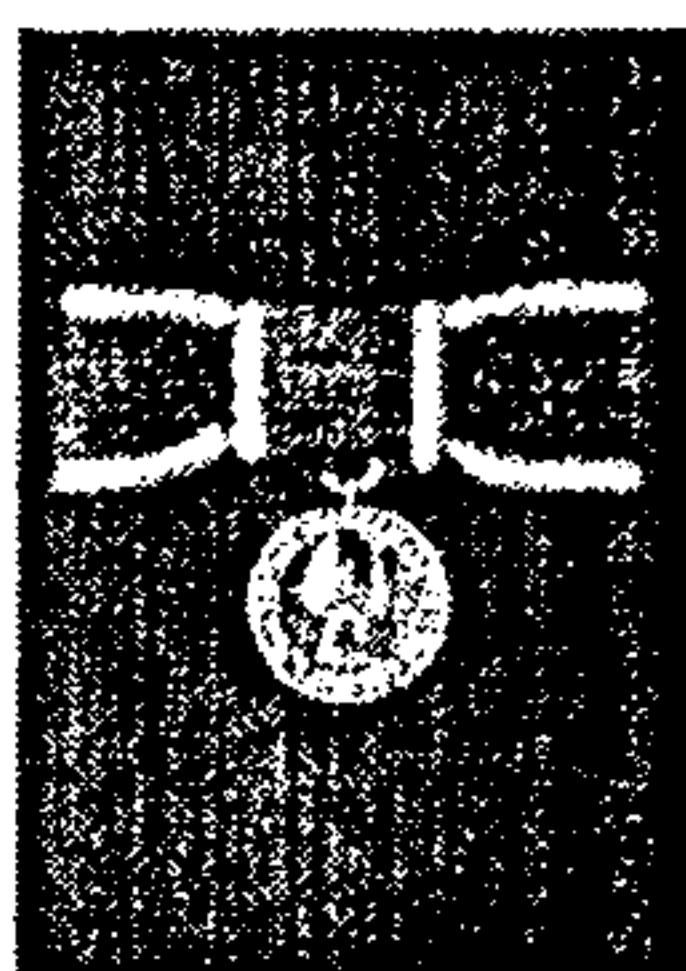
New appointments to the Order are made twice each year and lists are announced around New Year's Day and Canada Day. The ceremony takes place at Rideau Hall, and is broadcast on CPAC, the Cable Public Affairs Channel. Three ceremonies are held each year.

Canadian citizens may submit names of deserving persons that may be considered worthy of appointment. Appointments to the Order are restricted to Canadian citizens and are made by the Governor General on the advice of an Advisory Council chaired by the Chief Justice of Canada. The Governor General may appoint a maximum of 15 companions, 52 officers, and 106 members in any calendar year. The number of living Companions may not exceed 150. Three investiture ceremonies are held annually, usually in February, April and October.

The **Order of Military Merit** was created on 10 May 1972 to recognize meritorious service and devotion to duty by members of the Canadian Forces. The Order has three grades of membership: Commander (C.M.M.), Officer (O.M.M.), and Member (M.M.M.). The Governor General is the Chancellor of the Order and the Chief of the Defence Staff is its Principal Commander. Commander recognizes outstanding meritorious service in duties of great responsibility. Officer marks outstanding meritorious service in duties of responsibility. Member awards exceptional service or performance of duty.

Appointments to the Order are made by the Governor General on the recommendation of the Chief of the Defence Staff. In any calendar year, the Governor General may appoint persons, the number not to exceed one tenth of one per cent of the number of persons who were members of the Canadian Armed Forces the preceding year. Of those appointed, six per cent may be commanders, thirty per cent officers and the rest members. One investiture ceremony is held annually, usually in May or June.

The **Royal Victorian Order** was established in 1896 and is conferred by the Sovereign for extraordinarily important or personal services to the Sovereign or to the Royal Family. Canadians may be invested in one of three grades: Commander, Lieutenant, and Member. The **Royal Victorian Medal** was established in 1896 and is awarded by the Sovereign for personal services to the Sovereign or to the Royal Family.



*Ribbon and Medal of Royal Victorian
Medal (as worn by women)*

The **Most Venerable Order of the Hospital of St. John of Jerusalem** (the Order of St. John) was established in Canada in 1883 and is conferred to persons who have performed or are prepared to perform good service to the Order. The Sovereign Head of the Order is Her Majesty the Queen; the Governor General is the Prior of Canada. There are four grades: Knight or Dame; Commander Brother or Sister; Officer Brother or Sister; and Serving Brother or Sister.

Although provincial orders are not part of the Canadian honours system, l'Ordre national du Québec, the Saskatchewan Order of Merit, the Order of Ontario, the Order of British Columbia and the Order of Prince Edward Island are part of the Canadian order of precedence of orders, decorations and medals.

DECORATIONS

The Military Valour Decorations

Traditionally, countries have had their own valour decorations to recognize acts of bravery by their military personnel in time of war. By recommending the creation of Canadian military valour decorations, the Government has filled a void in the Canadian honours system.

The decorations were approved by Queen Elizabeth II on February 2, 1993. They consist of the Victoria Cross, the Star of Military Valour and the Medal of Military Valour.

They are awarded by the Governor General on the advice of the Military Valour Advisory Committee. The Military Valour Decorations may be awarded to a member of the Canadian Forces or a member of an allied armed force that is serving with or in conjunction with the Canadian Forces, on or after January 1, 1993. They may be awarded posthumously.

The **Victoria Cross (V.C.)** was created by Queen Victoria in 1856 and was awarded to Canadians in all wars until 1945. The Canadian Victoria Cross retains the same design and the same awarding criteria as the British Victoria Cross. It is granted "for the most conspicuous bravery, a daring or pre-eminent act of valour or self-sacrifice or extreme devotion to duty, in the presence of the enemy". The Cross is a bronze straight armed cross pattée, 38 mm across with raised edges, suspended from a crimson ribbon 38 mm in width. The obverse has, in the middle of the cross, a lion guardant standing on the royal crown, with the Latin inscription "PRO VALORE". The date of the act for which the decoration is bestowed is engraved in a raised circle on the reverse. It is the highest in the order of precedence of Canadian honours.

E.1 - 4

The **Star of Military Valour (S.M.V.)** is awarded for distinguished and valiant service in the presence of the enemy. It consists of a gold star with four points with a maple leaf in each of the angles, on the obverse of which a gold maple leaf is superimposed in the centre of a sanguine field surrounded by a silver wreath of laurel and on the reverse of which the royal cipher and crown and the inscription "PRO VALORE" appear. The Star is worn, suspended from a crimson ribbon with two white stripes 4 mm in width, immediately after any order and before the Star of Courage.

The **Medal of Military Valour (M.M.V.)** is awarded for an act of valour or devotion to duty in the presence of the enemy. It consists of a circular gold medal, on the obverse of which appear a maple leaf surrounded by a wreath of laurel, and on the reverse, the royal cipher and crown and the inscription "PRO VALORE". The medal is worn from a crimson ribbon with three white stripes 3 mm in width, immediately after the Meritorious Service Cross and before the Medal of Bravery.

Decorations recognize various degrees of bravery, professionalism, and exceptional devotion to duty. They are divided into two categories: Bravery Decorations and Meritorious Service Decorations.

Bravery Decorations

The **Cross of Valour (C.V.)** is awarded for acts of the most conspicuous courage in circumstances of extreme peril. It has precedence over all other Canadian orders, decorations or medals, after the Victoria Cross.

The **Star of Courage (S.C.)** is awarded for acts of conspicuous courage in circumstances of great peril.

The **Medal of Bravery (M.B.)** is awarded for acts of bravery in hazardous circumstances.

All are granted by the Governor General on the advice of the Canadian Decorations Advisory Committee. Created in 1972, the decorations for bravery may be awarded to Canadian citizens or to non-Canadians who have performed an act of bravery in Canada, or outside Canada if the act was in Canada's interest. They may be awarded posthumously.

Meritorious Service Decorations

The **Meritorious Service Cross (M.S.C.)** (military division) was created in 1984. It recognizes a military deed or activity that has been performed in an outstandingly professional manner, according to a rare high standard that brings considerable benefit or great honour to the Canadian Forces.

The **Meritorious Service Cross (M.S.C.)** (civil division) was created in 1991. It recognizes a deed or activity performed in an outstandingly professional manner or according to an uncommonly high standard that brings considerable benefit or great honour to Canada.

The **Meritorious Service Medal (M.S.M.)** (military division) was created in 1991, to recognize a military deed or activity that has been performed in a highly professional manner or is of a very high standard that brings benefit or honour to the Canadian Forces.

The **Meritorious Service Medal (M.S.M.)** (civil division) was created in 1991 to recognize a deed or activity that has been performed in a highly professional manner or as of a very high standard that brings benefit or honour to Canada.

Meritorious Service Decorations, which may be awarded posthumously, are granted by the Governor General on the advice of the Chief of the Defence Staff (military division) and the Meritorious Service Decorations Advisory Committee (civil division).

MEDALS

Medals recognize general service and are often presented to those who participate with distinction, to commemorate special occasions and anniversaries; they may also be awarded for long-term good conduct and exemplary service. They are divided into the following categories: the service medals, the commemorative medals, the long service and good conduct medals, and other medals.

The Service Medals

The **Special Service Medal (S.S.M.)** was created in 1985 to recognize service under abnormally difficult conditions for an extended period. The first one, the **Special Service Medal, Pakistan (1989-90)** was given to personnel who participated in the Mine Awareness and Clearance Training Program in Pakistan, between 15 March 1989 and 29 July 1990. (It may not be awarded along with another medal recognizing the same service, such as a United Nations medal.)

The Commemorative Medals

The Canadian Centennial Medal (1967)

The Queen Elizabeth II's Silver Jubilee Medal (1977)

The Medal commemorating the 125th anniversary of Canada (1992)

E.1 - 6

- **The Long Service and Good Conduct Medals**

The **Royal Canadian Mounted Police Long Service Medal**, awarded for twenty years of service and good conduct, was created in 1934. A bar, to be worn on the ribbon of the medal, is also awarded for each additional five years of such good service.

The **Canadian Forces Decoration** was created in 1949. It is awarded for twelve years of service and good conduct. A bar to be worn on the ribbon of the medal is awarded for each additional ten years of such good service.

The **Police Exemplary Service Medal** (1983), the **Corrections Exemplary Service Medal** (1984), the **Fire Services Exemplary Service Medal** (1985), and the **Canadian Coast Guard Exemplary Service Medal** (1991) are awarded for twenty years of meritorious service and good conduct. A bar, to be worn on the ribbon of the medal, is awarded for each additional ten years of such good service.

- **Other Medals**

The **Queen's Medal for Champion Shot**, which has been awarded in Canada since 1923, became a Canadian medal in 1991 under the authority of Her Majesty the Queen. Two medals are awarded annually, one to the best Regular Force sharpshooter and one to the best sharpshooter from the Reserve Force or the Royal Canadian Mounted Police.

GOVERNMENT HOUSE

Constitution of the Order of Canada, 1994

P.C. 1994-2026

December 6, 1994

His Excellency the Governor General in Council, on the recommendation of the Prime Minister, is pleased hereby to direct that Letters Patent do issue, under the Great Seal of Canada, repealing the Constitution of the Order of Canada, made by Letters Patent on May 10, 1972, and making the annexed Constitution of the Order of Canada, 1994, in substitution therefor.

RAMON JOHN HNATYSHYN

Canada

ELIZABETH THE SECOND, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom, Canada and Her other Realms and Territories QUEEN, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith.

To All to Whom these Presents shall come or whom the same may in any way concern,

Greeting:

Whereas We did by Our Letters Patent, issued on May 10, 1972, ordain, direct and appoint that the Order of Canada be governed by the Constitution of the Order of Canada, which was set out in the schedule to Our said Letters Patent;

And Whereas it is desirable and Our Privy Council for Canada has advised that Letters Patent do issue repealing the said Constitution and making the annexed Constitution of the Order of Canada, 1994, in substitution therefor;

Now Know You that We, by and with the advice of Our Privy Council for Canada, do by these Presents repeal the Constitution of the Order of Canada and make the annexed Constitution of the Order of Canada, 1994, in substitution therefor.

In Witness Whereof, We have caused these Our Letters to be made Patent and the Great Seal of Canada to be hereunto affixed.

Witness:

Our Right Trusty and Well-beloved Ramon John Hnatyshyn, a Member of Our Privy Council for Canada, Chancellor and Principal Companion of Our Order of Canada, Chancellor and Commander of Our Order of Military Merit, One of Our Counsel learned in the law, Governor General and Commander-in-Chief of Canada.

-- Given this sixteenth day of January in the year of Our Lord one thousand nine hundred and ninety-five and in the forty-third year of Our Reign.

By Her Majesty's Command Par ordre de Sa Majesté

JEAN CHRÉTIEN

Prime Minister of Canada Le premier ministre du Canada

RÉSIDENCE DU GOUVERNEUR GÉNÉRAL

Constitution de l'Ordre du Canada (1994)

C.P. 1994-2026

Le 6 décembre 1994

Sur recommandation du premier ministre, il plaît à Son Excellence le Gouverneur général en conseil d'ordonner la délivrance de lettres patentes, sous le grand sceau du Canada, abrogeant les statuts de l'Ordre du Canada, établis par lettres patentes le 10 mai 1972, et les remplaçant par la Constitution de l'Ordre du Canada (1994), ci-après.

RAMON JOHN HNATYSHYN

Canada

ELIZABETH DEUX, par la Grâce de Dieu, REINE du Royaume-Uni, du Canada et de ses autres royaumes et territoires, Chef du Commonwealth, Défenseur de la Foi.

À tous ceux à qui les présentes parviennent ou qu'icelles peuvent de quelque manière concerner,

Salut :

Attendu que Nous avons, par Nos lettres patentes délivrées le 10 mai 1972, ordonné, décrété et décidé que l'Ordre du Canada serait régi par les statuts de l'Ordre du Canada, joints à Nos lettres patentes;

Attendu qu'il est souhaitable et que Notre Conseil privé pour le Canada a recommandé que soient délivrées des lettres patentes abrogeant ces statuts et les remplaçant par la Constitution de l'Ordre du Canada (1994), ci-après.

Sachez donc que, sur et avec l'avis de Notre Conseil privé pour le Canada, Nous abrogeons les statuts de l'Ordre du Canada et les remplaçons par la Constitution de l'Ordre du Canada (1994), ci-après.

En foi de quoi, Nous avons fait délivrer Nos présentes lettres patentes et à icelles fait apposer le grand sceau du Canada.

Témoin :

Notre très fidèle et bien-aimé Ramon John Hnatyshyn, Membre de Notre Conseil privé pour le Canada, Chancelier et Compagnon principal de Notre Ordre du Canada, Chancelier et Commandeur de Notre Ordre du Mérite militaire, l'un de Nos conseillers juridiques, Gouverneur général et Commandant en chef du Canada.

Donné le seizième jour de janvier en l'an de grâce mil neuf cent quatre-vingt-quinze, le quarante-troisième de Notre Règne.

E

ORDERS, DECORATIONS AND MEDALS

E.2

Royal Victorian Order

This Order, instituted by Her Majesty Queen Victoria, Empress of India on April 21, 1896, consists of the Sovereign, a Grand Master, ordinary members, and such honorary members as the Sovereign shall from time to time appoint, the members being divided into five classes, and designated respectively: (1) knights and dames Grand Cross, (2) knights and dames commanders, (3) commanders, (4) lieutenants, and (5) members of the Fifth Class. Under date of May 29th, 1936, a Warrant was issued consolidating the Statutes of the Order so as to permit of its bestowal upon women.

The persons to be admitted as ordinary members of this Order shall be such persons, being male or female, who, having rendered extraordinary, or important, or personal service to the Sovereign, merit Royal favour; and the honorary members of the several classes consist of those foreign princes and persons upon whom the Sovereign may think fit to confer the honour of being received into the Order.

The number of the members is unlimited, and the anniversary of the Order is the Twentieth day of June every year, being the day of Her late Majesty Queen Victoria's Accession to the Throne.

Men who are commanders wear around their necks the like ribbon and badge as that appointed for the knights commanders, and women wear the bow and badge appointed for dames commanders, but neither is entitled to wear the Star.



Ribbon and Badge of Commander (CVO)
(as worn by men)

E.2 - 2

The lieutenants wear a badge of the same form and appearance as that appointed for the commanders, but of smaller size, pendent from a ribbon of the same colours, of the breadth of an inch and a quarter, attached from the left breast in the case of men and tied in a bow and worn on the left shoulder in the case of women.



Ribbon and Badge of Lieutenants (LVO)
(as worn by women)

The members of the Fifth Class wear, from the left breast or shoulder, the same ribbon and badge as that appointed for the Fourth Class, with the exception that the cross is of frosted silver instead of white enamel.



Ribbon and Badge of Members (MVO)
(as worn by men)

In uniform ladies wear their badge in the same way as that adopted for male holders.

The Chapel of the Savoy has been the Chapel of the Order since 1938.

[The "Victorian Medal" (silver-gilt, silver, or bronze, having on the obverse the Royal effigy, and on the reverse the Royal and Imperial cypher upon an ornamental shield within a wreath of laurel, in base a scroll, thereon the words "Royal Victorian Medal") was also instituted by Queen Victoria.

This medal is worn by men on the left breast of the coat or outer garment pendent to a ribbon of the breadth one inch and a quarter of the same colour and pattern as that appointed for the members of the Royal Victorian Order, and by women from a ribbon tied in a bow on the left shoulder.]

Sovereign - HM The Queen.

Grand Master - Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother.

Chancellor - The Lord Chamberlain

Secretary - The Keeper of the Privy Purse.

Registrar - The Secretary of the Central Chancery of the Orders of Knighthood.

Chaplain - Rev. Canon Cecil Edwyn Young.

Hon. Genealogist - Walter John George Verco, Esq., CVO.

ROYAL VICTORIAN ORDER

Commander/Commandeur (CVO)	Date of appointment/ date de nomination
Mr. Esmond U. Butler	01/01/1972
Lieutenant General Howard D. Graham	03/08/1973
Le major-général Roland A. Reid	14/08/1973
Brigadier P. Stewart Cooper	14/08/1973
Captain (N) Donald C. McKinnon	01/01/1974
M. Michel Gauvin	25/07/1976
Colonel Frank McEachern	03/06/1978
Mr. Henry F. Davis	06/08/1978
Commander G.F. Manson	14/06/1980
Colonel John Bourne	01/01/1981
Senator the Honourable P. Michael Pitfield	09/11/1982
Dr. Lawrence J. Wallace	11/03/1983
Mr. Hartland McDougall	12/06/1989
M. Léopold Amyot	01/07/1990
Mr. John C. Perlin (<i>promotion</i>)	01/07/1990
M ^{me} Judith A. LaRocque	03/07/1992
The Honourable David See-Chai Lam	20/08/1994
Le major-général M. Gaston Cloutier	22/08/1994
M. Jean-Paul Roy (<i>promotion</i>)	22/08/1994
M. Jean Carle	02/07/1997
Lieutenant (LVO)	
Mrs. Anne Corbett	14/08/1973
Lieutenant Colonel James A. McPhee	14/08/1973
Colonel Robert H. Hilborne	01/01/1975
Le commissaire adjoint Jean B.E.J. Giroux	25/07/1976
Le colonel Georges Bernier	25/07/1976
Mrs. Heleni Webster	18/10/1977
M. Pierre A. Forget	18/10/1977
Mr. Victor C. Chapman	19/10/1977
M. Roger de C. Nantel	19/10/1977
Mr. Eric Cochran	06/08/1978
Le commissaire adjoint J.U. Marcel Sauvé	06/08/1978
Mrs. Alison Ignatieff	06/08/1978
Mr. Graham Glockling	06/08/1978
M. Edmond Joly de Lotbinière	12/06/1982

M. Jean-Paul Roy (promu CVO 22/08/1994)	07/10/1984
Mrs. Gwynethe Willmot	07/10/1984
Mr. D. Michael Jackson	21/10/1987
Mr. Harris D. Boyd	24/10/1987
M ^{me} Louise Lajoie-René de Cotret	24/10/1987
Lieutenant Colonel Donald C. Barter	01/01/1988
Le colonel Gabriel Taschereau	12/06/1988
Mr. John C. Perlin (promoted CVO 01/07/1992)	01/01/1990
Assistant Commissioner Patrick Banning	01/07/1990
M. Yves Landry	01/07/1990
Mr. Graham Sherwood	01/07/1990
Mrs. Margaret Southern	01/07/1990
Mrs. Christina Esposito	02/07/1992
Miss Norma Passaretti	03/07/1992
Mr. Anthony P. Smyth	03/01/1993
Mrs. Marilyn J. Atkinson	11/06/1993
Lieutenant Colonel Robert Hardie	31/12/1993
Mr. David Richardson	20/08/1994
M ^{me} Jacqueline Filion (<i>promotion</i>)	20/08/1994
Mr. J. Michael Roberts	20/08/1994
M ^{me} Suzanne Drapeau (<i>promotion</i>)	22/08/1994
Le colonel Clément Tousignant (<i>promotion</i>)	22/08/1994
Lieutenant Commander Terrance Christopher	22/08/1994
Assistant Commissioner Lowell Thomas	22/08/1994
Mr. Robert Jenkins	02/07/1997
Mr. Ernesto Feu	02/07/1997
Assistant Commissioner David Cleveland	02/07/1997
Mr. David Knapp	02/07/1997

Member/Membre (MVO)

Major Cosmo G.G. Bristowe	14/08/1973
Le major Hubert Leduc	14/08/1973
Mr. Robert Carroll	25/07/1976
Major David C. Summers	19/10/1977
Le major Roger G. Simard	19/10/1977
Le capitaine Pierre Lemay	06/08/1978
Major George E.C. Macdonald	06/08/1978
M ^{me} Ginette Laflèche-Clark	06/08/1978
Miss Mary Barker	26/09/1984
M ^{me} Suzanne Drapeau (promue LVO 22/08/1994)	07/10/1984
Mr. Gordon A. Happy	07/10/1984

E.2 - 6

Le major Pierre Lamontagne	07/10/1984
M ^{me} Denise Robichaud	07/10/1984
Major Wayne C. Thompson	07/10/1984
Mr. Albert V. Benoît	24/10/1987
Mr. Vince Tarasco	24/10/1987
Captain Edward J. Latham	24/10/1987
Lieutenant Commander Robert M. Craig	24/10/1987
Major Brian W. Travis	24/10/1987
M ^{me} Jacqueline Fillion (promue LVO 22/08/1994)	01/07/1990
Le major Normand Jodoin	01/07/1990
Le colonel Clément Tousignant (promu LVO 22/08/1994)	01/07/1990
Le major Paul Dionne	02/07/1992
Mr. Kevin MacLeod	03/07/1992
Mr. David Harris	20/08/1994
M ^{me} Diane Ethier	22/08/1994
Inspector Ronald Scott	22/08/1994
Mr. Gerald Wharton	17/06/1995
Mrs. Irene A. White	17/06/1995
Miss Geraldine M. May	31/12/1995
Mrs. Kathleen Brown	15/06/1996
Mr. Scott Munnoch	02/07/1997
Le lieutenant-commandeur Yves Bastien	02/07/1997
M. André Thivierge	02/07/1997
M ^{me} Danielle Bastrash	02/07/1997
Mrs. Corinne Norrad	13/06/1998

Medal/Médaille (RVM)

M. Jean Nadon	19/09/1977
Miss Hermine Donner	19/09/1977
Le constable Alain Girardin	06/08/1978
Mr. Arthur Johnston	28/12/1979
Staff Sergeant Robert Farnham	01/07/1990
M ^{me} Denise Pitre	01/07/1990
M ^{me} Diane Ethier	03/07/1992
M. Yves Chevrier	11/06/1993
Mrs. Ethel Garnier	15/08/1994
M ^{me} Diane Gauthier	22/08/1994
M. Victor Pilon	22/08/1994
Sergeant Robert Humes	02/07/1997
L'adjutant-mâitre Jean Boisvert	02/07/1997
M. Richard Legrand	02/07/1997
M. Marcel Guillemette	13/06/1998

E

ORDERS, DECORATIONS AND MEDALS

E.3

Precedence of Canadian orders, decorations and medals (P.C. 1998-591, April 2, 1998)

1. The sequence for wearing the insignia of Canadian orders, decorations and medals, and the post-nominal letters associated with orders, decorations and medals are:

- Victoria Cross (V.C.)
- Cross of Valour (C.V.)

- **National Orders**
 - Companion of the Order of Canada (C.C.)
 - Officer of the Order of Canada (O.C.)
 - Member of the Order of Canada (C.M.)
 - Commander of the Order of Military Merit (C.M.M.)
 - Commander of the Royal Victorian Order (C.V.O.)
 - Officer of the Order of Military Merit (O.M.M.)
 - Lieutenant of the Royal Victorian Order (L.V.O.)
 - Member of the Order of Military Merit (M.M.M.)
 - Member of the Royal Victorian Order (M.V.O.)
 - The Most Venerable Order of St. John of Jerusalem
(all grades) - (post-nominal letters only for internal use by the Order of St. John)

- **Provincial Orders**
 - Ordre national du Québec (G.O.Q., O.Q., C.Q.)
 - The Saskatchewan Order of Merit (S.O.M.)
 - The Order of Ontario (O.Ont.)
 - The Order of British Columbia (O.B.C.)
 - The Alberta Order of Excellence (A.O.E.)
 - The Order of Prince Edward Island (O.P.E.I.)

E.3 - 2

- **Decorations**

Star of Military Valour	(S.M.V.)
Star of Courage	(S.C.)
Meritorious Service Cross	(M.S.C.)
Medal of Military Valour	(M.M.V.)
Medal of Bravery	(M.B.)
Meritorious Service Medal	(M.S.M.)
Royal Victorian Medal	(R.V.M.)

- **War and Operational Service medals** (see section 5 for complete list)

Korea Medal
Canadian Volunteer Service Medal for Korea
Gulf and Kuwait Medal
Somalia Medal

- **Special Service Medal with Bars**

Pakistan 1989-90
Alert
Humanitas
NATO/OTAN
Peace/Paix

- **United Nations Medals**

Service Medal (Korea) (1950-1954)
Emergency Force Medal (1956-1967)
Truce Supervision Organization in Palestine (1948-)
and Observer Group in Lebanon (1958)
Military Observation Group in India and Pakistan (1948-1979)
Organization in Congo (1960-1964)
Temporary Executive Authority in West New Guinea (1962-1963)
Yemen Observation Mission (1963-1964)
Force in Cyprus (1965-)
India/Pakistan Observation Mission (1965-1966)
Emergency Force Middle East (1973-1979)
Disengagement Observation Force Golan Heights (1974-)
Interim Force in Lebanon (1978)
Military Observation Group in Iran/Iraq (1989)
Transition Assistance Group (Namibia)
Observer Group in Central America

Iraq/Kuwait Observer Mission
Angola Verification Mission
Mission for the Referendum in Western Sahara
Observer Mission in El Salvador
Protection Force (Yugoslavia)
Advance Mission in Cambodia
Transitional Authority in Cambodia
Operation in Somalia
Operation in Mozambique
Assistance Mission in Uganda/Rwanda
Assistance Mission in Rwanda
Mission in Haiti
Verification of Human Rights and Compliance with the
Comprehensive Agreement on Human Rights in Guatemala
Special Service

• **International Commission and Organization Medals**

International Commission for Supervision and Control (Indo-China)
International Commission for Control and Supervision (Vietnam)
Multinational Force and Observers (Sinai)
European Community Monitor Mission (Yugoslavia)
North Atlantic Treaty Organization with a "Former Yugoslavia" Bar

• **Commemorative Medals**

Canadian Centennial Medal (1967)
Queen Elizabeth II's Silver Jubilee Medal (1977)
125th Anniversary of the Confederation of Canada Medal (1992)

• **Long Service and Good Conduct Medals**

R.C.M.P. Long Service Medal
Canadian Forces Decoration (C.D.)

• **Exemplary Service Medals**

Police Exemplary Service Medal
Corrections Exemplary Service Medal
Fire Services Exemplary Service Medal
Canadian Coast Guard Exemplary Service Medal
Emergency Medical Services Exemplary Service Medal

E.3 - 4

- **Special Medal**

Queen's Medal for Champion Shots

- **Other Medals**

Ontario Medal for Good Citizenship (O.M.C.)

Ontario Medal for Police Bravery

Ontario Medal for Firefighters Bravery

Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal (S.V.M.)

Ontario Provincial Police Long Service and Good Conduct Medal

Service Medal of the Most Venerable Order of St. John of Jerusalem

Commissionaire Long Service Medal

2. The Bar to the Special Service Medal is worn centred on the ribbon. If there is more than one Bar, they are spaced evenly on the ribbon with the most recent uppermost

3. Commonwealth orders, decorations and medals the award of which is approved by the Government of Canada are worn after the Canadian orders, decorations and medals listed in section 1, precedence in each category being set by date of appointment or award.

4. Foreign orders, decorations and medals the award of which is approved by the Government of Canada are worn after orders, decorations and medals referred to in sections 1 and 3, precedence in each category being set by date of appointment or award.

5. Notwithstanding sections 1, 3 and 4, a person who, prior to June 1, 1972, was a member of a British order or the recipient of a British decoration or medal referred to in this section, may wear the insignia of the decoration or medal together with the insignia of any Canadian order, decoration or medal that the person is entitled to wear, the proper sequence being the following:

Victoria Cross (V.C.)

George Cross (G.C.)

Cross of Valour (C.V.)

Order of Merit (O.M.)

Order of the Companions of Honour (C.H.)

Companion of the Order of Canada (C.C.)

Officer of the Order of Canada (O.C.)

Member of the Order of Canada (C.M.)

Commander of the Order of Military Merit (C.M.M.)
Companion of the Order of the Bath (C.B.)
Companion of the Order of St. Michael and St. George (C.M.G.)
Commander of the Royal Victorian Order (C.V.O.)
Commander of the Order of the British Empire (C.B.E.)
Distinguished Service Order (D.S.O.)
Officer of the Order of Military Merit (O.M.M.)
Lieutenant of the Royal Victorian Order (L.V.O.)
Officer of the Order of the British Empire (O.B.E.)
Imperial Service Order (I.S.O.)
Member of the Order of Military Merit (M.M.M.)
Member of the Royal Victorian Order (M.V.O.)
Member of the Order of the British Empire (M.B.E.)
Member of the Royal Red Cross (R.R.C.)
Distinguished Service Cross (D.S.C.)
Military Cross (M.C.)
Distinguished Flying Cross (D.F.C.)
Air Force Cross (A.F.C.)
Star of Military Valour (S.M.V.)
Star of Courage (S.C.)
Meritorious Service Cross (M.S.C.)
Medal of Military Valour (M.M.V.)
Medal of Bravery (M.B.)
Meritorious Service Medal (M.S.M.)
Associate of the Royal Red Cross (A.R.R.C.)
The Most Venerable Order of St. John of Jerusalem (*all grades*) (*post-nominal* letters only for internal use by the Order of St. John of Jerusalem)
Provincial Orders (*order of precedence as set out in section 1*)
Distinguished Conduct Medal (D.C.M.)
Conspicuous Gallantry Medal (C.G.M.)
George Medal (G.M.)
Distinguished Service Medal (S.S.M.)
Military Medal (M.M.)
Distinguished Flying Medal (D.F.M.)
Air Force Medal (A.F.M.)
Queen's Gallantry Medal (Q.G.M.)
Royal Victorian Medal (R.V.M.)
British Empire Medal (B.E.M.)

• **War and operational service medals**

Africa General Service Medal (1902-1956)
India General Service Medal (1908-1935)

E.3 - 6

Naval General Service Medal (1915-1962)
India General Service Medal (1936-1939)
General Service Medal - Army and Air Force (1918-1962)
General Service Medal (1962-)
1914 Star
1914-1915 Star
British War Medal (1914-1918)
Mercantile Marine War Medal (1914-1918)
Victory Medal (1914-1918)
Territorial Force War Medal (1914-1919)
1939-1945 Star
Atlantic Star
Air Crew Europe Star
Africa Star
Pacific Star
Burma Star
Italy Star
France and Germany Star
Defence Medal
Canadian Volunteer Service Medal
Newfoundland Section World War Volunteer Service Medal (*see section 6*)
War Medal (1939-1945)
Korea Medal
Canadian Volunteer Service Medal for Korea
Gulf and Kuwait Medal
Somalia Medal

- **Special Service Medal**

(The order of precedence is as set out for the special Service Medal with Bars in section 1.)

- **United Nations Medal**

(The order of precedence is as set out for the United Nations Medals in section 1.)

- **International Commission Medals**

(The order of precedence is as set out for International Commission and Organization Medals in section 1.)

- **Polar Medals**

(The order of precedence is by order of date awarded.)

- **Commemorative Medals**

King George V's Silver Jubilee Medal (1935)

King George VI's Coronation Medal (1937)

Queen Elizabeth II's Coronation Medal (1953)

Canadian Centennial Medal (1967)

Queen Elizabeth II's Silver Jubilee Medal (1977)

125th Anniversary of the Confederation of Canada Medal (1992)

- **Long Service and Good Conduct Medals**

Army Long Service and Good Conduct Medal

Naval Long Service and Good Conduct Medal

Air Force Long Service and Good Conduct Medal

R.C.M.P. Long Service Medal

Volunteer Officer's Decoration (V.D.)

Volunteer Long Service Medal

Colonial Auxiliary Forces Officer's Decoration (V.D.)

Colonial Auxiliary Forces Long Service Medal

Efficiency Decoration (E.D.)

Efficiency Medal

Naval Volunteer Reserve Decoration (V.R.D.)

Naval Volunteer Reserve Long Service and Good Conduct Medal

Air Efficiency Award

Canadian Forces Decoration (C.D.)

- **Exemplary Service Medals**

(The order of precedence is as set out for Exemplary Service Medals in section 1.)

- **Special Medal**

Queen's Medal for Champion Shot

- **Other medals**

(The order of precedence is as set out for Other Medals in section 1.)

E.3 - 8

6. The Newfoundland Volunteer War Service Medal has the same precedence as the Canadian Volunteer Service Medal.
7. The insignia of orders, decorations and medals not listed in this Directive, as well as foreign awards the award of which has not been approved by the Government of Canada, shall not be mounted or worn in conjunction with the orders, decorations and medals listed in this Directive.
8. The insignia of orders, decorations and medals shall not be worn by anyone other than the recipient of the orders, decorations or medals.

REPEAL

9. The *Canadian Orders, Decorations and Medals Directive*¹ is repealed.

¹ SI/90-161

E

ORDERS, DECORATIONS AND MEDALS

E.4

Wearing of orders, decorations and medals

FULL EVENING DRESS

- **Men (white tie)**

The miniature badges of orders, decorations and medals should be worn suspended from a medal bar attached to the left lapel of the coat.

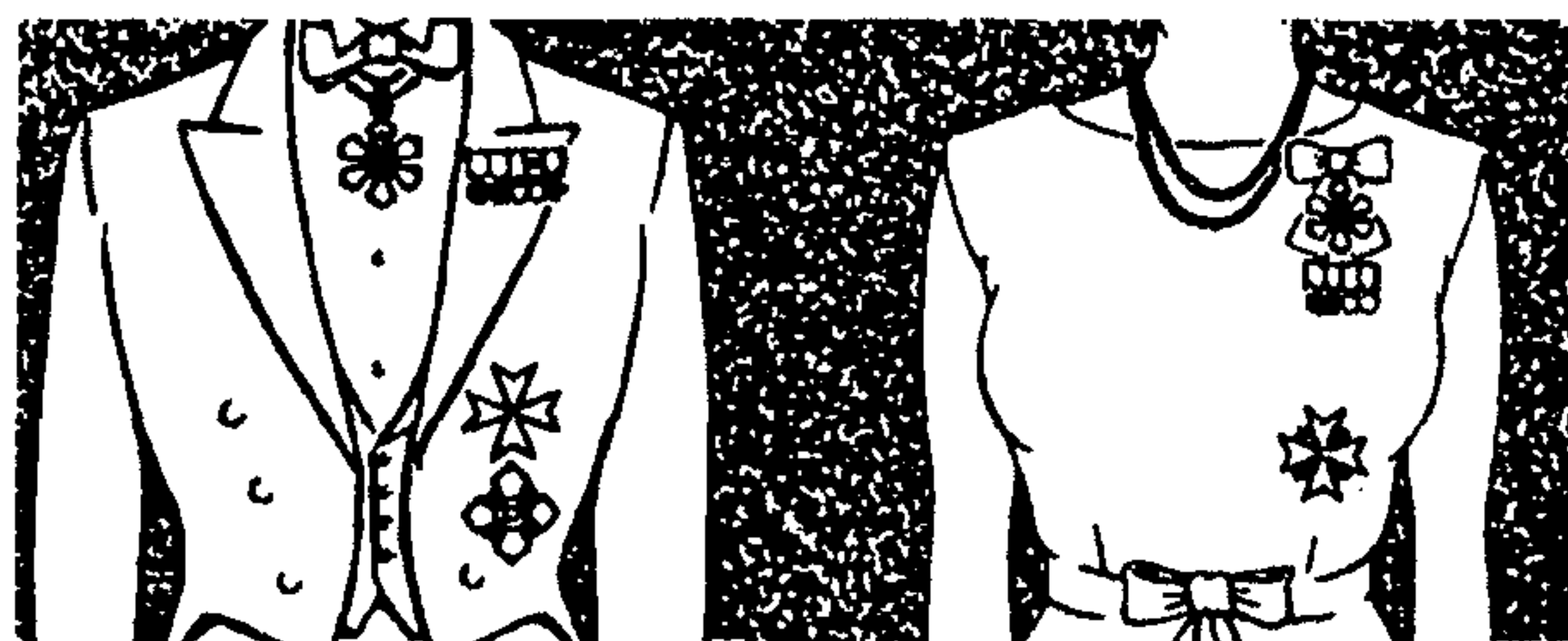
Only one full-size neck badge should be worn, suspended from a miniature-width ribbon. The ribbon is worn under the band of the tie so that the badge hangs one inch below the bow. A miniature of this badge should be included in those worn from the medal bar.

As many as four stars of orders may be worn on the left side of the coat.

- **Women (long dress)**

The miniature badges of orders, decorations and medals should be worn suspended from a medal bar attached to the left side of the dress. If there is only one such award, it may be worn on a bow.

As many as four stars of orders may be worn on the left side of the dress.



On occasions where it is appropriate to wear full evening dress, the invitation will read: "White tie, long dress – Decorations".

E.4 - 2

DINNER JACKET

- **Men (black tie)**

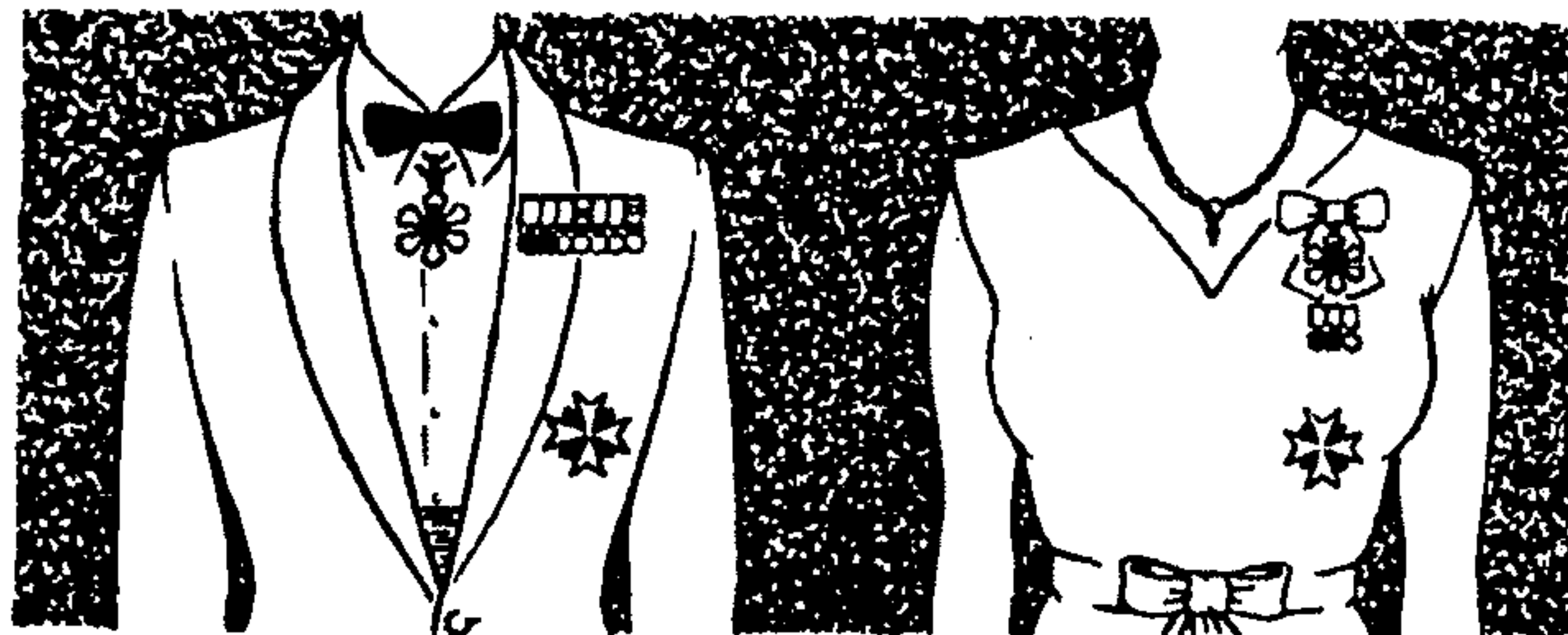
The miniature badges of orders, decorations and medals should be worn suspended from a medal bar attached to the left lapel of the coat.

Only one full-size neck badge should be worn, suspended from a miniature-width ribbon. The ribbon is worn under the shirt collar so that the badge hangs one inch below the tie. A miniature of this badge should be included in those worn from the medal bar.

Only one star of an order should be worn on the left side of the coat.

- **Women (long or short dress)**

The miniature badges of orders, decorations and medals should be worn suspended from a medal bar attached to the left side of the dress. If there is only one such award, it may be worn on a bow.



On occasions where it is appropriate to wear a dinner jacket, the invitation will read: "Black tie, long dress – Decorations" or "Black tie, short dress – Decorations".

MORNING DRESS

- **Men (tail coat or director's [short black] coat)**

Full-size insignia suspended from a medal bar are worn attached to the left side of the coat.

Only one full-size neck badge should be worn, suspended from a full-width ribbon. The ribbon is worn under the shirt collar so that the badge rests on the tie immediately below the knot.

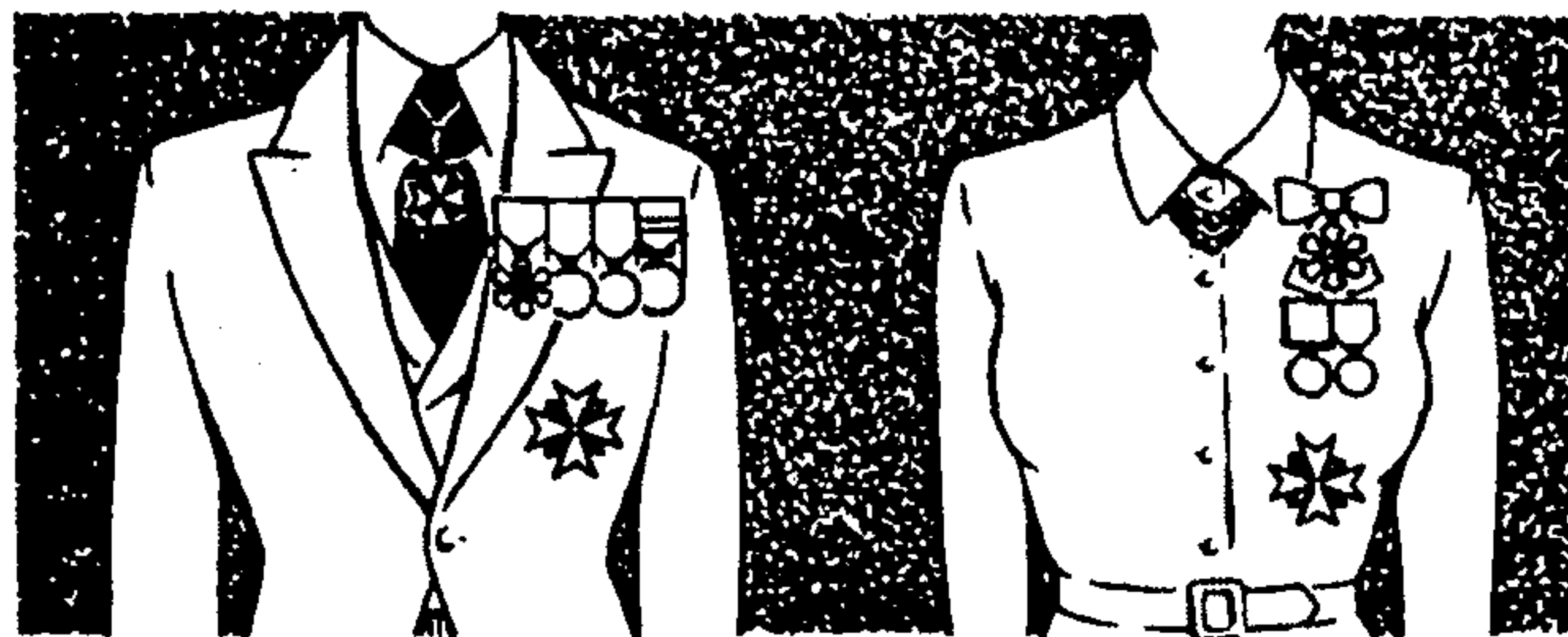
As many as four stars of orders may be worn on the tail coat and one star only on the director's coat, attached to the left side below the insignia on the medal bar.

- **Women (afternoon dress)**

Full-size insignia suspended from a medal bar are worn attached to the left side of the dress. If there is only one such award, it may be worn on a bow.

Only one full-size badge, that would be worn at the neck by a man, should be worn. This badge is worn on a bow attached to the dress immediately above the insignia worn on the medal bar.

Only one star of an order should be worn on the left side of the dress below all other insignia.



At functions where morning dress may be worn, the host should indicate on the invitation whether decorations should also be worn.

E.4 - 4

LOUNGE SUIT

• Men

Those full-size insignia that are suspended from a medal bar are worn attached to the left side of the coat.

Only one neck badge should be worn, suspended from a full-width ribbon. The ribbon is worn under the shirt collar so that the badge rests on the tie immediately below the knot.

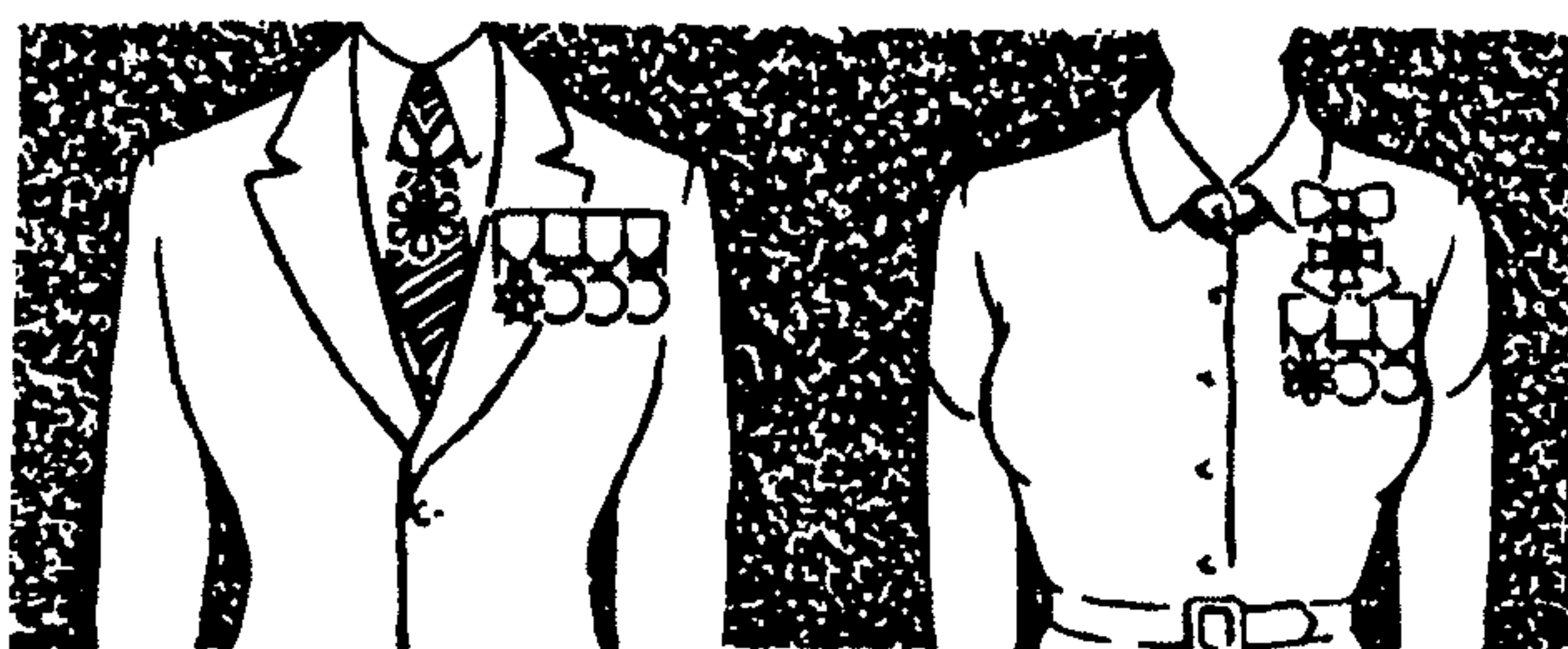
The stars of orders should not be worn with lounge suits.

• Women

When attending a day-time function at which men are wearing lounge suits, women should wear their full-size insignia, which are worn from a medal bar.

Only one full-size badge, that would be worn at the neck by a man, should be worn. This badge is worn on a bow attached to the dress immediately above those worn from the medal bar.

The stars of orders should not be worn on these occasions.



On daytime occasions, such as Remembrance Day, Legion or Regimental gatherings, guests may wear full-size medals with lounge suits or blazers. However, miniatures may be worn at similar evening functions. The host should indicate on the invitation where decorations should be worn.

UNIFORMS

Male and female members of uniformed organizations, such as the Armed Forces, Police Forces, the St. John Ambulance Brigade or the Corps of Commissionaires, should wear their insignia as set out in their respective dress regulations.

Below are suggestions to guide those who wear decorations with military uniforms not subject to other regulations.

- **High-neck tunic**

Those full-size insignia mounted on a medal bar should be worn attached to the tunic over the left breast pocket.

As many as three neck badges may be worn. The senior badge suspended from its ribbon is worn inside the collar of the tunic in such a way that the badge hangs outside with about one inch of the ribbon emerging from the opening of the collar. The second and third badges are worn with the ribbons emerging from the second and third buttonholes.

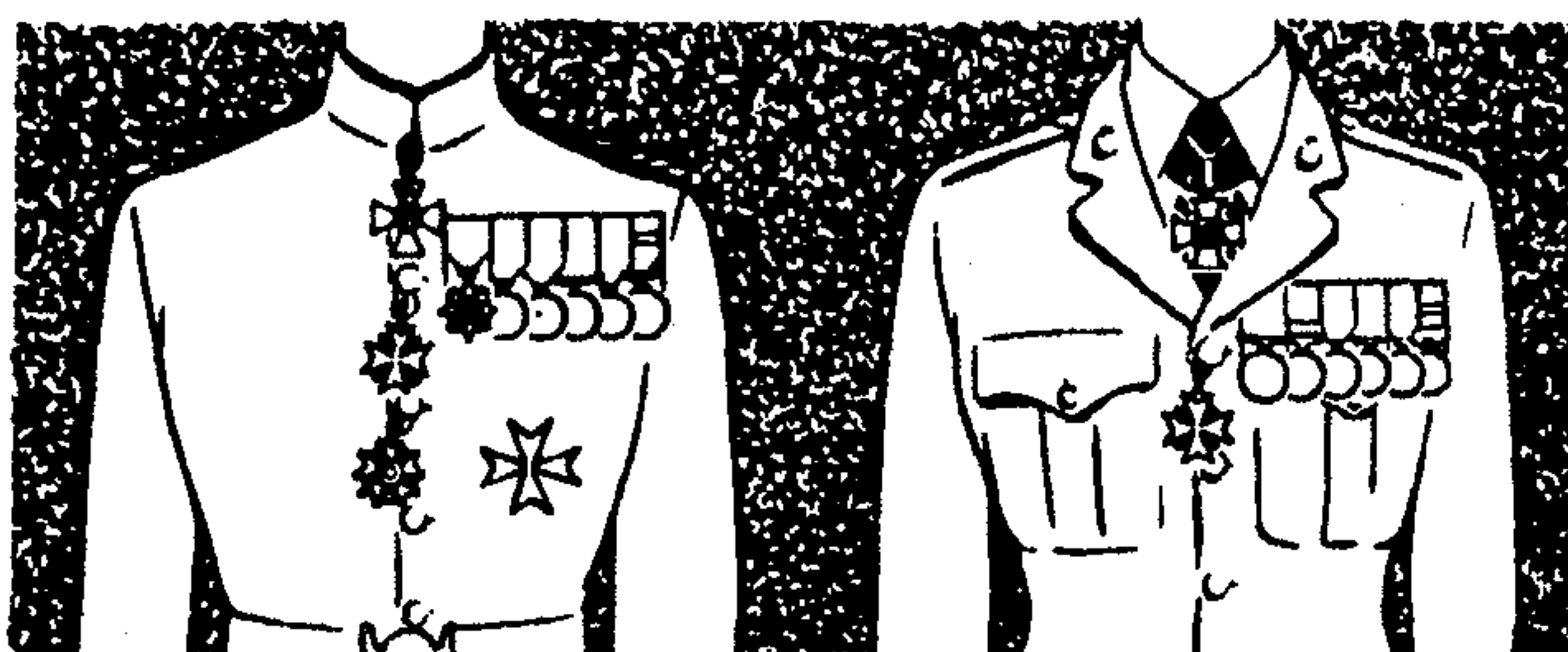
As many as four stars of orders may be worn on the left side of the tunic.

- **Open-neck tunic**

Those full-size insignia mounted on a medal bar should be worn attached to the tunic over the left breast pocket.

Two neck badges may be worn. The senior badge suspended from the full-width ribbon is worn under the collar of the shirt so that the badge rests on the tie immediately below the knot. The second badge is worn with its ribbon emerging from the top buttonhole.

As many as four stars of orders may be worn on the left side of the tunic.



E.4 - 6

- **Formal evening dress**

When members of uniformed organizations wear formal military style evening dress (mess dress), they should wear their decorations in the same manner as for civilian evening dress (white tie).

When not wearing insignia with a military style uniform, it is customary to wear the ribbon alone. The "undress ribbon" is worn around a one-half inch wide strip of stiffening material and sewn immediately above the left breast pocket of the tunic. If more than one ribbon is worn, it should be worn without interval with the senior one closest to the centre of the chest.

OVERCOATS

Only those full-size insignia mounted on a medal bar may be worn on a civilian overcoat at outdoor functions. Stars of orders are not worn.

LAPEL BADGES

Included in the insignia of some orders and decorations is a lapel badge. This badge may be worn on the left lapel of the coat with any order of dress at any time when the full size or miniature insignia or the undress ribbons are not being worn. Women wear this badge in a similar position on the dress or jacket.

[Reproduced from a folder titled "Wearing of Orders, Decorations and Medals, dated November 1994, Chancellery, Rideau Hall.]

E

ORDERS, DECORATIONS AND MEDALS

E.5

Provincial orders and medals

E.5.1

Ontario

- **Ontario's honours and awards**

Provincial honours are a very memorable and most appropriate way for the Government of Ontario to pay tribute to and thank those Ontarians whose lives exemplify excellence and achievement of the highest order; dedicated commitment and caring concern for their fellow citizens; and outstanding courage in the line of duty.

The men and women honoured are truly representative of Ontario's caring and diverse society and their lives and deeds stand as shining examples for all.

- **The Order of Ontario**



In 1986, the Government of Ontario established The Order of Ontario to recognize those persons who have rendered service of the greatest distinction and of singular excellence in any field of endeavour benefiting society in Ontario or elsewhere.

The Order is awarded annually to the most outstanding residents of Ontario possessing the above qualifications.

Nominations

Any person or organization may submit a nomination to Ontario honours and awards. All nominees must reside in Ontario.

No elected federal, provincial or municipal representative may be appointed to The Order while such person remains in office. No person shall be appointed posthumously unless death occurs after they have been selected by the Advisory Council.

The Order is not awarded for acts of bravery.

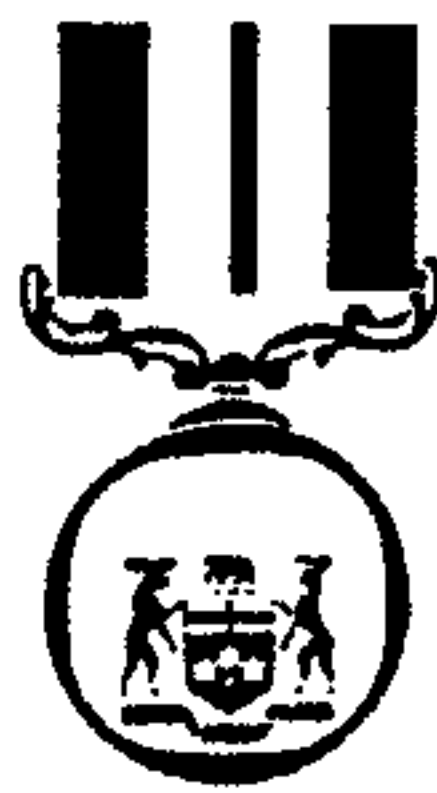
Advisory Council

All nominations are considered by an Advisory Council comprising the Chief Justice of Ontario who is Chairperson and The Speaker of the Legislative Assembly of Ontario and the Secretary of the Cabinet. The Lieutenant Governor of Ontario is the Honorary Chairperson of the Advisory Council.

Insignia

The insignia of The Order is a stylistic trillium, in white and green enamel, edged in gold. In the centre of the trillium is the shield of the arms of the Province, surmounted by the Crown. The ribbons of The Order are red, the colour of Ontario's Ensign and white, green and gold, the colours of the trillium.

• **The Ontario Medal for Good Citizenship**



Established in 1973, the Ontario Medal for Good Citizenship recognizes people who volunteer their time to assist those members of our communities who may be ill, elderly, destitute, or have a disability. Their assistance is given without remuneration or expectation of any reward.

Nominations

Any person or organization may submit a nomination to Ontario honours and awards. All nominees must reside in Ontario.

No elected federal, provincial or municipal representative may be appointed to The Order while such person remains in office. No person shall be appointed posthumously unless death occurs after they have been selected by the Advisory Council.

The medal is not awarded for acts of bravery.

Advisory Council

An independent body of Ontario citizens chosen geographically, comprising a Chairperson and nine members consider all nominations for award of the medal annually and select 12 recipients. The Lieutenant Governor of Ontario is the Honorary Chairperson of the Advisory Council.

Insignia

The medal is circular in sterling silver with the Ontario coat of arms on the obverse and the trillium on the reverse. The colours of the ribbon are green white and gold, the colours of the trillium.

- **The Ontario Medal for Police Bravery**



Established in 1975, The Ontario Medal for Police Bravery recognizes acts of superlative courage performed in the line of duty by members of Ontario's police forces. By highlighting the frequently dangerous duties performed by our police forces, the award focuses attention and encourages public support for their efforts which are essential to life in our society.

Nominations

Any person or organization may submit a nomination to Ontario honours and awards. The nomination must be approved by the nominee's Chief of Police.

The award can be made posthumously.

Advisory Council

An independent body of Ontario citizens chosen geographically, comprising a Chairperson and four members, consider all nominations for award of the Medal, and select the recipients annually. The Chairperson of the Ontario Police Commission and The President of the Toronto Junior Board of Trade are ex-officio members of the Council. The Lieutenant Governor of Ontario is the Honorary Chairperson.

Insignia

The medal is in the form of a cross incorporating a crown, a circle of maple leaves and the trillium. It is gold-plated sterling silver with blue and white enamel. The colours of the ribbon are gold and blue.

E.5- 4

- **The Ontario Medal for Firefighters' Bravery**



Established in 1976, The Ontario Medal for Firefighters' Bravery recognizes acts of superlative courage performed in the line of duty by members of Ontario's firefighting forces. By highlighting the frequently dangerous duties performed by our firefighting forces, the award focuses attention and encourages public support for their efforts which are essential to life in our society.

Nominations

Any person or organization may submit a nomination to Ontario honours and awards. The nomination must be approved by the nominee's Fire Chief.

The award can be made posthumously.

Advisory Council

An independent body of Ontario citizens chosen geographically, comprising a Chairperson and four members, consider all nominations for award of the medal, and select the recipients annually. The Fire Marshall of Ontario is an ex-officio member of the Council. The Lieutenant Governor of Ontario is the Honorary Chairperson.

Insignia

The medal is in the form of a cross incorporating a crown, a circle of maple leaves, the trillium and symbolic flames. It is gold-plated sterling silver with red and white enamel. The colours of the ribbon are red and gold.

[Information provided by the Ministry of Citizenship, Ontario, 1993]

E.5.2

Quebec

- **History of the Ordre national du Québec**



Through its institutions, Quebec has developed a number of marks of distinction over the years; the reason for their proliferation lies in the growing specialization of the services an individual can render to his or her community through technical, scientific and social progress.

However, there was no distinction to provide official recognition by the people of Quebec for exceptional contributions by Quebecers to our common achievements.

In order to correct this omission, the National Assembly on June 20, 1984 unanimously passed the act creating the *Ordre national du Québec*; thus concluding a series of official measures, the oldest dating from the 1960s and the most recent from the inaugural address by Premier René Lévesque on November 5, 1980. On April 3, 1985, the order's motto "Honour to the people of Quebec" was proclaimed, adding the crowning touch to the *Ordre national du Québec*.

The order is intended to be thoroughly modern. While it draws on sources from the past, it is itself the origin of a tradition that will endure over the years. Since the creation of the *Ordre national du Québec*, 260 distinguished people have been appointed to one of its three levels. Demonstrating Quebec's historical ties with France, Premier Robert Bourassa also presented the insignia of the order to four French dignitaries in 1986 and 1987 at the Francophone Summit.

- **An institution to promote respect and fidelity**

The *Ordre national du Québec* stresses the themes of pride, the lessons of courage, the demands of perfection, and the full awareness of responsibilities that are the essential components of a society.

It is a means of remembering and recognizing Quebec men and women who through their distinguished acts have helped gain recognition for us and for our national character in expressions of thought or humanity, be it in scientific knowledge, in technical achievements, in all forms of art, and also in the edification of works that are social in nature here and elsewhere, or in acts that are sources of admiration.

E.5- 6

The purpose of the *Ordre national du Québec* is to develop a state of awareness such that each person can define himself or herself in relation to the group, recognize the values he or she owes to the group, grasp the lines of force of the group's development and take part in its evolution.

- **An institution bearing witness to our evolution**

Quebec's territory is more than just geography. It is a set of values and achievements that define our development, going well beyond the economic situation.

The *Ordre national du Québec* concerns all Quebecers. It reflects their diversity, portrays and respects their differences, conveys the common ideal and shows how the aspirations of Quebec's people converge. This plurality is exceptionally rich, and it must be recognized.

Each new collective experience produces greater cohesion: resistance to threats from outside, joint achievements or distinguished acts by one member of this community. All Quebecers are conscious of sharing a heritage that makes them different from the other groups on this continent. They know that in this respect they are carrying on a long tradition.

Quebec's vitality and evolution reveal its nature, the values that motivate it, the ideologies that inspire it and the lines of force of its development. The *Ordre national du Québec* is intended to recognize men and women who are the true vectors of our society's development.

- **How the *Ordre national du Québec* works**

Status of the Order

The *Ordre national du Québec* was created by an act of the National Assembly on June 20, 1984 (1984, Chapter 24).

The Premier of Quebec is responsible for applying this act. He awards the insignia of the *Ordre national du Québec*.

The order is administered by a council of nine members who are elected for three-year terms, with one third being elected each year. The council's mandate is to study the proposed candidacies and make recommendations to the Premier.

The Premier proposes the candidates to Cabinet, and those accepted are then appointed by order of the government.

Eligibility

The *Ordre national du Québec* is open to all residents of Quebec, without exception. Appointments may even be made posthumously. The Premier may also, at any time, appoint to the order a distinguished person who does not live in Quebec, on whom the government wishes to bestow an honorary distinction.

To make certain that the goals of the order - to bear witness to the pride inspired by exceptional accomplishments by certain persons for the benefit of society - are respected, high eligibility criteria will be maintained.

Nomination

Each year an invitation to propose candidates is published in Quebec's media.

Any person may submit the name of a person residing in Quebec for appointment as a grand officer, officer or knight of the *Ordre national du Québec*. Names are submitted to the Secretariat of the *Ordre national du Québec* for study by the council.

Submissions must include a file containing biographical notes on the candidate and a list of the candidate's achievements. The proposal must be sponsored by two persons or by an association as appropriate.

Privileges of members

Membership in the *Ordre national du Québec* confers the following privileges:

- wearing the insignia of the member's degree, according to the circumstances. The insignia of the order consist of the following, for each degree: the full-size badge, the miniature badge, the ribbon bar and the rosette.



Grand officer's badge
badge



Knight's badge

- using the letters corresponding to the person's degree in the order: grand officer: GOQ; officer: OQ; knight: CQ.

Proclamation and Insignia Presentation Ceremony

The official proclamation by the Premier announces the name and degree of future members of the *Ordre national du Québec* as soon as they are appointed by order of the government. The presentation ceremony is held each year. However, special sessions can be held at any time for distinguished persons who do not live in Quebec, on whom the Premier wishes to bestow an honorary distinction.

• Insignia of the *Ordre national du Québec*

The insignia of the *Ordre national du Québec* are inspired by the heraldic charges used on Quebec's flag: the fleur-de-lis and the colours azure and white (Order 650-85 of April 3, 1985).

The nature of the insignia of the *Ordre national du Québec* and the form and procedure for presenting them are prescribed in the Regulation respecting the Insignia of the *Ordre national du Québec*, adopted by Order 936-85 of May 22, 1985.

The secretary general of the Conseil exécutif is the custodian of the register of signatures, the records of the order and the matrixes of the insignia of the order (SQ 1984, ch 24, s 20).

• Seal of the *Ordre national du Québec*



This is the official instrument for order documents.

No appointment, removal from membership, assignment or order is effective unless it has been marked with the seal of the *Ordre national du Québec*.

Similarly, any person who becomes a member of the *Ordre national du Québec*, whether as grand officer, officer or knight, receives a certificate with the Premier's signature. This certificate bears the seal of the order and the degree to which the member has been appointed or promoted.

The seal of the order is the property of the *Ordre national du Québec*.

[Taken from a brochure published by the Secretariat of the *Ordre national du Québec*, March 1990]

E.5.3

British Columbia

- **Order of British Columbia**

The Provincial Symbols and Honours Act, adopted by the British Columbia Legislature and given Royal Assent in April 1989, protects a visual emblem from unauthorized use as well as establishing a provincial honours system, of which the principal component is the Order of British Columbia.

The British Columbia Act specifies that the Order recognizes “those persons who have served with the greatest distinction and excelled in any field of endeavour benefiting the people of the Province or elsewhere”. It establishes a seven-member advisory council comprising the Chief Justice as chairman, the Speaker of the Legislative Assembly, the Deputy Provincial Secretary, one of the presidents of the three provincial universities (in rotation for two-year terms), the President of the Union of British Columbia Municipalities, and two members of the Order itself appointed on the recommendation of the other members of the Council.

Members of the Order may use the initials “O.B.C.” after their names. The Lieutenant Governor confers the honour at an annual investiture. The legislation specifies no limit on the annual or total number of recipients.

The first investiture of the Order of British Columbia took place in June 1990, when twenty-six recipients were named to the Order. This somewhat large number was decided by the Council as a “catch-up” measure for the first year; the intention is to appoint ten to fifteen members annually.

- **Medal for Good Citizenship**

In its 1989 legislation, British Columbia provided for a “British Columbia Medal for Good Citizenship”, similar to the Ontario medal of the same name, presumably as a second-ranking honour for wide use. The medal is intended to “recognize those persons who have acted in a particularly generous, kind or self-sacrificing manner for the common good without expectation of reward”.

[Information provided by the Protocol Office, British Columbia, 1992]

E.5.4

Prince Edward Island

- **The Order of Prince Edward Island**



The Order of Prince Edward Island is the highest honour the Province can bestow. It is the giving of public recognition to individual Islanders whose efforts and accomplishments truly have been exemplary.

- **Purpose**

The Order of Prince Edward Island has been established as a way of encouraging and acknowledging the outstanding achievements of individual citizens of the province.

- **Eligibility**

Anyone presently living in Prince Edward Island, or former long-term residents of the province, is eligible to be considered for investiture in the Order. Elected federal, provincial or municipal representatives and members of the judiciary are not eligible for nomination while still holding office. Posthumous nominations are not accepted.

- **Nominations**

Any individual or organization can submit nominations for the Order for someone who has shown individual excellence or outstanding leadership in the community, or their chosen profession or occupation.

An independent Advisory council, which reviews nominations and recommends the names of honour recipients to the Premier as President of the Executive Council, is comprised of

- A Chairperson
- Three ex-officio members
- Five members
- One Secretary

• **The Order**

The Lieutenant Governor of Prince Edward Island is Chancellor of the Order of Prince Edward Island and confers the honour on not more than 3 people in an annual ceremony at Government House.

[Information provided by the Protocol Office, Prince Edward Island, 1998)

E.5.5

Saskatchewan

- **Order of Merit**



Establishment: Established in 1985, the Order is the highest honour of the Province of Saskatchewan. It recognizes individual excellence, outstanding achievement, and exceptional contributions to the well-being of our society. Members of the Saskatchewan Order of Merit come from all walks of life and many different backgrounds, but they share in a common goal: a promising future for Saskatchewan and its people.

Eligibility: Any Canadian citizen who is a present or former long-term resident of Saskatchewan is eligible for nomination to the Order. (The only exceptions are presently-serving elected representatives in the House of commons or the Provincial Legislature and members of the judiciary.) Posthumous nominations are not accepted. Only individuals may be nominated, not couples, groups or organizations.

Nominations: All nominations come from the public. Anyone who has demonstrated leadership and exceptional achievement and made a mark on the province and its society, should be considered for nomination for the Saskatchewan Order of Merit. Examples of fields of endeavour recognized by this honour are agriculture, business and industry, volunteer service, education and research, the literary, visual and performing arts, occupational and professional achievement, public and community service.

An independent group called the Saskatchewan Honours Advisory Council recommends the appointment of members to the Order each year after considering all the nominations received. There are no fixed quotas or categories, but there is a maximum number of ten appointments annually. The Council consists of : a Chairperson, appointed by the Premier, the Chief Justice of Saskatchewan, alternating with the Chief Justice of Queen's Bench, the Clerk of the Executive Council, the President of the University of Saskatchewan, alternating with the President of the University of Regina, the Provincial Archivist and five other members of the community appointed by the Premier.

The Chief of Protocol is Secretary of the Order and the Protocol Office administers the Honours Programme.

The Order: The Lieutenant Governor of Saskatchewan is Chancellor of the Order and invests recipients in the name of the Crown at an annual investiture.

The Order of Merit insignia includes:

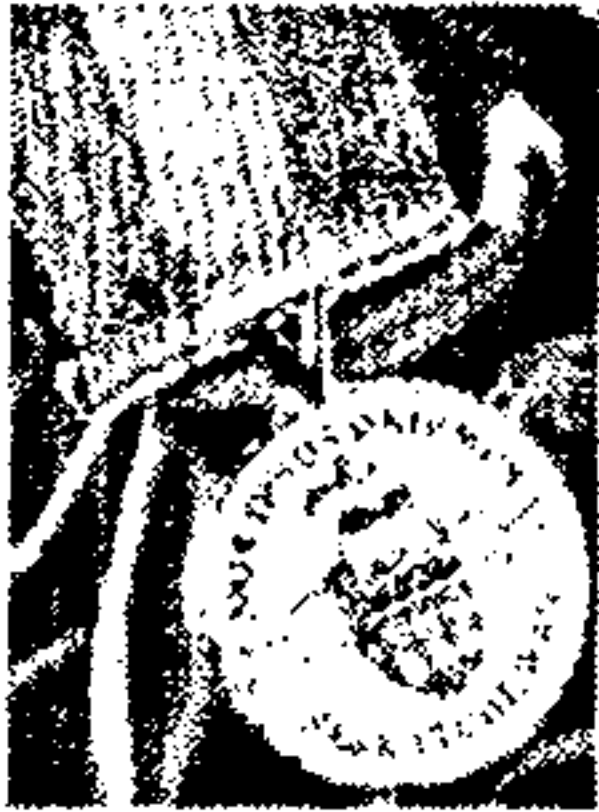
- a silver and enamel medal in the form of a stylised western red lily, the provincial floral emblem, bearing the shield of arms of Saskatchewan and the Crown; the medal is worn with a ribbon of green and gold, the official colours of the Province;
- a lapel pin representing a stylised lily with the crown;
- a certificate in the form of Letters Patent in the name of The Queen, sealed with the Great Seal of the Province of Saskatchewan;

Recipients are life-time members of the Saskatchewan Order of Merit and are entitled to use the letters S.O.M. after their names. Their photographic portraits and citations are displayed in the Athabasca Gallery in the Legislative Building in Regina.

[Information provided by the Protocol Office, Saskatchewan, 1998]

- **The Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal**

Background



- Saskatchewan has the highest rate of volunteerism in Canada. In today's society the volunteer sector plays a crucial role and yet is under increasing pressure due to changes in the economic and social environment. The Government of Saskatchewan wishes to formally recognize volunteers in the province as a way both of expressing the gratitude of the community and of presenting role models to the people of the province.
- While the Saskatchewan Order of Merit, established in 1985 as the province's highest honour, does recognize volunteer or community service, this is only one among many fields of endeavour for which the Order is bestowed. Many of the nominations come from the volunteer sector, but typically the five or six annual appointments to the Order have included only one person chosen for volunteer service. Consequently, the volunteer sector in Saskatchewan has gone largely unrecognized by the provincial government.
- The success of the Saskatchewan 125 Volunteer Recognition Award in 1992 demonstrated the public appeal of a volunteer recognition program.
- Consequently, in 1994 the Advisory Council of the Saskatchewan Order of Merit recommended to the Premier that a new honour, dedicated to the volunteer sector and called the Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal, be incorporated into the provincial honours system during the 90th anniversary year in 1995.
- Following consultation with the Lieutenant Governor, the Premier accepted these recommendations, which form the basis of amendments to The Provincial Emblems and Honours Act, announced in the 1995 Throne Speech and presented to the Legislative Assembly in the 1995 session. The amendments make provision for the Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal as an honour of the provincial Crown; define the criteria for the new honour and its insignia; and change the name of the council to the "Saskatchewan Honours Advisory Council".

The Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal Program

- A maximum of ten medals may be awarded annually.
- The process of selection and presentation is similar to that for the Saskatchewan Order of Merit: nominations are invited from the public through advertising and mailing; the Saskatchewan Honours Advisory Council recommends recipients from among the nominations received; the Lieutenant Governor presents the medals at an annual ceremony.
- Any Canadian citizen who is a present or former long-term resident of Saskatchewan is eligible for nomination, with the exception of elected members of the House of Commons, the Legislature or judges while still holding office. Posthumous nominations are not accepted.
- Criteria for the medal are that the recipients has "provided, without reward or gain, outstanding volunteer service or exceptional community involvement in an area that is beyond the performance of the individual's normal duties or the exercise of the responsibilities of a profession to which that individual belongs".
- The medal, designed by Jack Glasser of Regina, winner of a provincial competition, is circular in form, silver, and attached by a stylized "V", signifying "Volunteer", to a ribbon of green and gold, Saskatchewan's official colours. It bears the Saskatchewan shield of arms with the crown and the motto in Latin *Nos Ipsos Dedimus* meaning "We give our very own self".
- Recipients are also entitled to a certificate and a lapel pin bearing the Shied of Arms with a "v".

The Selection process

The Saskatchewan Honours Advisory Council is responsible for reviewing all Volunteer Medal nominations.

This Council is made up of:

- The Chair, appointed by the Premier
- The Chief Justice of Saskatchewan, alternating with the Chief Justice of Queen's Bench
- The Clerk of the Executive Council
- The President of the University of Saskatchewan, alternating with the President of the University of Regina
- The Provincial Archivist and five other members from the community appointed by the Premier

Some typical questions

What is the relationship between the Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal and the Saskatchewan Order of Merit?

The Saskatchewan Order of Merit remains the province's highest honour. The Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal differs from the Order in the sense that it is aimed at a particular group in society, the volunteer sector, while the Order of Merit continues to recognize a wide range of achievements such as the professions, business, agriculture, the arts, education and research, as well as community leadership.

An analogy is the Canadian honours system. The Order of Canada is our country's highest honour; but there are other specialized national honours such as the Order of Military Merit, Royal Victorian Order, Bravery Decorations, Meritorious Service Cross, and Exemplary Service Medals.

Will the Saskatchewan Order of Merit now be closed to the volunteer sector?

No, volunteer service continues to be one of the fields of endeavour recognized by the Order and nominations will always be welcome.

Can volunteer organizations submit nominations for the Volunteer Medal?

Absolutely! Service clubs, churches, cultural and multicultural groups, youth and seniors groups, sports and recreational organizations, veterans' organizations, health and hospital organizations, to name only those, are welcome to submit nominations for volunteers they think deserve a medal.

What if my nominee is not chosen to receive the medal?

Don't give up! For the Volunteer Medal to be prestigious and meaningful, it can only be awarded to a maximum of ten people annually. However, some nominations will be carried forward to the following year and you will be informed if yours is one of these. And you can always re-submit your nomination.

Are there any other medals like this in Canada?

Ontario has had a Medal for Good Citizenship since 1973; this is the nearest equivalent to the Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal. There is no equivalent to the Saskatchewan medal in the national honours system. Of course, there are a number of volunteer awards outside the official honours systems.

What is the status of the new medal?

The Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal, like the Saskatchewan Order of Merit, is an official honour of the Crown in right of Saskatchewan, receiving similar status and protection through *The Provincial Emblems and Honours Act*. The Queen's representative in Saskatchewan, the Lieutenant Governor, bestows the medal in Her Majesty's name.

Where do I submit my nomination and obtain further information or advice?

Saskatchewan Volunteer Medal
Protocol Office, Provincial Secretary
10th floor, 1919 Saskatchewan Drive
Regina, Saskatchewan S4P 3V7

tel.: (306) 787-3001, fax 787-1269

• **The Saskatchewan Distinguished Service Award**

Purpose: The *Saskatchewan Distinguished Service Award* provides official recognition by the Government of Saskatchewan of persons from outside the province who have made significant contributions to the economic, social and cultural development of Saskatchewan.

The Saskatchewan Distinguished Service Award includes:

- A certificate bearing the coat of arms of Saskatchewan, signed by the Premier and the Minister of the sponsoring department or agency and sealed with the Premier's seal.
- A boxed lapel pin featuring the armorial bearings of Saskatchewan.

Criteria of eligibility

- Nominees must be: either citizens of other countries, or Canadian citizens resident in other provinces or territories of Canada or in other countries.
- Former residents of Saskatchewan are eligible if the contribution for which they are being recognized has been made since their departure from the province.
- Representatives of organizations are eligible for the award but not the organizations themselves.

E.5 - 18

- Posthumous nominations are not accepted.
- Nominees must have made a significant contribution to the economic, social or cultural development of Saskatchewan and its people through leadership and personal activity in areas such as trade, investment, finance, agriculture, resource development, technology, research, the arts, cultural industries, education, tourism, heritage, and community service.

Nomination process

- Nominations for the award may be proposed by any department, agency or Crown Corporation of the Government of Saskatchewan, or authority in which the government is a direct partner (these are called "sponsoring organizations").
- While nominations are not solicited from the general public, sponsoring organizations are expected to arrange input from their stakeholders in identifying possible candidates.
- A call for nominations is made twice annually to the heads of all eligible sponsoring organizations by the Protocol Office. Deadlines for submission of nominations are April 30 and October 31.
- Nominations are formally submitted by the head of the sponsoring organization and must have the approval of the appropriate Minister.
- Documentation required includes a letter of transmittal from the head of the sponsoring organization; evidence of support from the Minister; biography of the nominee and outline of the activities for which he or she is to be recognized; and evidence that the Canadian Embassy or High Commission in the nominee's country of residence has been consulted and concurs that the nominee is suitable in terms of Canada's foreign policy and is worthy of the award. (In the case of Canadians in other provinces or territories, such evidence should be provided by an appropriate organization knowledgeable of the nominee's character and achievements.)
- In making nominations, sponsoring organizations may take into account the likelihood of their Minister travelling to the nominee's location or of the nominee visiting Saskatchewan within a reasonable time-frame. They must also indicate their willingness to cover the costs of the award and the presentation event.

Selection process

- Recipients of the award are recommended by a panel drawn from the awards representatives of participating departments, agencies, Crown Corporations and authorities. The representatives of the sponsoring organizations present and explain their nominations but do not take part in the selection.
- The selection committee meets at least twice annually, in the spring and the fall, to consider nominations submitted by the April 30 and October 31 deadlines.
- *A maximum of six recipients may be selected annually, preferably representatives of various fields of endeavour. The recommendations of the selection committee must be endorsed and submitted by the Minister of Intergovernmental Affairs to Cabinet for final approval.*

For further information:

Protocol Office
Intergovernmental Affairs
10th Floor, 1919 Saskatchewan Drive
Regina, Saskatchewan
S4P 3V7

Tel.: (306) 787-3001

[Information provided by the Protocol Office, Saskatchewan, 1998]

E.5.6

Alberta

- **Alberta Order of Excellence**

The Alberta Order of Excellence Act was adopted by the Alberta Legislature and given Royal Assent in 1979; however, the first investiture did not occur until 1981. The Act established the Alberta Order of Excellence as a "society of honour" whose object is "to accord recognition to those persons who have rendered service of the greatest distinction and of singular excellence for or on behalf of the residents of Alberta." The Lieutenant Governor of Alberta is Chancellor of the Order. The governing body is a Council of six persons, including a chairman; these are appointed by the Lieutenant Governor in Council, which may prescribe by regulation the seal, motto and insignia of the Order.

Not more than five persons may be appointed to the Alberta Order of Excellence annually. The Lieutenant Governor, as Chancellor, appoints the recipients directly on the advice of the Council and confers the Order at an annual investiture.

[Information provided by the Protocol Office, Alberta, 1992]

E.5.7

Newfoundland

- **The Newfoundland and Labrador Award for Bravery**



On February 25, 1981, the Government of Newfoundland and Labrador announced the establishment of *The Newfoundland and Labrador Award for Bravery*.

The award affords recognition to residents of the Province who have risked their own lives and safety in performing acts of bravery and selfless courage while rendering assistance to their fellow men.

In its physical form, the award, designed by Mr. Ian Stewart, M.S.I.A. (S.A.) of Memorial University, is unique, square in shape, it depicts on the obverse, a stylized drama at sea, symbolic of the long history of valour associated with our environment.

The reverse bears the wording:

Newfoundland and Labrador
FOR BRAVERY.

Produced at the Royal Canadian Mint in Ottawa, the Bravery Award is minted in bronze, gold plated in a mat finish and suspended from blue gogram ribbon. The Award is presented with a case for display purposes.

A Review Panel has been appointed for the purpose of accepting and considering nominations for the award. Recommendations for the award will be made to the Lieutenant Governor in Council by the Panel.

The Review Panel is comprised of:

- Chief Justice of Newfoundland (Chairman);
- President of Memorial University;
- Chief of Police, Royal Newfoundland Constabulary;
- Chief Superintendent, RCMP Newfoundland;
- Deputy Clerk of the Executive Council
- Private Secretary to the Lieutenant Governor; and
- Three members at Large.

E.5 - 22

Individuals or organizations are invited to nominate residents of the Province who, during the current calendar year, have risked their own lives and safety in performing acts of bravery and selfless courage while rendering assistance to their fellow men.

Nomination Forms are available from:

- (i) Royal Newfoundland Constabulary;
- (ii) Royal Canadian Mounted Police; or
- (iii) Secretary, Newfoundland and Labrador Award for Bravery,
c/o Cabinet Secretariat
Confederation Building
St. John's, Newfoundland
A1C 5T7.

• **Other honours**

The 1981 initiative which led to the Newfoundland and Labrador Medal for Bravery also included a proposal for a citizenship award, but this has not been implemented despite being revived several times in the intervening years.

Newfoundland does, however, boast one official honour which has been recognized by Ottawa: the Newfoundland World War II Volunteer Service Medal, which was created in 1981 to fill a gap in the medals of Newfoundland veterans of the Second World War, when Newfoundland was not part of Canada.

[Information provided by the Protocol Office, Newfoundland, 1993]



Chapter F

Royal Family

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.1

Sovereigns, since Confederation (1867)

	Accession	Death/abdication
Her Majesty Queen Victoria Queen of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, Defender of the Faith - title of Empress of India assumed on January 1, 1877	June 20, 1837	January 22, 1901 (death)
His Majesty King Edward VII King of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland and of the British Dominions beyond the Seas, Defender of the Faith, Emperor of India Consort: Her Majesty Queen Alexandra	January 22, 1901	May 6, 1910 (death)
His Majesty King George V King of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland and of the British Dominions beyond the Seas, Defender of the Faith, Emperor of India Consort: Her Majesty Queen Mary	May 6, 1910	January 20, 1936 (death)
His Majesty King Edward VIII King of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland and of the British Dominions beyond the Seas, Defender of the Faith, Emperor of India	January 20, 1936	December 10, 1936 (abdication)

F.1 - 2

His Majesty King George VI
King of the United Kingdom of
Great Britain and Ireland and of
the British Dominions beyond
the Seas, Defender of the
Faith, Emperor of India
- title of Emperor of India
relinquished on June 22, 1948
Consort: Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth

December 10, 1936 February 6, 1952
(death)

Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II
Queen of the United Kingdom,
Canada and her other realms and
territories, Head of the
Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith
Consort: His Royal Highness
The Prince Philip,
Duke of Edinburgh

February 6, 1952

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.2

Royal Family

F.2.1

List of members of the Royal Family

This information is from the official booklet issued by Buckingham Palace:

Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II

His Royal Highness

The Prince Philip, Duke of Edinburgh, PC, KG, OM, GBE, QSO

Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother

His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales, KG, KT, GCB, AK, ADC

His Royal Highness The Duke of York, CVO, ADC

His Royal Highness The Prince Edward, CVO

Her Royal Highness The Princess Royal, GCVO

Her Royal Highness The Princess Margaret, Countess of Snowdon, CI, GCVO

Her Royal Highness Princess Alice, Duchess of Gloucester, GCB, CI, GCVO, GBE

His Royal Highness The Duke of Gloucester, GCVO

Her Royal Highness The Duchess of Gloucester

His Royal Highness The Duke of Kent, GCMG, GCVO, ADC

Her Royal Highness The Duchess of Kent, GCVO

His Royal Highness Prince Michael of Kent

Her Royal Highness Princess Michael of Kent

Her Royal Highness Princess Alexandra, the Honourable Lady Ogilvy, GCVO

The Right Honourable Sir Angus Ogilvy, KCVO

F.2.2

Personal Information on Members of the Royal Family

• **Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II**

- . Birth : 21 April 1926
- . Marriage to the Duke of Edinburgh : 20 November 1947
- . Accession : 6 February 1952
- . Coronation : 2 June 1953

• **His Royal Highness The Prince Philip, Duke of Edinburgh**

- . Birth : 10 June 1921
- . Marriage to The Princess Elizabeth
(later Queen Elizabeth II) : 20 November 1947

• **Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother
[Lady Elizabeth Bowes-Lyon]**

- . Birth : 4 August 1900
- . Marriage to The Duke of York
(later King George VI) : 26 April 1923

• **His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales
[The Prince Charles]**

- . Birth : 14 November 1948
- . Created Prince of Wales : 26 July 1958
- . Invested as Prince of Wales : 1 July 1969
- . Marriage to Lady Diana Spencer : 29 July 1981
- . Divorce : 28 August 1996

• **His Royal Highness Prince William of Wales**

- . Birth : 21 June 1982

• **His Royal Highness Prince Henry of Wales**

- . Birth : 15 September 1984

- **His Royal Highness The Duke of York**
 [The Prince Andrew]
 - . Birth : 19 February 1960
 - . Marriage to Miss Sarah Ferguson : 23 July 1986
 - . Divorce : May 1996

- **Her Royal Highness Princess Beatrice of York**
 - . Birth : 8 August 1988

- **Her Royal Highness Princess Eugenie of York**
 - . Birth : 23 March 1990

- **His Royal Highness The Prince Edward**
 - . Birth : 10 March 1964

- **Her Royal Highness The Princess Royal**
 [The Princess Anne]
 - . Birth : 15 August 1950
 - . Marriage to Captain Mark Phillips : 14 November 1973
 - . Marriage dissolved : 1992
 - . Marriage to Lt-Cdr Timothy Laurence : 12 December 1992

- **Mr. Peter Phillips**
 - . Birth : 15 November 1977

- **Miss Zara Phillips**
 - . Birth : 15 May 1981

- **Her Royal Highness The Princess Margaret, Countess of Snowdon**
 - . Birth : 21 August 1930
 - . Marriage to Anthony Armstrong-Jones : 6 May 1960
 (later created Earl of Snowdon)
 - . Marriage dissolved : 5 July 1978

F.2 - 4

- **The Viscount Linley**

- . Birth : 3 November 1961
- . Marriage to the Honourable Serena Stanhope : 8 October 1993

- **The Viscountess Linley**
[the Honourable Serena Stanhope]

- . Birth : 1970
- . Marriage to Viscount Linley : 8 October 1993

- **Lady Sarah Armstrong-Jones**

- . Birth : 1 May 1964
- . Marriage to Daniel Chatto : 14 July 1994

- **His Royal Highness the Duke of Gloucester**
[Prince Richard of Gloucester]

- . Birth : 26 August 1944
- . Marriage to Miss Birgitte Henriksen : 8 July 1972

- **Her Royal Highness the Duchess of Gloucester**
[Miss Birgitte Henriksen]

- . Birth : 20 June 1946
- . Marriage to Prince Richard of Gloucester : 8 July 1972
[later the Duke of Gloucester]

- **Her Royal Highness Princess Alice, Duchess of Gloucester**
[Lady Alice Montagu-Douglas-Scott]

- . Birth : 25 December 1901
- . Marriage to The Prince Henry,
first Duke of Gloucester : 6 November 1935

- **His Royal Highness the Duke of Kent**
[Prince Edward of Kent]

- . Birth : 9 October 1935
- . Marriage to Miss Katharine Worsley : 8 June 1961

- **Her Royal Highness the Duchess of Kent**
[Miss Katharine Worsley]
 - . Birth : 22 February 1933
 - . Marriage to the Duke of Kent : 8 June 1961

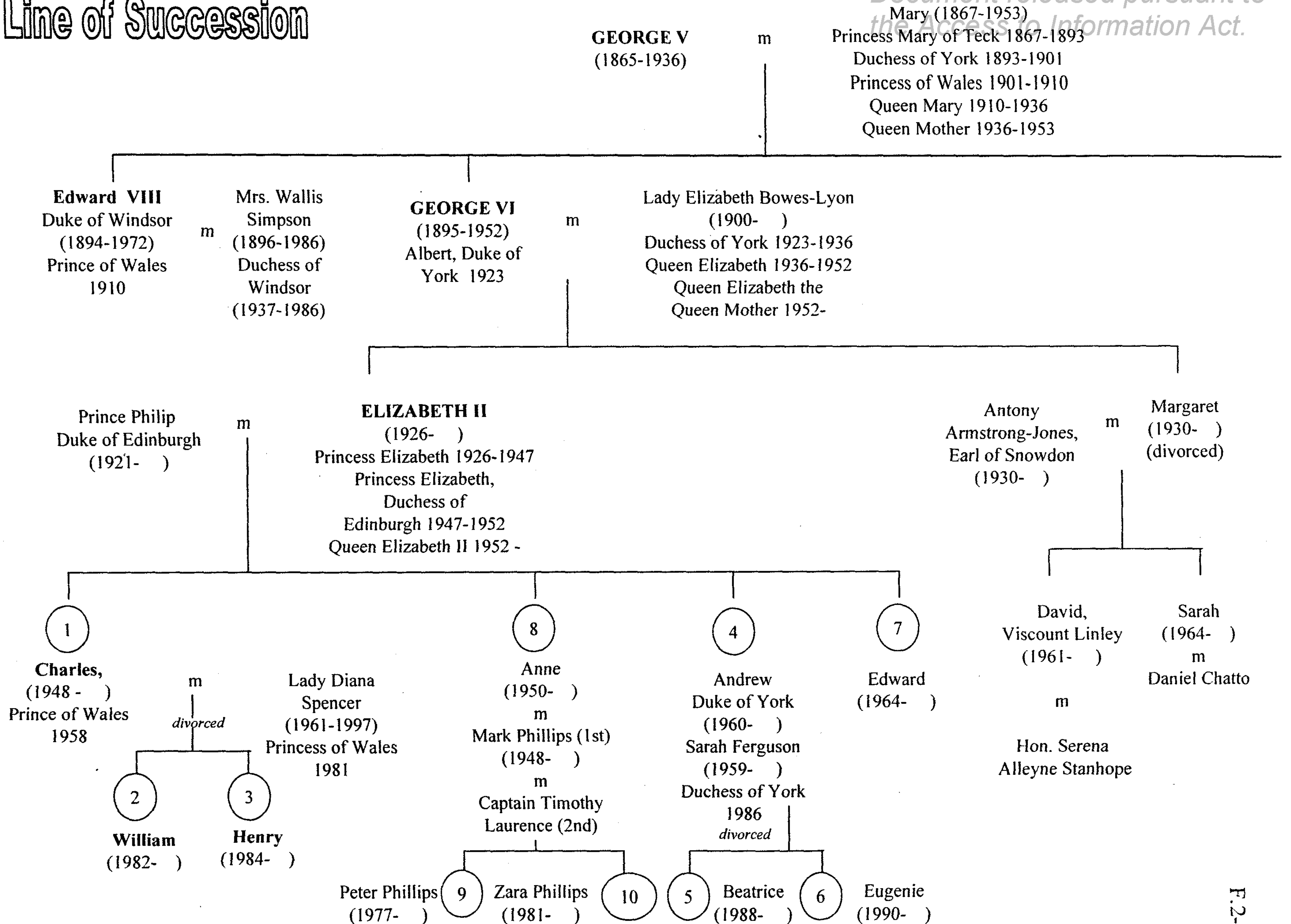
- **His Royal Highness Prince Michael of Kent**
 - . Birth : 4 July 1942
 - . Marriage to
Baroness Marie Christina von Reibnitz : 30 June 1978

- **Her Royal Highness Princess Michael of Kent**
[Baroness Marie Christine von Reibnitz]
 - . Birth : 15 January 1945
 - . Marriage to Prince Michael of Kent : 30 June 1978

- **Her Royal Highness Princess Alexandra,**
The Honourable Lady Ogilvy
[Princess Alexandra of Kent]
 - . Birth : 25 December 1936
 - . Marriage to the Right Hon. Angus Ogilvy : 24 April 1963

- **The Right Honourable Sir Angus Ogilvy**
 - . Birth : 14 September 1928
 - . Marriage to Princess Alexandra of Kent : 24 April 1963

The Line of Succession



The Line of Succession (cont'd)

GEORGE V
(1865-1936)

m

Mary (1867-1953)
Princess Mary of Teck 1867-1893
Duchess of York 1893-1901
Princess of Wales 1901-1910
Queen Mary 1910-1936
Queen Mother 1936-1953

F-2-7

Henry,
Earl of Harewood (1882-1947) m
Victoria Mary,
Princess Royal (1897-1965)

George,
Earl of Harewood (1923-)
m
Marion Stein (1st) (1926-)
m
Patricia Tuckwell (2nd) (1926-)

Gerald (1926-)
m
Angela Dowding (1st) (1919-)
m
Elizabeth Coving (2nd) (1925-)

Henry
Duke of Gloucester (1900-1974)
m
Lady Alice Montagu-Douglas-Scott (Princess Alice, Duchess of Gloucester) (1901-)

William (1941-1972)

Alexander,
Earl of Ulster (1974-)
Davina (1977-)
Rose (1980-)

Richard,
Duke of Gloucester (1944-)
m
Brigitte van Deurs (1946-)

Baron Downpatrick (1988-)

Marina (1992-)

George, Duke of Kent (1902-1942)
m
Marina of Greece (1906-1968)

Edward, Duke of Kent (1935-)
m
Katherine Worsley (1933-)

Alexandra (1936-)
m
The Hon. Sir Angus Ogilvy (1928-)

George Earl of St. Andrews (1962-)
m
Sylvana Tomaselli (1957-)

Helen (1964-)
m
Timothy Verner Taylor

Nicholas (1970-)

Columbus (1994-)

James (1964-)
m
Julia Rawlinson (1964-)

Marina (1966-)

Paul Mowatt

Zenouska (1990-)

Christian (1993-)

John (1905-1919)

Michael (1942-)
m
Marie Christine von Reibnitz (1946-)

Frederick (1979-)

Gabriella (1981-)

F

F.3

F.3.1

ROYAL FAMILY

Royal styles and titles

Statute

CHAPTER R-12

CHAPITRE R-12

An Act respecting the Royal Style and Titles

Loi concernant les titres royaux

Preamble

WHEREAS the Prime Ministers and other representatives of Commonwealth countries assembled in London in the month of December, in the year one thousand nine hundred and fifty-two, considered the form of the Royal Style and Titles, and recognizing that the present form is not in accordance with present constitutional relations within the Commonwealth, concluded that, in the present stage of development of the Commonwealth relationship, it would be in accord with the established constitutional position that each member country should use for its own purposes a form suitable to its own particular circumstances but retaining a substantial element common to all;

AND WHEREAS the said representatives of all the Commonwealth countries concerned agreed to take such action as is necessary in each country to secure the appropriate constitutional approval for the changes now envisaged;

AND WHEREAS, in order to give effect to the aforesaid conclusions, it is desirable that the Parliament of Canada should assent to the issue of a Royal Proclamation establishing the Royal Style and Titles for Canada:

THEREFORE, Her Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate and House of Commons of Canada, enacts as follows:

Short title

1. This Act may be cited as the *Royal Style and Titles Act*.

Assent to Royal Style and Titles

2. The assent of the Parliament of Canada is hereby given to the issue by Her Majesty of Her Royal Proclamation under the Great Seal of Canada establishing for Canada the following Royal Style and Titles, namely:

Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God of the United Kingdom, Canada and Her other Realms and Territories Queen, Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith.

R.S., c. R-12, s. 1.

Considérant :

que les premiers ministres et autres représentants des pays du Commonwealth réunis à Londres en décembre mil neuf cent cinquante-deux, sont arrivés à la conclusion que les titres royaux, dans leur forme actuelle, ne reflètent pas la nature des liens constitutionnels existant au sein du Commonwealth et qu'en conséquence, à ce stade de l'évolution de celui-ci, il serait conforme à la réalité constitutionnelle que chaque pays membre adopte un libellé adapté à sa situation tout en conservant un élément de fond commun;

que les représentants de tous les pays intéressés sont convenus de prendre, dans leur pays respectif, les mesures nécessaires en vue d'obtenir l'agrément constitutionnel requis pour l'adoption des modifications envisagées; que, pour donner effet à ce qui précède, il convient que le Parlement du Canada donne son accord à une proclamation royale fixant le libellé des titres royaux à employer au Canada,

Sa Majesté, sur l'avis et avec le consentement du Sénat et de la Chambre des communes du Canada, édicte :

Préambule

1. Titre abrégé : «*Loi sur les titres royaux*».

Titre abrégé

2. Le Parlement du Canada consent à ce que soit prise par Sa Majesté une proclamation royale sous le grand sceau du Canada fixant la forme des titres royaux pour le Canada, de la façon suivante :

Elizabeth Deux, par la grâce de Dieu Reine du Royaume-Uni, du Canada et de ses autres royaumes et territoires, Chef du Commonwealth; Défenseur de la Foi.

S.R., ch. R-12, art. 1.

Agrément

F.3.1

Proclamation of 1953

F.3-2

Elizabeth R

Canada

Stanis. A. Ferguson
ATTORNEY GENERAL,
CANADA.

ELIZABETH THE SECOND, by the Grace of God, of Great
Britain, Ireland and the British Dominions beyond the Seas
QUEEN, Defender of the Faith.

TO ALL TO WHOM these Presents shall come or whom the
same may in anywise concern,

GREETING:

A PROCLAMATION

WHEREAS the Prime Ministers and other representatives of Commonwealth countries assembled
in London in the month of December, in the year of Our Lord one thousand nine hundred and fifty-two,
considered the form of Our Royal Style and Titles, and, recognizing that the present form is not in
accordance with present constitutional relations within the Commonwealth, concluded that, in the
present stage of development of the Commonwealth relationship, it would be in accord with the
established constitutional position that each member country should use for its own purposes a form
suitable to its own particular circumstances but retaining a substantial element common to all;

AND WHEREAS the said representatives of all the Commonwealth countries concerned agreed to
take such action as is necessary in each country to secure the appropriate constitutional approval
for the changes then envisaged;

AND WHEREAS, in order to give effect to the aforesaid conclusions, the Parliament of Canada,
under and by virtue of An Act respecting the Royal Style and Titles, assented to on the eleventh day
of February, in the year of Our Lord one thousand nine hundred and fifty-three, has assented to the
issue by Us of Our Royal Proclamation under the Great Seal of Canada establishing for Canada the
Style and Titles hereinafter set forth in lieu of the Style and Titles at present appertaining to
the Crown:

NOT KNOW YE that by and with the advice of Our Privy Council for Canada We do by this Our
Royal Proclamation establish for Canada Our Royal Style and Titles as follows, namely, in the
English language:

"Elizabeth the Second, by the Grace of God of the United
Kingdom, Canada and Her other Realms and Territories Queen,
Head of the Commonwealth, Defender of the Faith"

And in the French language:

"Elisabeth Deux, par la grâce de Dieu, Reine du Royaume-
Uni, du Canada, et de ses autres royaumes et territoires,
Chef du Commonwealth, Défenseur de la Foi"

F.3-3

- 2 -

OF ALL WHICH Our Loving Subjects and all others whom these Presents may concern are hereby
ed to take notice and to govern themselves accordingly.

IN TESTIMONY WHEREOF We have caused these Our Letters to be made Patent and the Great Seal
to be hereunto affixed.

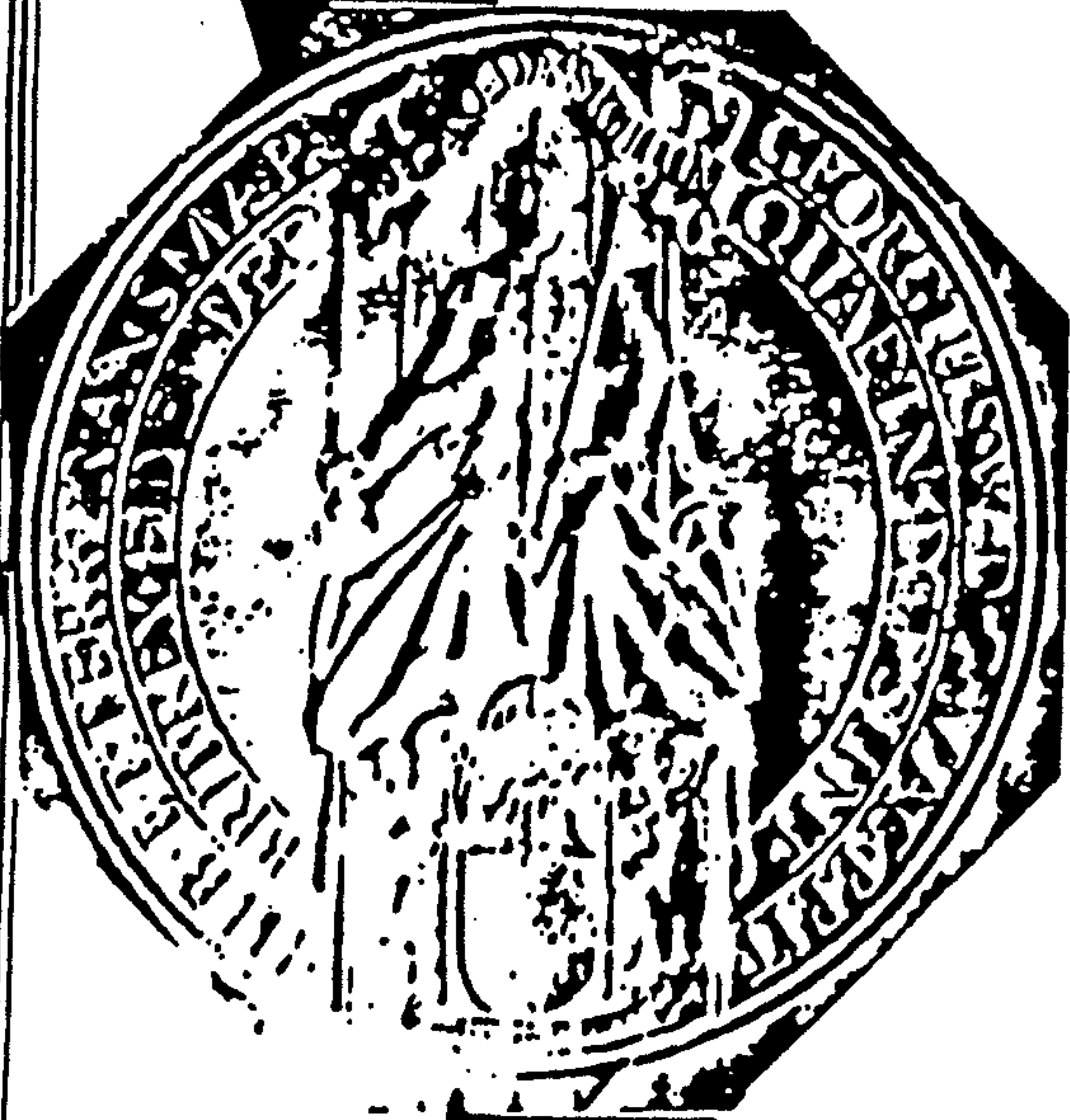
GIVEN the Twenty-eighth day of May in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and
and in the Second Year of Our Reign.

BY HER MAJESTY'S COMMAND,



PRIME MINISTER OF CANADA

GOD SAVE THE QUEEN



F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.4

The Royal Family

F.4.1

The Sovereign's official name

On succession, sovereigns choose the name under which they reign. This is a relatively recent development because until the end of the 17th century very few had more than one Christian name. Although the Hanoverian kings all had more than one name they always chose the first as king, but when Queen Victoria, who had been christened Alexandrina Victoria, came to the throne, she chose the second of these. Her eldest son, Prince Albert Edward, also chose the second as Edward VII, because this was popular in English history, there having been three pre-Conquest and six subsequent kings of this name. Although Queen Victoria expressed her wish that all her male descendants should be christened Albert, this was disregarded after the Queen's death. George V and Edward VIII took their first names as kings; but after the Abdication of Edward VIII, he was succeeded by his brother Prince Albert, Duke of York, who chose his last name, reigning as George VI. It is possible, after the Abdication, that he wished to establish continuity with his father, and Albert, a foreign name, had strong associations with the Prince Consort. When the Queen succeeded it was a foregone conclusion that she would select her first name by which she has always been known.

F.4.2

Numbering sovereigns

The first King of England to adopt enumeration on documents was Edward II, but "Henricus III" had appeared on the coins of Henry III, his grandfather. It is strange that, as Henry III particularly venerated Edward the Confessor and rebuilt Westminster Abbey, the three pre-Conquest Kings Edward were not included in the subsequent numbering, especially as William the Conqueror claimed the throne as the legitimate successor to Edward the Confessor.

*from "Debrett's Peerage & Baronetage, 1995"

F.4 - 2

In Scotland the first King to use numbering was Robert II who, in a preamble of a statute dated 1371-2, is described as "Secundus". The original does not exist but there is a contemporary text in *The Black Book*. He was also so described on 4 April 1373 in the Declaration of the Succession to the Scottish Throne, of which the original document survives. James IV introduced his numbering on coins, and James VI on royal seals.

There was some difficulty with numbering when the thrones of England and Scotland were united in 1603. As this union did not unite the parliaments, which event did not take place until 1707, the Stuart kings continued the use of individual numbers for each country, such as James VI and VII in Scotland and James I and II in England. William III appeared as William II on the Scottish Royal seals. When Edward VII came to the throne a petition was sent from Scotland, which resulted in their letter boxes bearing ER instead of EVIIR. When the present Queen succeeded there was more intense feeling in Scotland on the matter, and it was announced that any subsequent sovereign whose number was different in England and Scotland would take the higher number, eg if we had another King James he would be known as James VIII instead of James III. The letter boxes in Scotland in the present reign now only bear a representation of the Scottish crown without any initials or numbers.

F.4.3

The Royal surname

The Queen declared in Council on 9 April 1952 that she and her children shall be styled and known as the House and Family of Windsor, as was her father King George VI. In this she followed the example, among others, of the Imperial Houses of Habsburg and Romanov and the Royal House of Orange. All these reigning Houses had passed through the female line to scions of the Houses of Lorraine, Holstein-Gottorp and Mecklenburg-Schwerin respectively. But, although the descendants belonged paternally to these Houses, in each case they continued the original House names of their predecessors in the female line. Despite the Queen's surname having been Mountbatten since her marriage in 1947 as Princess Elizabeth, this was then abandoned two months after her accession on the advice of Sir Winston Churchill.

On 8 February 1960 there was a declaration in Council that descendants of the Queen shall bear the surname of Mountbatten-Windsor, other than those bearing royal attributes and female descendants who marry into other families. This followed a sermon by the Bishop of Carlisle (the Rt Rev Thomas Bloomer) delivered shortly before Prince Andrew's birth. The Bishop said that he did not like to think that any child born in wedlock should be deprived of his father's family name, a right and privilege that every other legitimate child possessed.

At the same time as the Queen's Declaration, the Press Secretary at Buckingham Palace issued a statement saying that "The Queen has always wanted, without changing the name of the Royal House established by her grandfather, to associate the name of her husband with her own and his descendants. The Queen has had this in mind for a long time and it is close to the heart".

The late Mr. E.F. Iwi, an eminent constitutional lawyer, expressed the view that there was a distinction between the House and Family of Windsor collectively and members of the Royal Family as individuals. Consequently when, in 1973, Princess Anne married Captain Mark Phillips, her surname on her marriage certificate was shown as Mountbatten-Windsor. Thus the intention was to give a wider interpretation than that precisely stated in the 1960 Declaration.

A revised Declaration in Council to show that the family name is Mountbatten-Windsor would clarify the matter, because at present it is virtually impossible to be sure whether the Royal name is Windsor or Mountbatten-Windsor. That is, if the double name of Mountbatten-Windsor be adopted for both eventualities, (a) the Queen's descendants in the future who do not have royal styles and who are specially mentioned in the 1960 Declaration, and (b) a "hidden" surname for present members of the Royal Family, now occasionally used in certain official documents, there would no longer be such uncertainty as occurs at the present time. The first clause, which is already covered, will not come into effect until the birth of a great-grandchild to the Queen. The second clause, which is not covered, already occurs. A new Declaration would place the matter beyond all doubt.

The House and Family name of Windsor was adopted by King George V in 1917 on the suggestion of his Private Secretary, Lord Stamfordham, after many proposals had been rejected. This was a happy choice, for this Royal Castle has been a seat of the Royal Family since William the Conqueror. The Norman and early Plantagenet kings usually were known by nicknames or names bearing allusions to their parentage, such as William Rufus, Henry Beauclerc and Henry FitzEmpress. From the early 14th century it became customary to style members of the Royal Family by their birthplaces, such as Edward II, who was known as Edward of Caernarvon, Edward III and Henry VI who were known by their birthplace at Windsor and John of Gaunt who was born in Ghent.

It was only with the father of Edward IV that the name of Plantagenet as a surname came into being. The first recorded use of this name was in 1448. The origin goes back to Geoffrey, Count of Anjou, the father of Henry II, who was nicknamed Plantagenet from his adoption of a sprig of flowering broom or "Plants genista" as his badge.

The Tudors take their name from Henry VII's great-grandfather, Maredudd (Meredith) ap Tudur (Tudor). The Welsh did not have surnames at this time, sons bearing the qualification "ap" (meaning "son of"), followed by their father's christian name. Henry VII's grandfather, Owen Tudor, son of Meredith, was also known sometimes as Owen Meredith.

Both the Bruces and Stewarts had these surnames before their succession to the Scottish throne. The Stewarts were so called from their hereditary office of High Steward of Scotland. In the time of Mary Queen of Scots, the French form of Stuart was first used, but her husband and kinsman, Henry, Lord Darnley, belonged to the Lennox branch of the Stewarts. Their son, James VI and I, also adopted the French spelling.

There has been controversy as to the surname of members of the houses of Hanover and Saxe-Coburg and Gotha, but since both families were of ruling status before surnames came into being, they did not possess one. Nevertheless dynastic names, as distinct from surnames, came to be used. The House of Hanover is sometimes held to have the dynastic name of Guelph and sometimes that of Este. Their ancestors were lords of Este, a small feudal principality in Lombardy, from the 9th century. On marriage to a Bavarian heiress of the House of Guelph, they moved from Italy to Germany. The children of Queen Victoria's uncle, the Duke of Sussex, was sometimes known as Guelph when he joined the Royal Navy. A former Clarenceux King of Arms dismissed as absurd the idea that the name was Guelph, and Queen Victoria sent a memo to dispute that this name should be used for an exhibition of treasures of the House of Hanover. Perhaps it would be more correct to term them Este-Guelph.

The family of Saxe-Coburg and Gotha has been traced to Thierry (Dietrich) of Buzici, a Thuringian noble living in 950, who founded the line of the Counts of Wettin, a small town on the banks of the river Saale in Saxony. The dynastic name of this family as Wettin thus cannot be regarded as a surname.

The Duke of Edinburgh belongs paternally to the House of Schleswig-Holstein-Sonderburg-Glücksburg which, in turn, is a branch of the House of Oldenburg. When the Duke of Edinburgh became a British subject in 1947, since he possessed no surname, one had to be selected. Oldcastle from Oldenburg was suggested, but rejected. Eventually he chose the name of Mountbatten, the anglicised form of Battenberg, his mother's name. The Battenbergs were descended from the Grand Ducal Family of Hesse from a morganatic marriage of Prince Alexander of Hesse and the Rhine to Countess Julie von Hauke, who was created Princess of Battenberg. The Grand Ducal Family of Hesse descend in the male line from Regnier, Count of Hainault, who died in 915. The Percys, Earls of Northumberland, belonged to the same male stock until 1670, and the present Duke of Northumberland shares this lineage with Prince Philip in the female line.

F.4.4

Titles and peerages of The Prince of Wales

The Prince of Wales has inherited other honours in addition to his main title. He is also Earl of Chester and Duke of Cornwall in the Peerage of England, and Duke of Rothesay and Earl of Carrick in the Peerage of Scotland. His other Scottish titles are Baron of Renfrew, Lord of the Isles and Prince and Great Steward of Scotland.

Only two of these dignities have to be specially created for the heir apparent, that of Prince of Wales and Earl of Chester. Prince Charles received these in 1958 when he automatically became a Knight Companion of the Garter as a constituent part of the Order, but he was not invested and installed as Prince and Earl at Caernarvon Castle until 1968. The remainder of the titles passed to him, as heir apparent, the moment his mother succeeded as Queen. The first Duke of Cornwall (and the first instance of the creation of a duke in England) was Edward the Black Prince, son and heir of King Edward III. The dukedom was created "with remainder to his heirs being Kings of England" and Henry VI expressly stated that his first begotten son at the time of his birth was Duke of Cornwall. Thereafter, heirs apparent who are also the Sovereign's sons become Duke of Cornwall either at birth or immediately when their parent succeeds to the Crown. The only heir apparent not to become Duke of Cornwall was George III, who was not "filius regis", being a grandson of his predecessor, George II.

The first Duke of Rothesay was David, eldest son of Robert III, King of Scots, who received this peerage in 1398. Rothesay, and Albany (which was given to his uncle), were the first dukes to be created in Scotland. Although the charter conferring the dukedom of Rothesay is not extant, Winton, a contemporary, stated that the Duke of Rothesay was to

"haif yat Tityl ay. --
And efter hym (as yet was done
All tym) ye Kingis eldeste sone
and his air suld be alway,
Be titil, Duke cald of Rothesay."

It was confirmed by Act of Parliament in 1469 that the heir apparent and he alone, holds the title of Duke of Rothesay. When the Prince of Wales is in Scotland he is termed Duke of Rothesay. Since the union in 1603 of the Crowns of England and Scotland, the limitation of the Dukedom of Rothesay being identical to that of Cornwall, they descend together, as do the other Scottish honours.

F.4 - 6

The Earldom of Carrick was already in existence in about 1186 when Duncan, descendant of the Lords of Galloway, obtained from King William the Lion the district of Carrick. His granddaughter, who was Countess of Carrick in her own right, married Robert Bruce, and their son Robert Bruce, in 1306, became King of Scots as Robert I. Some of the later Earls of Carrick were heirs apparent, and by Act of Parliament in 1469, it was declared that the Earldom should be annexed forever to the first born prince of the King of Scots. Under the same Act of Parliament, the Barony of Renfrew was also settled upon him. The heir apparent is also Lord of the Isles. The Macdonalds were Lords of the Isles (the Irish annalists styled them kings), but after forfeitures, James IV, King of Scots annexed the Lordship of the Isles to the Crown, and from that time onwards the heirs to the Scottish throne and their successors have always held the title.

Walter Fitz Alan, forebear of the Stewarts, was High Steward of Scotland in the reign of David I and Malcolm IV. In 1371 Robert, 7th High Steward of Scotland, succeeded his uncle, David II, as Robert II, the first Stewart king. The hereditary office of High Steward was confirmed by Act of Parliament in 1469 on the first born prince of the King of Scots forever.

F.4.5

Peerages of other members of the Royal Family

Once a peerage is conferred upon a member of the Royal Family and becomes extinct, it is then reserved for a later prince and is not available to a subject. The Dukedom of Edinburgh, conferred in 1947 upon Prince Philip, was first bestowed (spelt "Edinburgh" in the patent) on Frederick Lewis, grandson of George I, but a year later, after his father succeeded as George II, he was created Prince of Wales. This peerage passed to his son, the future King George III, on his death before being merged into the Crown. George III conferred the title, together with the Dukedom of Gloucester, upon his brother Prince William Henry, but as Gloucester was the senior title, this was normally used. Both became extinct in 1834 on the death of his son, nicknamed "Silly Billy". Queen Victoria made her son, Prince Alfred, Duke of Edinburgh, who like Prince Philip, was a "Sailor Prince". His Dukedom became extinct in 1900, and was not conferred again until it was given to the present Duke.

The Dukedom of York has usually been conferred upon the second son of our sovereigns since Edward IV in 1474 bestowed the title on his younger son, Richard. This was the younger of the Princes in the Tower, whose fate has exercised the credulity of historians ever since. Before this, in 1385, Edmond of Langley, a son of Edward III, became Duke of York and was ancestor of the House of York, who warred with Lancaster in the Wars of the Roses. The victor, Edward, Duke of York, who had only succeeded for two months, seized the Crown at the age of eighteen, becoming Edward IV.

Three second sons who became Duke of York, and ultimately kings, were Henry VIII (son of Henry VII), Charles I (son of James I), and James II (son of Charles I). With George I a slight difference in this pattern occurred when he gave it in 1716 to his youngest brother Ernest Augustus, in conjunction with the Dukedom of Albany; and the next two Hanoverian dukes likewise received both creations. The first was Prince Edward Augustus, brother of George III, who received the title in 1760, but he died unmarried two years later. George III later returned to the traditional style by giving it to his second son, Prince Frederick, later Commander-in-Chief. He was involved in the scandal over the selling of commissions, a racket organised by his mistress, Mary Anne Clarke, but in 1811, two years after his resignation, he was restored to the office which he held for the rest of his life. He is best known from the nursery rhyme "The Grand Old Duke of York". Bonnie Prince Charlie's younger brother, Henry, held the Jacobite Dukedom of York, and was generally known as Cardinal York.

Queen Victoria did not approve of her Hanoverian uncles' reputation, and departed from tradition by creating her second son Prince Alfred, Duke of Edinburgh. As she reached such a great age, she had two grandsons in the direct line who were adults. She reluctantly agreed to bestow the title of Duke of York on the younger of these, the future King George V, mainly under pressure from his father the Prince of Wales. In 1920, Prince Albert, second son of George V, became Duke of York, and the tradition was perpetuated when The Queen bestowed the title upon her second son, Prince Andrew, in 1986.

Like York, Gloucester has always been a Royal Dukedom. In 1385 the same day that the Dukedom of York was first created, Thomas of Woodstock, the youngest son of Edward III, was created Duke of Gloucester by his nephew Richard II. Subsequent Dukes were the Lancastrian Humphrey, "the Good Duke", brother of Henry V, and the Yorkist Richard, later Richard III. Charles I's youngest son, Henry, had the title, but he died unmarried of smallpox very shortly after the Restoration. The last Stuart creation was the pathetic little son of Anne, her only child to survive infancy. Although declared Duke of Gloucester, he was never formally so created, and died at the age of eleven before his mother became Queen.

After George III's brother, Prince William, became Duke of Gloucester and Albany, which died out with his son, the title was not re-created until 1928, when George V bestowed it upon his third son, Prince Henry. The Dukedom is now possessed by his son, Prince Richard.

Unlike these other Dukedoms, Kent was originally non-Royal, borne by the Greys, until this became extinct in 1797. Two years later, George III then gave it to his fourth son, Prince Edward, father of Queen Victoria, but it became extinct in 1820 on his death. The Dukedom was next conferred by George V in 1934 upon Prince George, his fourth son. His son, the present Duke, succeeded in 1942 following his father's death on active service.

Other titles reserved for members of the Royal Family include the Dukedom of Clarence, derived from the Honour of Clare in Suffolk. The first was Lionel of Antwerp, third son of Edward III, from whom the Yorkists eventually derived their claim to the throne. Some of the Dukes of Clarence have been unfortunate. George, brother of Edward IV and Richard III, was murdered after being found guilty of high treason. The method used, according to popular tradition, was drowning after being pushed headfirst into a butt of malmsey. The last Duke of Clarence, elder son of the future Edward VII, died unmarried of pneumonia at the age of twenty-eight, a few weeks after his engagement to Princess May of Teck, who later married his brother.

Both the Dukedoms of Cumberland and Albany were attainted as a result of their holders, being Germans, taking up arms against Britain in the First World War. Ernest, Duke of Cumberland, the most unpopular of Queen Victoria's uncles, succeeded William IV as King of Hanover, where Salic law operated. The Dukedom of Albany, bestowed on Queen Victoria's youngest son, passed to his son, who, as a boy, succeeded as Duke of Saxe-Coburg and Gotha. Since both peerages were merely suspended, they cannot be re-conferred, because theoretically they could be restored by an Act of Parliament. The most notorious Duke of Cumberland was William Augustus, second son of George II, who was in command of the Royal troops at the battle of Culloden, and earned the name of "Butcher Cumberland" as a result of his severe repression in the Highlands.

The Dukedom of Kendal was twice conferred upon sons of James II who died in infancy, and the Dukedoms of Sussex and Connaught were each conferred once: Sussex on Queen Victoria's uncle, and Connaught upon her third son. The former died out on the Duke's death, and Connaught on the death of the second Duke in 1943 in Canada. The Dukedom of Cambridge was occasionally brought into use at previous times, the last creation in 1801 was to a son of George III. This died out with his son, formerly the Commander-in-Chief, at his death in 1904, but was re-conferred as a Marquessate, to his maternal nephew the Duke of Teck upon relinquishing his German title, and became extinct on the death of the 2nd Marquess in 1981.

Another Royal Dukedom was that of Lancaster. The second Duke, but the best known, was John of Gaunt, made more famous by Shakespeare as "Time-honoured Lancaster" than as the hated uncle of the King against whom the fury of the Peasants' Revolt was directed. When Henry Duke of Lancaster was dethroned, and later murdered, Richard II, thereby becoming the first Lancastrian king, the Dukedom merged in the Crown and has never been re-created, although the sovereign always succeeds to the Duchy of Lancaster. The popular toast in the North remains "The Queen, Duke of Lancaster".

It has long been the custom for royal scions to receive more than one peerage. The "Butcher" Duke of Cumberland, for example, was also Marquess of Berkhamsted, Earl of Kensington, Viscount Trematon and Baron of the Isle of Alderney.

It is possible that Prince Edward one day will receive the Dukedom of Sussex. Of the others, Connaught is a province of the Republic of Ireland and therefore unlikely to be revived. Kendal has somewhat unfortunate connotations, as the last time the Dukedom was conferred it was upon an unpopular mistress of George I, vulgarly called "the Maypole" from her extremely emaciated figure; and Clarence has an unfortunate history.

Some peerages were selected conjointly from England, Scotland and Ireland, such as the lesser peerages of the Duke of Kent, which are the Earldom of St Andrews and Barony of Downpatrick. The second senior peerage is thus available for use as a courtesy title for the eldest son and heir when the holder ceases to use royal styles and titles. Otherwise heirs to royal peerages have not used courtesy peerages; thus the late Prince William of Gloucester was never known as Earl of Ulster, but this was not always so. Edward IV was known as Earl of March when his father was Duke of York.

F.4.6

The titles and styles of members of The Royal Family

King George V, by Letters Patent issued on 30 October 1917, declared that henceforward only the children, the children of sons of the Sovereign, and the eldest living son of the eldest son of the Prince of Wales, would be entitled to the style of Royal Highness and the titles of Prince and Princess. This meant that more distant descendants of the Royal Family had to give up royal styles, thus HH Prince Alastair of Connaught (later the 2nd Duke of Connaught), who was a great-grandson of Queen Victoria, then became known as the Earl of Macduff, a courtesy title belonging to his mother, who was Duchess of Fife in her own right.

On the day before the Duke of Edinburgh's marriage to the present Queen, he was created Royal Highness, but the children of the Dukes of Gloucester and Kent, as great-grandchildren of a sovereign, do not have royal attributes. The sons and heirs of the Dukes of Gloucester and Kent therefore bear respectively the courtesy titles of Earl of Ulster and Earl of St Andrews, in the same way as the heirs of other dukes. The younger son and the daughter of the Duke of Kent are known as Lord Nicholas and Lady Helen Windsor, and the son and daughter of Prince Michael of Kent are known as Lord Frederick and Lady Gabriella Windsor, following the styles for younger sons and daughters of dukes as prescribed by further Letters Patent of 11 December 1917.

F.4 - 10

There has only been one example of children of a Princess and her non-royal British husband receiving royal titles. When King Edward VII declared his eldest daughter to be Princess Royal, he instructed his Garter King of Arms to declare her two daughters Princesses. Garter is alleged to have told the King that this was impossible as there was no precedent. The King merely told him, "Do it." Accordingly, the

two daughters, subsequently Princess Arthur of Connaught and the Countess of Southesk, were gazetted Princesses with the style of Highness and precedence immediately after all members of the Royal Family bearing the style of Royal Highness. The elder sister attained the style of Royal Highness on her marriage, but the younger ceased to use the style and title on her marriage without any specific declaration being made. It is believed this was to comply with the wishes of King George V, who had not approved of his father's action.

The case has never previously arisen when a grandson of a Sovereign has been untitled. Peter Phillips, the Queen's first grandchild, has no title, since neither of his parents has received a peerage, and there is no title to be passed on to their children. If a warrant of precedence could be given raising him to the rank of a son of a duke or marquess, Peter Phillips would at least be in the same position as the son of Prince and Princess Michael of Kent, by having the courtesy style of "Lord" before his name. There have been examples of such precedence being granted by previous sovereigns, such as Lady Katherine Brandram, previously Princess of Greece and Denmark, and Lady Valda Machell, formerly Countess Victoria Gleichen, daughter of Prince Victor of Hohenlohe-Langenburg and granddaughter of Admiral of the Fleet the Honourable Sir George Francis Seymour. Brothers and sisters of peers, whose fathers never succeeded, may be given precedence as if their fathers had been peers.

F.4.7

The Act of Settlement

The Act of Settlement, under which the Queen reigns, was passed in 1701 in the reign of William III. The Act was designed to ensure a Protestant succession to the throne. As the King was childless, the throne was to pass on his death to Queen Anne, whose only child to survive infancy had recently died. Then, in default of any issue, to the next Protestant descendant of the Royal House, the Electress Sophia of Hanover, niece of Charles I, and her descendants, being Protestants. This cut out the Roman Catholic descendants of James II. As Sophia predeceased Queen Anne, the Crown passed in 1714 to Sophia's son George I, first of the House of Hanover to ascend to the Throne.

The Act provides for a perpetual Protestant succession by debarring any person in the line to the throne from reigning if he or she be a Roman Catholic or has married one.

This question arose on the marriage of Prince Michael of Kent when he lost his right of succession through his marriage to a Roman Catholic, but according to the announcement from Buckingham Palace, their children and descendants remain in succession, provided that they are in communion with the Church of England.

F.4.8

The Royal Marriages Act

The *Royal Marriages Act* was passed in 1772 following the marriages of the Dukes of Cumberland and Gloucester, which were considered unsuitable by their brother King George III. The act provides that any descendant of George II, both male and female, is required to obtain the consent of the Sovereign, signified under the Great Seal and declared in Council, before any marriage is contracted. This does not apply to princesses, and their descendants, who marry into foreign families.

The act also contains a provision that princes and princesses, over the age of 25, are permitted to give notice to the Privy Council twelve calendar months before contracting such a marriage without the consent of the Sovereign. So far, this clause has never been utilised.

There have been marriages contracted by members of the Royal Family, for which the Sovereign's permission was not obtained, such as those of the Prince of Wales (later George IV) to Mrs Fitzherbert, and the marriages of his brother the Duke of Sussex and his nephew the Duke of Cambridge. These marriages, though presumably canonically valid, are legally null and void. There had been more than one attempt to repeal the *Royal Marriages Act*, and in 1967 a young constitutional lawyer, the late Mr Charles Farran, detected a flaw in it. He held that those descendants of princesses who married into foreign families who were therefore covered by the exemption clause, sometimes came to Britain to marry descendants of George II, who needed to seek permission to marry under the act. It therefore followed that descendants of these marriages are also exempted, which was not foreseen when the act was drawn up in 1772. Thus Princess Anne and Princess Alexandra, for example, are descended from Queen Alexandra who was herself descended from George II in the female line. Nearly all the members of the Royal Family now fall into the category of being exempted.

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.5

Royal visits

F.5.1

Procedure for invitations

The preliminary phase begins several years ahead of time and ends with the joint official announcement of the visit by Rideau Hall and the office of the royal visitor.

This phase involves sometimes structured but often impromptu exchanges between senior Canadian officials and authorities at Buckingham Palace. It represents a kind of strategic planning stage based either on talks and proposals regarding major events planned in Canada, or on formal invitations from the provinces or other sources. All of this is managed by the Government Hospitality Committee, headed by the Manager of Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion and made up of representatives from Rideau Hall, the Privy Council Office, the Prime Minister's Office, Foreign Affairs, the RCMP and National Defence. The Committee reviews the requests it receives, studies the geographic distribution of the visits proposed and re-examines the availability of members of the Royal Family. The Committee makes recommendations on the programme of official and private visits for the upcoming year, along with a projection of future visits.

The Committee's report is presented to the Minister of Canadian Heritage, which he approves or rejects, then forwards his recommendations to the Prime Minister. Advised by the Privy Council Office, the Prime Minister, in turn, informs the Minister of Canadian Heritage of his decision. The Minister of Canadian Heritage next advises the Governor General of the decision, whereupon the Governor General issues an official invitation to the member of the Royal Family. This invitation describes the main purpose of the visit, and indicates the duration of the visit, the provinces to be visited and the proposed dates. (early fall) [note: time in brackets are according to past experience].

The Palace's affirmative reply serves to confirm its acceptance and the dates that are suitable to all the parties concerned. There may, during this time, be exchanges between the Palace, Rideau Hall, and the Department of Canadian Heritage to work out an agreement on all of the dates proposed.

F.5 - 2

Both Rideau Hall and Buckingham Palace then issue a press release announcing the visit, the scheduled dates, the members of the Royal Family taking part and the provinces to be visited. This ends the preliminary phase.

F.5.2

Coordination

The planning phase comes under the Department of Canadian Heritage, which is responsible for putting in place the mechanisms required for organizing and coordinating the Royal Visit. An interdepartmental co-ordination mechanism enables the Coordinator to consult with the parties concerned and keep them up-to-date on preparations for the visit.

All of the planning that goes into a royal visit can be divided into five components: protocol and hospitality, security, the media, logistics (which includes transportation, communications, accommodation, administration and budget), and the programme that manages all of these.

The Coordinator is appointed as early as possible, although the appointment process itself begins earlier during the preliminary phase:

- In the case of a visit by The Queen, the Coordinator is also designated as Canadian Secretary to The Queen for the duration of the visit, and is appointed by the Prime Minister, with the approval of The Queen. The formal appointment is made by the Governor General in Council on recommendation of the Minister of Canadian Heritage. It is up to the Department of Canadian Heritage to decide on the contractual agreement and spell out the Coordinator's terms of reference. The Canadian Secretary's Office should be located in close proximity to the Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion Office
- For visits by other members of the Royal Family, it is normally the Manager of Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion who acts as coordinator.

The Department of Canadian Heritage sets up an interdepartmental committee responsible for providing the services of the federal departments and agencies.

The team is made up in a way that will enable the Coordinator to meet the requirements of the *Official Languages Act*.

The Coordinator consults with the regional ministers and the Minister of Canadian Heritage, as required.

The Coordinator pays a courtesy call on the provincial premiers and lieutenant governors taking part in the visit, to discuss the objectives and preferences of the federal government and those of the provinces.

The Coordinator then makes a preliminary visit to Buckingham Palace. There, he explains the government's objectives, examines the constraints involved and enquiries about any particular personal preferences of the prospective royal visitors.

For a major visit in July, the timetable can be established as follows:

The Coordinator's staff begins meeting as scheduled.

The Coordinator works out the first draft of the outline programme. (January)

The Coordinator visits the provinces and all of the sites proposed for the royal visit, and considers the advisability of proposals made by the provinces. He sees to it that the "federal" components of the programme are included and provides for alternatives if need be. (January/February).

If he has not visited the Palace at an earlier stage, the Coordinator goes to Buckingham Palace to explain this draft programme. (February/March)

A reconnaissance visit is made so that Palace coordinators can become familiar with the proposed programme and make any suggestions to the Coordinator. (April)

The Coordinator meets with the Minister of Canadian Heritage at the conclusion of the reconnaissance to obtain the Minister's views on the programme and his approval. (April)

In the case of a visit of The Queen, a regular channel of communications is established between the Prime Minister's Office and the Canadian Secretary to The Queen. (May)

The final programme agreed on by all of the parties is submitted to the Minister of Canadian Heritage and the Prime Minister for approval. (May/June)

A press release is issued by the Minister of Canadian Heritage and Buckingham Palace announcing the programme for the royal visit; the provinces issue a more detailed press release. (six weeks before visit)

Contingency plans (in the event of poor weather, flight delays, mechanical breakdown and so on) are prepared.

F.5 - 4

The speeches requested of the royal visitor are negotiated. The Coordinator receives suggestions from the provinces or the Prime Minister's Office and forwards them to the Palace. The Palace makes any necessary changes, which are then confirmed by the Privy Council Office. (Negotiations should begin at a fairly early date; the process is often not completed until just a few days before the speech is scheduled to be given.)

The programmes for the royal visit include the staff work programme ("daily sheets") and the media programme. (printing fifteen to ten days before visit)

In the case of a visit by The Queen, the Coordinator prepares explanations and forwards the documentation required to the ministers-in-attendance named by the Prime Minister's Office. (ten days before visit)

Parallel security, media and logistics programmes are developed with the provinces. (during entire planning phase)

F.5.3

Execution phase

A full briefing of journalists accompanying the royal party is given: purpose of visit explained, participants presented and so on. (eve of visit)

The Coordinator and his staff meet and accompany the royal visitor during the visit, according to plans agreed upon.

In the case of a visit by The Queen, the royal party is accompanied by a minister representing the Government of Canada (referred to as "Minister-in-Attendance"). This accompanying minister, who is considered as a member of The Queen's Household, is kept abreast of any critical situation, makes decisions on behalf of the Canadian government when required, advises the royal visitor and, if necessary, issues a press release.

The Coordinator ensures good relations between the provinces and the Government of Canada and sees to it that the "Canadianized" character of the Crown is preserved by the role and importance given to the various events planned and by taking the initiative in critical or tense situations.

F.5.4

Private and official visits

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
Royal visits to Canada since 1952	
Her Majesty The Queen and His Royal Highness The Duke of Edinburgh	F.5 - 6
His Royal Highness The Duke of Edinburgh	F.5 - 10
Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother	F.5 - 17
His Royal Highness The Prince of Wales	F.5 - 19
His Royal Highness The Duke of York	F.5 - 22
His Royal Highness The Prince Edward	F.5 - 24
Her Royal Highness The Princess Royal (The Princess Anne)	F.5 - 26
Her Royal Highness The Princess Margaret, Countess of Snowdon	F.5 - 28
Their Royal Highnesses The Duke and Duchess of Kent	F.5 - 30
Their Royal Highnesses Prince and Princess Michael of Kent	F.5 - 31
Her Royal Highness Princess Alexandra, The Honourable Lady Ogilvy	F.5 - 32
Her Royal Highness The Dowager Duchess of Kent	F.5 - 34
Her Royal Highness Princess Alice (Dowager Duchess of Gloucester)	F.5 - 35
Her Royal Highness Princess Patricia (Lady Patricia Ramsay)	F.5 - 36
Her Royal Highness The Princess Royal (The Princess Mary)	F.5 - 37
His Royal Highness The Duke of Gloucester	F.5 - 38
Royal visits to Canada from 1786 to 1951	F.5 - 39

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

*Document communiqué en vertu de
la Loi sur l'accès à l'information.
Document released pursuant to
the Access to Information Act.*

NAME: HM THE QUEEN AND
HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1953 Nov. 24 - (3:45 a.m.)				x	Gander, Nfld. (approx. 1½ h. refueling. Stop over: leaving for Commonwealth tour).
1957 Oct. 12 - (Arr. 4:30 p.m.) Oct. 16 - (Dep. 11:30 a.m.)	4	x			Ottawa and Hull: HM opened 1st Session - 23rd Parliament (Oct. 16 - 21 Washington - New York).
1959 June 18 - (Arr. 3:30 p.m.) Aug. 1 - (Dep. 10:30 p.m.)	45	x			Tour of Canada (all provinces and both territories included) Opening of St-Lawrence Seaway.
1963 Jan. 30 - (12:00 - 12:45) Mar. 27 - (18:35 - 19:20)				x x	Refueling Edmonton-Vancouver- Overnight Stop Vancouver refueling on flight from N.Z. & Australia.
1964 Oct. 5 - (Arr. 5:30 p.m.) Oct. 13 - (Dep. 10:00 a.m.)	8	x			Charlottetown, Québec, Ottawa - To attend commemoration of meetings at Charlottetown and Québec in 1864.
1966 Feb. 1				x	Refueling (Newfoundland)
1967 June 29 - (Arr. 5:30 p.m.) July 5 - (Dep. 11:00 p.m.)	6	x			Ottawa, Montréal - In Ottawa, to attend ceremonies relating to Centennial Anniversary - Visit Expo '67 in Montréal.
1970 Mar. 2-3				x	Ottawa refueling; Vancouver (overnight stop).
1970 May 4				x	Gander (refueling).
1970 (Accompanied by Prince of Wales and Princess Anne) July 5 - (Arr. 10:45 p.m.) July 15 - (Dep. 11:30 p.m.)	10	x			Churchill, Thompson, Gillan, Flin Flon, Norway House, Swan River, The Pas, Dauphin, Clear Lake, Brandon, Baily Farm, Portage la Prairie, Oakville, Winnipeg, Carman, Beauséjour, Lower Fort Garry, Manitoba; 100th Anniversary of Manitoba's entry into Confederation; N.W.T. - To participate in the Centennial of the N.W.T.

ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952

NAME: HM THE QUEEN AND
HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1971 (Accompanied by Princess Anne) May 3 - (Arr. 11:05 a.m.) May 12 - (Dep. 9:00 a.m.)	9	x			Victoria, Vancouver, Tofino, Kelowna, Vernon, Penticton, William Lake, Comox. To mark Centenary Anniversary of B.C. into Confederation.
1973 June 25 - (Arr. 1:20 p.m.) July 5 - (Dep. 10:50 p.m.)	11	x			Toronto, Cobourg, Kingston, Cambridge, Kitchener, Waterloo, London, St. Catharines, Niagara-on-the-Lake, Scarborough, Brampton, Malton, Ontario; Charlottetown, Summerside, Mount Carmel, P.E.I.; Regina, Sask.; Calgary, Alberta - to participate in events marking the R.C.M.P. centennial, the centennial of P.E.I. in Confederation, the tercentenary of Kingston, extended tour of Ontario.
1973 July 31 - (Arr. 1:10 p.m.) Aug. 4 - (Dep. 12:10 p.m.)	4	x			Ottawa - Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting. <u>Remarks:</u> Prince Philip had a program of his own while Her Majesty was receiving heads of government in audience at Rideau Hall.
1974 Jan. 27				x	Ottawa and Vancouver refueling - Stop in Ottawa to take Princess Anne and Captain Phillips.
1976 (For XXI Olympic Games joined by Prince of Wales, Prince Andrew, Prince Edward) July 13 - (Arr. 9:15 a.m.) July 25 - (Dep. 12:00 midnight)	13	x			Nova Scotia - New Brunswick - Montréal (XXI Olympiad).
1977 Oct. 14 - (Arr. 3:05 p.m.) Oct. 19 - (Dep. 11:55 a.m.)	5	x			Ottawa - On the occasion of Silver Jubilee Year.
1978 (With Prince Edward & Prince Andrew) July 26 - (Arr. 2:35 p.m.) Aug. 6 - (Dep. 6:00 p.m.)	12	x			St. John's, Deer Lake, Strawberry Hill, Corner Brook, Stephenville Airport, Newfoundland; Regina, Yorkton, Fort Qu'Appelle, Balcarres, Melville, Moose Jaw, Saskatoon, Lloydminster, Sask.; Edmonton (XI Commonwealth Games), Grande Prairie, Peace River, St. Paul, Vegreville, Fort Saskatchewan, Mundare, Chipman, Lamont, Bruderheim, Fort Edmonton, Alberta.

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

*Document communiqué en vertu de
la Loi sur l'accès à l'information.
Document released pursuant to
the Access to Information Act.*

NAME: HM THE QUEEN AND
HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1982 April 15 - (Arr. 3:10 p.m.) April 19 - (Dep. 11:15 a.m.)	4	x			Ottawa - On the occasion of the Proclamation of the <u>Constitution Act, 1982</u> .
1983 March 8 - (Arr. 9:30 a.m.) March 11 - (Dep. 7:00 a.m.)	4	x			Victoria, Vancouver, Nanaimo, Vernon, Kamloops, New Westminster. At the end of Her American West Coast Tour.
1984 Sept. 24 - (Arr. 1:00 p.m.) Oct. 7 - (Dep. 1:00 p.m.)	13	x			Dieppe, Shediac, Moncton, Fredericton, Sackville, Riverview. To participate in the Bicentennial of New Brunswick. Ottawa, Morrisburg, Cornwall, Prescott, Kingston, Amherstview, Windsor, Brantford, Sudbury. To participate in the Bicentennial of Ontario. Winnipeg, Dauphin, Brandon, Dugald. The Queen had not been to Manitoba since 1970. <u>Remarks:</u> The Queen alone visited Manitoba. Prince Philip left Canada after Sudbury programme.
1985 Oct. 9 - (Queen alone)				x	Gander, Nfld. (en route to Caribbean).
1986 May 26 - (Queen alone)				x	Gander, Nfld. (en route to London from Lexington).
1987 Oct. 9 - (Arr. 3:00 p.m.) Oct. 24 - (Dep. 11:15 a.m.)	16	x			North Saanich, Qualicum Beach (private retreat), Vancouver, Victoria, Esquimalt: to participate in opening sessions of government - Heads of Government Meeting; Regina, Fort Qu'Appelle (private retreat), Saskatoon, Yorkton, Canora, Veregin, Kamsack, Kindersley, in Saskatchewan. First visit to Saskatchewan since 1978; Québec, Sillery, Cap Tourmente, Rivière-du-Loup, La Pocatière: first official visit to Quebec since 1964.
1990 (Queen alone) June 27 - (Arr. 2:00 p.m.) July 1 - (Dep. 7:15 p.m.)	5	x			Calgary, Reed Deer, Alberta. Ottawa, Ontario (Queen alone).
1991 (Queen alone) May 26				x	Gander, Nfld. (en route to London from Lexington, U.S.A.)

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

**NAME: HM THE QUEEN AND
HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH**

**OFF.: Official
PR.: Private**

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOS
1992 (Queen alone) June 30 July 2	3	x			Ottawa (for the 125 th anniversary of Confederation and the 40 th anniversary of the Accession); Hull (for a reception hosted by the Prime Minister at the Canadian Museum of Civilization).
1994 Aug. 13 - (Arr. 2:20 p.m.) Aug. 22 - (Dep. 9:40 p.m.)	10	x			Halifax, Sydney, Fortress of Louisbourg, Dartmouth; Victoria. (for the Commonwealth Games). Private Retreat at Twin Island, Prince George for the Queen, Prince Rupert, Khutzeymateen Valley for the Duke of Edinburgh; Yellowknife, Rankin Inlet, Iqaluit.
1997 June 23- (Arr. 2:00 p.m.) July 2 - (Dep. 11:00 a.m.)	10	x			St. John's, Gander, Bonavista, Mount Pearl (for the 500 th Anniversary of the arrival of Jean Cabot), Goose Bay, North West River for The Queen. Happy Valley-Goose Bay for the Duke of Edinburgh; London, Ontario (private retreat); Sainte-Agathe, Manitoba for the Duke of Edinburgh to see damage from floods; Stratford, Brantford for The Queen; Toronto, Ottawa (for the celebrations of the 130 th Anniversary of Confederation)

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1953 (Accompanying Her Majesty) Nov. 24 - (3:45 a.m.)				x	Gander, Nfld. (Approx. 1½ hr. refuelling. Stop over; leaving for Commonwealth Tour).
1954 July 29 - (Arr. 9:30 a.m.) Aug. 17	20	x			Ottawa - Vancouver (British Empire and Commonwealth Games) developments in Northern Territories - Quebec.
1957 (Accompanying Her Majesty) Oct. 12 - (Arr. 4:30 p.m.) Oct. 16 - (Dep. 11:30 a.m.)	4	x			Ottawa and Hull. Her Majesty opened First Session of the 23rd Parliament of Canada (Oct. 16-21 Washington; New York).
1958 End of October			x		Ottawa to preside at two meetings during world conference of the English Speaking Union of the Commonwealth.
1959 (Accompanying Her Majesty) June 18 - (Arr. 3:30 p.m.) Aug. 1 - (Dep. 10:30 p.m.)	45	x			Tour of Canada (All provinces included).
1960 June			x		Ottawa - Toronto in connection with 2nd Commonwealth Study Conference to be held in Canada in 1962.
1962 May 12 June 3	23	x			Ottawa, Montréal, London, Toronto, Vancouver. Second Commonwealth Study Conference.
1963 (Accompanying Her Majesty) Jan. 31 - (12:00 - 12:45) Mar. 27 - (18:35 - 19:20)				x	An outward and return flights from New Zealand and Australia; H.M.'s plane made refueling stops in Vancouver.
1964 (Accompanying Her Majesty) Oct. 5 - (Arr. 5:30 p.m.) Oct. 13 - (Dep. 10:00 a.m.)	8	x			Charlottetown, Québec, Ottawa. To attend commemoration of the Confederation meetings at Charlottetown and Québec.
1966 March 21 March 23	3	x			Toronto, Ottawa, Montréal; to present Medals to the recipients of The Duke of Edinburgh's Award.
1967 (Accompanying Her Majesty) June 29 - (Arr. 5:30 p.m.) July 5 - (Dep. 11:00 p.m.)	6	x			Ottawa, Montréal; in Ottawa, to attend ceremonies related to the Centennial Anniversary - Visit Expo '67.
1967 July 22 July 23	2	x			Winnipeg; to open 1967 Pan American Games.

ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA SINCE 1952

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1967 Nov. 7 Nov. 11	5	x			Toronto: to open 1967 Show of the Royal Agricultural Fair and attend conference in his capacity as President of The Royal Agricultural Society of the Commonwealth.
1968 Oct. 12 Oct. 13				x	Goose Bay, Ottawa.
1969 Oct. 16 Oct. 31	16	x			Ottawa, Nfld., N.B., Québec, Alta, B.C., to study operations of Duke of Edinburgh Awards Scheme.
1970 Feb. 12				x	Ottawa.
1970 (Accompanying Her Majesty) March 2 March 3				x	Ottawa, Vancouver.
1970 (Accompanying Her Majesty) May 10				x	Vancouver.
1970 (Accompanying Her Majesty) July 5 - (Arr. 10:45 p.m.) July 15 - (Dep. 11:30 p.m.)	10	x			Manitoba, N.W.T.; to participate in 100th Anniversary of Manitoba's entry into the Confederation.
1971 (Accompanying Her Majesty) May 3 - (Arr. 11:05 a.m.) May 12 - (Dep. 9:00 a.m.)	9	x			Victoria, Vancouver, Tofino, Kelowna, Vernon, Penticton, William Lake, Comox; to mark the Centenary Anniversary of British Columbia into the Confederation of Canada.
1973 (Accompanying Her Majesty) June 25 - (Arr. 1:20 p.m.) July 5 - (Dep. 10:50 p.m.)	11	x			Ontario, P.E.I., Regina, Calgary.
1973 (Accompanying Her Majesty) July 31 - (Arr. 1:10 p.m.) Aug. 4 - (Dep. 12:10 p.m.)	4	x			Ottawa; Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting. The Duke of Edinburgh had a program of his own while Her Majesty was receiving heads of government in audience at Government House.
1974 (Accompanying Her Majesty) Feb. 12				x	Goose Bay, Trenton.
1974 Oct. 14 - (Arr. 4:30 p.m.) Oct. 16 - (Dep. 7:00 p.m.)	3		x		Gander, Botwood, Nfld; Fredericton, N.B.; Montréal.

F.5 - 12

ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1975 March 22 March 23				x	On return flight from Latin America to London, overnight stop in Fredericton, N.B. in order to visit the Royal Canadian Regiment and dine with them that evening. The next day, a brief refuelling stop at Goose Bay before he flies to Sondrestrom.
1976 (Accompanying Her Majesty) July 13 - (Arr. 9:15 a.m.) July 25 - (Dep. 12:00 midnight)	13	x			Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Montréal (XXI Olympiad).
1976 Oct. 5 - (Arr. 6:20 p.m.) Oct. 6 - (Dep. 9:00 a.m.)				x	On his way to Mexico, stop over at Trenton, Ontario staying at Air Base for the night. Refuelling stops at Gander on both journeys - (½ hour) Oct. 5 at 16:45 p.m. and Oct. 10 at 11:40 a.m.
1977 (Accompanying Her Majesty) Oct. 14 - (Arr. 3:05 p.m.) Oct. 19 - (Dep. 11:55 a.m.)	5	x			Ottawa on the occasion of the Silver Jubilee:
1977 Nov. 23 - (Arr. 6:15 p.m.) Nov. 27 - (Dep. 9:00 a.m.)				x	To attend the Royal Agricultural Society of the Commonwealth Conference Sessions (Canadian Agribition Association) Regina, Sask.
1978 Feb. 10 Feb. 12				x	To attend a meeting to discuss the 1980 Commonwealth Study Conference and to meet group leaders in Toronto on Saturday, February 11.
1978 (Accompanying Her Majesty) July 26 - (Arr. 2:35 p.m.) Aug. 12 - (Dep. 7:45 p.m.)	18	x			Accompanied H.M. for visit to Nfld, Sask. and Alberta for the Opening of the XI Commonwealth Games in Edmonton. Visited B.C. with Prince Andrew on August 7 and 8 and they returned to attend the Commonwealth Games August 9 - 12.
1978 Sept. 12 - (Arr. 7:00 p.m.) Sept. 13 - (Dep. 9:00 a.m.)				x	On his way to Lexington, Kentucky, spent one night at Goose Bay; on return journey there was a ½ hour refuelling stop at Goose Bay, Sept. 18.
1978 Oct. 8 - (Arr. 7:15 p.m.) Oct. 9 - (Dep. 8:00 a.m.)				x x	On way to Puerto Rico, spent night of Oct. 8 and 9 at Goose Bay, staying on the Airbase. On outward journey the Andover stop to refuel at Halifax arriving at 11:30 a.m., Monday, October 9.
1978 Oct. 15 - (Arr. 2:00 p.m.) Oct. 16 - (Dep. 9:00 a.m.)	1			x	On his return from Puerto Rico HRH spent the night in Winnipeg to attend functions re <u>St. Boniface General Hospital Research Foundation Award</u> and was invited to stay at Government House. On return trip, Andover to refuel at Fort Chimo, Monday, October 16.

ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA SINCE 1952 F.5-13
Document released pursuant to
the Access to Information Act.

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1979 Oct. 24 - Montréal Oct. 25 - Calgary Oct. 2 - Toronto			x		To attend meeting of Commonwealth Study Conference. Toronto, Calgary, Montréal, and Attend celebrations marking 150th Anniversary of Upper Canada College, Toronto.
1980 May 17 - (Arr. Kingston 4:30 pm) May 19 - (Dep. Kingston 3:30 pm) - (Arr. Calgary 10:45 pm) May 22 - (Dep. Calgary 4:00 pm) May 30 - (Arr. London 9:15 pm) May 31 - (Dep. London 2:00 pm) May 31 - (Arr. Hamilton 2:30 pm) June 1 - (Dep. Hamilton 4:15 pm) June 1 - (Arr. Québec 6:15 pm) June 7 - (Dep. Québec 10:00 am)	12	x			HRH The Duke of Edinburgh's Fifth Commonwealth Study Conference - Canada 1980. (On May 22 HRH departed from Calgary to join The Queen in Australia and returned to London, Ontario on May 30).
1980 Sep.27 - (Arr. Goose Bay 6:30 pm) Sep.28 - (Arr. Ottawa 12:30 pm) Oct. 1 - (Dep. Ottawa 10:45 am)	3		x		Stop over in Goose Bay, Nfld. on Sept. 27 Arrived at CFB Ottawa South (Uplands) to attend the British Commonwealth Ex-Services League Convention. On Oct. 11 on return trip from Bermuda a stop over in Halifax, N.S. and then on to Gander. Departed Oct. 12 from Gander for London, England.
1982 (Accompanying Her Majesty) April 15 - (Arr. 3:10 p.m.) April 18 - (Dep. 11:15 p.m.)	4	x			Ottawa - On occasion of the proclamation of the Constitution Act, 1982. <u>Remarks:</u> Prince Philip leaves Canada alone.
1983 (Accompanying Her Majesty) March 8 - (Arr. 9:30 a.m.) March 11 - (Dep. 7:00 a.m.)	4	x			Victoria, Vancouver, Nanaimo, Vernon, Kamloops, New Westminster. At the end of Her American West Coast Tour.
1983 June 30 July 6	7		x		Ottawa - To celebrate the 100th Anniversary of the R.C.R.; Presentation in Toronto - To present Duke of Edinburgh Gold Awards London.
1984 July 15 - (Arr. 4:00 p.m.) July 16 - (Dep. 4:00 p.m.)			x		Gagetown, N.B. - To present new colours to the Royal Canadian Regiment (Engagement originally planned for Royal Visit postponed for 1984 General Elections).
1984 July 27			x		Thompson, Manitoba - To present Duke of Edinburgh Gold Awards (Engagement originally to take place during Royal Visit postponed to September).

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1984 (Accompanying Her Majesty) Sept. 24 - (Arr. 1:00 p.m.) Oct. 4 - (Dep. 7:50 p.m.)	11	x			Dieppe, Shediac, Moncton, Fredericton, Sackville, Riverview. To participate in the Bicentennial of New Brunswick. Ottawa, Morrisburg, Cornwall, Prescott, Kingston, Amherstview, Windsor, Brantford, Sudbury. To participate in the Bicentennial of Ontario. <u>Remarks:</u> Prince Philip left Canada after the Sudbury program; The Queen continued on to Manitoba.
1985 June 4 June 7	4		x		Ottawa (to present badges to Girl Guides (at Rideau Hall), Toronto (for the International Forum of Duke of Edinburgh Award Scheme).
1985 August 19 August 21	3	x			Banff (Centennial of Parks Canada: Duke of Edinburgh's Award; New banners to Royal Canadian Army Cadets) Lake Louise (designation of World Heritage Site). Calgary Airport (arrival and departure ceremonies).
1987 April 19-20 April 29				x x	Gander (en route to Bahamas). Churchill.
1987 June 3 June 5	3		x		Regina (for Ramsar Convention on Wetlands, as President of WWF).
1987 (Accompanying Her Majesty) Oct. 9 Oct. 24	16	x			North Saanich, Qualicum Beach (private retreat). Vancouver, Victoria, Esquimalt: to participate in opening sessions of government-heads of Government Meeting; Regina, Fort Qu'Appelle (private retreat), Saskatoon, Yorkton, Canora, Veregin, Kamsack, Kindersley, in Saskatchewan. First visit to Saskatchewan since 1978; Québec, Sillery, Cap Tourmente, Rivière-du-Loup, La Pocatière: first official visit to Quebec since 1964.
1987 Oct. 25 Oct. 26				x	Return flight from Denver Co. Stopover in North Bay, Ontario, and overnight stop in Gander.
1989 March 12 March 15	4		x		Private visit to Toronto for The Duke of Edinburgh's Award.
1989 March 21 March 22				x	Refuelling stop at Halifax and overnight stop at St. John's (dinner with the Lieutenant Governor and Award presentation at Government House).

ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA SINCE 1952 F.5-15
Document released pursuant to
the Access to Information Act.

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1989 May 16 May 17				x	Refuelling stop at Churchill and overnight stop at Victoria (dinner with the Lieutenant Governor).
1989 May 18 May 21	4	x			Visit to Montréal (Provincial dinner, luncheon-meeting with Montréal Canadian Club), Varennes (IREQ), Sherbrooke (Gold Award Presentation, Civic Welcome, 35th anniversary of University), Lennoxville (United Empire Loyalists of Canada Committee, Bishop College School Cadet inspection, Bishop's University Chapel and Arboretum, Civic Welcome), Compton (concert at Domaine St-Laurent organized by Government of Canada).
1990 May 16 May 17				x	Stopover in Gander (refuel); Overnight stop in Fredericton, New Brunswick (engagements at CFB Gagetown with RCR).
1990 May 20 May 21				x	Overnight stop in Gander (stay at Albatros Hotel).
1991 March 23				x	Stopover at St. John's.
1992 March 7 March 12	6		x		Vancouver, Victoria, Calgary - CFB Suffield (for WWF engagements).
1992 March 25 March 26				x	Overnight stopover at Halifax (stay at Sheraton). Refueling stop at Gander on March 26.
1992 July 13				x	Stopover for refuelling at Gander en route to Boston.
1992 July 14 July 17	4		x		Calgary (for Royal Agricultural Society of the Commonwealth Conference). Stopover in Thunder Bay, Ontario (refuel) on July 14. Stopover in Churchill, Manitoba, and Iqaluit, NWT, on July 17.
1993 March 9 March 10				x	Overnight stopover at St. John's; stay at Government House: dinner with Lieutenant Governor.
1993 March 25 March 26				x	Overnight stopover at St. John's; stay at Hotel Newfoundland.
1993 Oct. 8				x	Refueling stop at Gander, Newfoundland en route to United States

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF EDINBURGH

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1993 Oct. 11 Oct. 15	5		x		Toronto (WWF Canada: Duke of Edinburgh's Award; Upper Canada College; Empire Club). Montréal (Duke of Edinburgh's Award). Stopover at Gander, Newfoundland.
1994 (Accompanying Her Majesty) Aug. 13 - (Arr. 2:20 p.m.) Aug. 22 - (Dep. 9:40 a.m.)	10	x			Halifax, Sydney, Fortress of Louisbourg, Dartmouth, Victoria (for the Commonwealth Games), Private Retreat at Twin Island, Prince George for The Queen, Prince Rupert, Khutzeemateen Valley for The Duke of Edinburgh; Yellowknife, Rankin Inlet, Iqaluit.
1996 Nov. 4 Nov. 6	3		x	x	Refuelling stop in Gander on Nov. 4, overnight stop in Gander on Nov. 6; attend the Royal Agricultural Winter Fair in Toronto; media launch for the Duke of Edinburgh's Award "Charter for Business"; presentation of gold awards certificates at Hart House; visits WWF offices and WWF press conference; visits St. Michael's Hospital.
1997 March 19 March 22	4		x	x	Alberta: WWF press conference; presentation of gold awards certificates (The Duke of Edinburgh's Award); refuelling at Thunder Bay; Nova Scotia: WWF dinner.
1997 Accompanying Her Majesty) June 23 - (Arr. 2:00 p.m.) July 2 - (Dep. 11:00 a.m.)	10	x			St. John's, NF, Gander (103 Search and Rescue Squadron), Bonavista, Labrador (Goose Bay). Private retreat (Red Tail), Manitoba (flood damage), Toronto, North Bay, Petawawa (RCR), Ottawa
1998 Oct. 2 Oct. 4	3		x		Ottawa (for the 8th Duke of Edinburgh's Commonwealth Study Conference)

ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952

NAME: HM THE QUEEN MOTHER

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1954 Nov. 12 - (Arr. 6:00 p.m.) Nov. 17 - (Dep. 3:30 p.m.)	5	x			Ottawa.
1958 Jan. 28 - (Arr. 4:00 p.m.) Jan. 29 - (Dep. 8:00 p.m.)				x	Montréal and Vancouver en route to New Zealand & Australia.
1962 June 7 - (Arr. 5:00 p.m.) June 16 - (Dep. 7:30 p.m.)	9	x			Montréal, Ottawa, Toronto, Upper Canada Village - To participate in the ceremonies of the Centenary of the Black Watch of Canada. Her Majesty is Colonel-in-Chief.
1964 Feb. 7 - (Arr. 1:00 P.M.) Feb. 8 - (Dep. 12:00 a.m.)				x	Montréal, Vancouver and Victoria en route for Fiji.
1965 June 23 - (Arr. 6:30 p.m.) June 27	4		x		Toronto - To celebrate 50th Anniv. of Toronto Scottish Regiment. Her Majesty is the Colonel-in-Chief.
1966 March 18 March 19				x	Vancouver, Victoria - En route to Australia and New Zealand.
1966 May 4				x	Vancouver (Return journey from Australia and New Zealand).
1967 July 10 July 22 - (Dep. 11:00 a.m.)	12	x			Atlantic Provinces (N.S.-N.B.-P.E.I.-NFLD) - To take part in the Centennial celebrations.
1974 June 25 - (Arr. 3:15 p.m.) July 1 - (Dep. 11:15 a.m.)	6	x			Toronto, Montréal - To visit Toronto Scottish Regiment in Toronto June 27. To present the Queen's Colours to the Black Watch Regiment of Montréal.
1979 June 26 - (Arr. 2:35 p.m.) July 2 - (Dep. 12:00 noon)	6	x			Halifax, N.S. - Presentation of the Queen's Colour to Maritime Command Official Opening Int. Gathering of the Clans; - Toronto - To attend 120th running of The Queen's Plate Stakes. <u>Remarks:</u> Semi private.
1981 July 2 - (Arr. 3:45 p.m.) July 7 - (Dep. 12:00 Noon)	5	x			Ottawa (Official welcome), Toronto (Queen's Plate), Niagara-on-the-Lake(bicentennial of Town).
1985 July 12 July 19	8	x			Ottawa (Official welcome) Toronto (Queen's Plate); Regina; CFB Cold Lake (flight diverted because of bad weather in Edmonton); Edmonton (5 th Angus Forum)

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

*Document communiqué en vertu de
la Loi sur l'accès à l'information.
Document released pursuant to
the Access to Information Act.*

NAME: HM THE QUEEN MOTHER

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1987 June 4 June 8	5	x			Ottawa (official welcome) Montréal (125th anniversary of Black Watch).
1989 July 5 Jul 10	6	x			Ottawa (Official welcome) Toronto (Queen's Plate). London (Opening of Western Counties Wing, Parkwood Hospital; unveiling of statue of Dr. Banting).

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH THE PRINCE OF WALES

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1970 July 3 July 4		x			Ottawa (2 days) before joining The Queen and The Duke of Edinburgh and Princess Anne for the visit to Manitoba.
1970 (with Her Majesty, The Duke of Edinburgh and Princess Anne) July 5 - (Arr. 10:45 p.m.) July 15 - (Dep. 9:00 a.m.)	10	x			Manitoba, N.W.T.; to participate in the Centennial of the N.W.T. and the 100th Anniversary of Manitoba's entry into the Confederation.
1975 April 20 - (Arr. 4:00 p.m.) April 30 - (Dep. 9:35 a.m.)	11	x			Ottawa, N.W.T.
1975 May 2 June 5	35		x		On board HMS Hermes - visits to N.B., N.S., Montréal.
1976 (With Her Majesty, The Duke of Edinburgh and Prince Andrew, Prince Edward, Princess Anne and her husband) July 13 - (Arr. 9:15 a.m.) July 26 - (Dep. 11:55 a.m.)	14	x			Attending briefly XXI Olympiad in Montréal.
1977 July 5 - (Arr. 1:40 p.m.) July 9 - (Dep. evening)	5	x			Alberta - Celebrations of signing of Treaty 7 and Calgary stampede.
1979 Apr. 1 - (Arr. 12:30 p.m.) Apr. 7 - (Dep. 10:15 a.m.)		x			Victoria, B.C., Yellowknife, N.W.T., Winnipeg, Manitoba, Toronto and Ottawa, Ont. <u>Remarks:</u> Semi-official.
1980 March 30 - (Arr. 12:00 noon) April 3 - (Dep. 9:00 a.m.)	4	x			Ottawa, Vancouver and Victoria/B.C. (As President of International Council of United World College, visited Pearson college of the Pacific, attended meetings of the Council, etc., spent one night at Government House, Ottawa). <u>Remarks:</u> Semi-official.
1982 October			x		Visited the Lester B. Pearson College in British Columbia.

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH THE PRINCE OF WALES

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1983 (Accompanied by The Princess Wales) June 14 - (Arr. 12:30 p.m.) July 1 - (Dep. 5:00 p.m.)	18	x			N.S.: Halifax, Shelbourne/N.B., Saint John, Dalhousie, St-Andrews-by-the-Sea, Dartmouth/Ottawa/Nfld, St. John's, Carbonear, Harbour Grace. PEI: Charlottetown, Montague, Summerside. Alberta: Edmonton for Official opening of 1983 World Universities Games Nfld: to celebrate the 400th anniversary of Sir Humphrey Gilbert having taken possession of Newfoundland in the name of Queen Elizabeth I. N.B.: Saint John, Charlo, Dalhousie, St-Andrews-by-the-Sea, Dartmouth N.S.: Halifax, Shelbourne, Lunenburg to celebrate in these two provinces the 200th Anniversary of the United Empire Loyalists <u>Remarks:</u> First leg of cross-Canada tour of Royal Couple
1985 (Accompanied by The Princess of Wales) October 30				x	Vancouver (en route to Australia)
1986 February 17				x	Ottawa (en route to Texas)
1986 (Accompanied by The Princess of Wales) April 30 May 7	8	x			Victoria, Vancouver, Prince George, Kamloops, Nanaimo <u>Remarks:</u> Second leg of cross-Canada tour of Royal Couple
1986 September 2 and 6				x	Gander, en route to and return from USA (Boston and Chicago)
1991 (Accompanied by The Princess of Wales) October 23 - (Arr. 6:00 p.m.) October 29 - (Dep. 10:35 p.m.) (with Princes William and Henry in Toronto, October 22 to October 27)	7	x			Toronto, Sudbury, Niagara Falls, Kingston, Ottawa, Ontario
1996 April 23 - (Arr. 1:45 p.m.) April 29 - (Dep. 7:30 p.m.)	7	x			ON.: Ottawa, Toronto, MB: Churchill, Winnipeg NB: Fredericton, Saint John, Miramichi City, Caraquet

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH THE PRINCE OF WALES

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1998 (Accompanied by princes William and Henry) March 23 March 28	6	x	x		Vancouver. Whistler (Note: March 23 and 24 official engagements in Vancouver, followed by a private stay in Whistler)

F.5 - 22

ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF YORK

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
<u>Prince Andrew</u> 1976 July 16 - (Arr. 5:00 p.m.) July 25 - (Dep. 12:00 midnight)	9	x			Joined the Queen. HRH The Duke of Edinburgh. The Prince of Wales, The Prince Edward and Princess Anne for the XXI Olympiad - Montréal, Bromont.
1977 July 7 - (Arr. Afternoon) July 9 - (Dep.)	2		x		Joined HRH The Prince of Wales in Alberta to celebrate the signing of Treaty No. 7 and the Calgary Stampede.
1978 July 26 - (Arr. 2:35 p.m.) Aug. 12 - (Dep. 7:45 p.m.)	18	x			Arrived in St. John's, Nfld with the Queen. The Duke of Edinburgh and The Prince Edward and proceed with the G.G. to Ottawa for visit July 26 and 27 following which HRH went on a private visit in Ontario until Aug. 2; then Edmonton, Alta to attend XI Commonwealth Games Aug. 7 and 8 - Accompanied The Duke of Edinburgh to B.C. (Capt. Cook Festival, etc.) Aug. 8 (6:00 p.m.) They return to Edmonton, Alta for closing of Commonwealth Games.
1983 July 18 Aug. 7	20		x		Toronto, Peterborough and N.W. Territories - Canada excursion with students from Lakefield College.
1985 June 23 July 1	9	x			Fredericton, Saint John, Sussex, N.B.; Halifax, Annapolis Royal, Digby, North Sydney, Sydney, N.S.; Peterborough, Ontario (bicentennial of Fredericton as Capital; bicentennial of incorporation of Saint John; bicentennial of Sydney; centennial of North Sydney; opening of activity centre at Peterborough Liftlock).
<u>The Duke and Duchess of York</u> 1987 July 15 July 25	11	x			Toronto (Queen's Plate), Thunder Bay, Niagara Falls, Mississauga (new Civic Centre) Cobourg (150th anniversary); Muskoka (retreat at McEachern's); Winnipeg (St. Boniface Gen. Hospital Research Centre); Edmonton, Medicine Hat (Stampede), Head-Smash-In Buffalo Jump; Yellowknife.
1987 July 26 August 9	15		x		Canoe expedition on Hanbury - Thelon River.
1989 July 13 July 25	13	x			Charlottetown, York, Souris, Basin Head, Fort Amherst National Park (Jamboree 89); Summerside; Québec City, La Malbaie, Port au Saumon, Port au Persil, Baie Ste Catherine, Montréal, Hull; Ottawa; Prince Albert, Nipawin, Lac La Ronge, (private retreat), La Ronge, Meadow Lake, Saskatoon, Swift Current, Regina.

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

F.5-23

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF YORK

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1991 (Duchess alone) November 6 November 11	5		x		Toronto (Royal Agricultural Winter Fair) Sunnybrook - ALS; Toronto Sick Children Hospital - HIV). Ottawa (Dinner at 24 Sussex. Remembrance Day ceremony).
1992 September 25 September 27	3		x		Lakefield (Alumni Days) and Toronto.
1993 September 20 September 24	5		x		Arrival at Ottawa. CFB Petawawa (to meet Canadian Airborne Regiment). Pembroke (to unveil a monument: visit a senior citizens home). Halifax (to visit Marcom; dinner at Government House).
1995 April 20 April 22	2		x		Toronto (Toronto Golf Club); Lakefield College (open new wing).

F.5 - 24

ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952

NAME: HRH THE PRINCE EDWARD

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1976 July 13 - (Arr. 9:15 a.m.) July 25 - (Dep. 12:00 midnight)	13	x			Accompanied Her Majesty, The Duke of Edinburgh, The Prince of Wales and The Prince of Wales to the XXI Olympic Games in Montréal.
1978 July 26 - (Arr. 2:35 p.m.) Aug. 6 - (Dep. 6:00 p.m.)	12	x			Arrived in St. John's, Nfld with Her Majesty, The Duke of Edinburgh and The Prince Andrew. July 28, Stephenville Airport, Nfld for Regina (goes to Qu'Appelle Valley; Moose Jaw, Saskatoon, Lloydminster, Sask; then to Edmonton, Alta. Commonwealth Games; overnight trail ride up the Tonquin Valley; returned to London with Her Majesty on Aug. 6.
1987 June 24 - (Arr. 5:10 p.m.) June 25 - (Dep.: 2:30 p.m.)	1		x		Fredericton, N.B. (private, for Duke of Edinburgh's Award).
1987 June 25 - (Arr 3:10 p.m.) June 30 - (dep 7:45 p.m.)	6	x			Halifax, Truro, Dartmouth, Nova Scotia. Charlottetown, Brudenell, Cavendish, Mont Carmel, Malpeque, CFB Summerside, Prince Edward Island.
1988 June 4 - (Arr 2:30 p.m.) June 11 - (dep 3:15 p.m.)	8	x		x	Ottawa (gala evening ball for Duke of Edinburgh Award; heraldry ceremony). Toronto (private visit for the 25 th anniversary of the Duke of Edinburgh Award in Canada). Newfoundland (100 years of municipal government): St. John's, Deer Lake, Corner Brook; dedication of Gros Morne National Park as a World Heritage Site.
1989 Sep. 18 - (Arr. BA 93 at 6:00 pm) Sep. 21 - (Arr. BA 83 at 8:00 pm)				x	Toronto, Ontario: premiere of "Phantom of the Opera"
1990 July 5 - (Arr. at 6:10 p.m.) July 8 - (Dep. at 8:00 p.m.)	6	x			Winnipeg: opening of Western Canada Summer Games. St. Malo: picnic and visit to senior citizens home. Gillam: visit to Limestone Power Plant. Churchill: visit to Eskimo Museum and whale watching.
1991 Oct. 23 Oct. 26				x	Montréal, Calgary and Vancouver (fund raising dinners, Gold award presentations), Victoria (Commonwealth Games organizers).
1992 May 3 May 6				x	St. John's (Duke of Edinburgh's Awards), Churchill Falls, Goose Bay (Sir Wilfred Grenfell 100 th Anniversary).

ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952

NAME: HRH THE PRINCE EDWARD

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1993 March 26 April 15	21		x		For Duke of Edinburgh's Awards presentation and fund raising (Winnipeg 26/3; Edmonton 27/3; Vancouver 28/3; Toronto 10+11/4; London 12/4; Fredericton 13/4; Halifax 14/4) For Commonwealth Games (Victoria 29/3). Private ski holiday in the Rockies 29/3 to April 10).
1993 September 30 October 3	4		x		Toronto (to raise funds for Victoria Commonwealth Games Society). Victoria (meeting of Assembly of Commonwealth Games Federation; visit sites for 1994 Games: Duke of Edinburgh's Award in British Columbia).
1994 August 13 August 29	17		x		Regina (Duke of Edinburgh's Award, Globe Theatre), Fort Qu'Appelle (Indian Reserve); Calgary (Duke of Edinburgh's Award); Victoria (Commonwealth Games), Kelowna (Duke of Edinburgh's Award).
1996 June 23 June 24	2		x		Presentation of The Duke of Edimburgh's Gold Award Certificates in Toronto; Media Launch for the Charter for Business (CN Tower)

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH THE PRINCESS ROYAL (PRINCESS ANNE)

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1970 (With Her Majesty and The Duke of Edinburgh) March 2 March 3				x	Ottawa, Vancouver.
1970 (With Her Majesty and The Duke of Edinburgh) May 10				x	Vancouver.
1970 (With Her Majesty and The Duke of Edinburgh and Prince of Wales) July 5 - (Arr. 10:45 p.m.) July 15 - (Dep. 11:30 p.m.)	10	x			Manitoba, Northwest Territories - To participate in the Centennial of the N.W.T. and in the 100th Anniversary of Manitoba's entry into the Confederation.
1971 (With Her Majesty and The Duke of Edinburgh) May 3 - (Arr. 11:05 a.m.) May 12 - (Dep. 9:00 a.m.)	9	x			Victoria, Vancouver, Tofino, Kelowna, Vernon, Penticton, William Lake, Comox. To mark the Centenary Anniversary of British Columbia into the Confederation of Canada.
1974 (With Capt. Mark Phillips) Jan. 25 Jan. 27	3	x			Ottawa and Hull.
1974 (With Capt. Mark Phillips) Nov. 15 Nov. 18	4		x		Toronto (Royal Agricultural Winter Fair), Hamilton.
1976 (With Capt. Mark Phillips) July 1 July 26			x		Participated in the Montréal Olympics, as members of the British Olympic Equestrian Team.
1979 Nov. 12 - (Arr. 5:30 p.m.) Nov. 18 - (Dep. 8:45 p.m.)	6	x			Arrived in Ottawa; Kingston, Toronto, Owen Sound, Ottawa (while in Toronto attended "Kick for Cansave" and Cansave College Bowl Dinner). <u>Remarks:</u> Visit to Canadian regiments in Kingston, Owen Sound, Ottawa.
1982 July 4 - (Arr. 7:00 p.m.) July 17 - (Dep. 7:00 p.m.)	14	x			Ottawa. Yukon: Haynes Junction, Kluane Park, Whitehorse. Sask.: Regina (centennial of St. Paul's Cathedral), Wilcox, Gravelbourg (centennial), Estevan (centennial), Alameda (centennial), Moosomin (centennial), Saskatoon (centennial) Manitoba: Winnipeg, Brandon, Selkirk.

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH PRINCESS ALICE (DOWAGER DUCHESS OF GLOUCESTER)

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1963 Sep. 18 Sep. 26	9		x		Ottawa - Toronto.

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

*Document communiqué en vertu de
la Loi sur l'accès à l'information.
Document released pursuant to
the Access to Information Act.*

NAME: HRH PRINCESS PATRICIA (LADY PATRICIA RAMSAY) (DIED (12-01-74))

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1964 Sep. 17 Sep. 23	7		x		Edmonton - To celebrate the Jubilee of the Princess Patricia's Light Infantry Regiment.

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH THE PRINCESS ROYAL (PRINCESS MARY) (DIED 28-03-65)

OFF.: Official
PR.: Private

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1955 Sept. 29 Oct. 25 - (Dep. 11:00 a.m.)	26	x			Québec, Montréal, Kingston, Fort Henry, Ottawa, Hull, Toronto, Niagara Falls, Malton, Ontario - Winnipeg, St. Boniface, Manitoba - Victoria, B.C. Vancouver.
1962 June 13 - (Arr. 7:00 p.m.) June 28 - (Dep. 6:00 p.m.)	15	x			Victoria, Vancouver, Trenton, Kingston, Toronto, Ottawa, Québec - To present new colours earned in Second World War by Canadian Scottish Regiment. Princess Mary is Colonel-in-Chief.
1964 Sept. 19 - (Arr. 1:00 p.m.) Sept. 29 - (Dep. 11:00 p.m.)	11	x			Newfoundland - To commemorate the 50th Anniversary of the departure from St. John's of first contingent of the Royal Newfoundland Regiment. The Princess is Colonel-in-Chief.

**ROYAL VISITS TO CANADA
SINCE 1952**

NAME: HRH THE DUKE OF GLOUCESTER

**OFF.: Official
PR.: Private**

DATE	# OF DAYS	OFF.	PR.	STOP OVER	LOCATION AND PURPOSE
1990 May 7 May 10	4		x		Ottawa, Toronto and Halifax, in connection with his work as Grand Prior of the Order of Saint John.

Royal visits from 1786 to 1951

F.5 - 39

This is a list of visits to Canada by members of the Royal Family, along with the periods of residence of royal governors general.

- 1786-87 Prince William, the future King William IV, came to Canada as part of a naval contingent serving in North America and the West Indies.
- 1791-98,
1799-1800 Prince Edward, Duke of Kent (later father of Queen Victoria), fourth son of King George III, stayed in Canada on military duties and as Commander of British North American troops.
- 1860 Albert Edward, Prince of Wales, undertook a two-month tour of Upper and Lower Canada.
- 1861 Prince Alfred spent five weeks in the Maritime Provinces, Newfoundland and Lower Canada.
- 1869-70 Prince Arthur, later Duke of Connaught, spent a year in Canada with the Rifle Brigade based at Montreal.
- 1878-83 The Marquess of Lorne, accompanied by his wife, Princess Louise, resided in Canada as Governor General. Many members of the Royal Family visited them during this time.
- 1890 The Duke of Connaught toured Canada for several weeks.
- 1900 Princess Marie-Louise cut short an intended holiday in Canada, at the insistence of her husband, Prince Aribert of Anhalt, and of Queen Victoria.
- 1901 The Duke and Duchess of Cornwall and York (later King George V and Queen Mary), toured Canada coast-to-coast as part of an Empire-wide voyage.
- 1906 Prince Arthur of Connaught spent several weeks touring Canada.
- 1908 George, Prince of Wales (later King George V), visited Quebec for the city's tercentenary.
- 1911-16 The Duke of Connaught, accompanied by the Duchess of Connaught and Princess Patricia, resided in Canada as Governor General.
- 1913 Prince Albert, Duke of York (later King George VI), visited parts of Canada during his service with the Royal Navy, with his ship, HMS Cumberland.

Royal visits from 1786 to 1951

- 1919 Edward, Prince of Wales (later King Edward VIII), undertook a two-month tour of Canada.
- 1923 Edward, Prince of Wales (later King Edward VIII), visited his ranch in Alberta, calling in at many major towns and cities over a seven-week period.
- 1924 Edward, Prince of Wales (later King Edward VIII), paid another visit to his ranch, as part of an unofficial tour of Canada.
- 1926 Prince George (later Duke of Kent) visited parts of Canada, including the West coast.
- 1927 Edward, Prince of Wales, and Prince George visited Canada for the Diamond Jubilee of the Confederation.
- 1928 Prince George paid a private visit to Canada.
- 1929 Prince Henry (later Duke of Gloucester) spent a short time privately in Canada.
- 1939 King George VI and Queen Elizabeth undertook a six-week coast-to-coast tour of Canada.
- 1940-46 The Earl of Athlone, with his wife Princess Alice, resided in Canada as Governor General.
- 1941 Prince George, Duke of Kent, visited air bases and training centres in Canada.
- 1941 The Duke and Duchess of Windsor visited their ranch near Calgary.
- 1945 Viscount Lascelles (later Earl of Harewood) joined the staff of Government House as A.D.C. to the Earl of Athlone.
- 1945 The Duke and Duchess of Windsor spend a short holiday in New Brunswick.
- 1951 Princess Elizabeth and The Duke of Edinburgh undertook a coast-to-coast tour of Canada.

[Taken from «Royal Canada», Trevor Hall, 1989, Archive Publishing]

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.6

Guidance notes for meeting the Sovereign and members of the Royal Family

The Queen is the formal Head of the State of Canada. By the *Constitution Act, 1867*, “the executive government of and over Canada is declared to continue and the vested in The Queen”. Parliament consists of The Queen, the Senate and the House of Commons.

GUIDELINES

Visits by The Queen, The Duke of Edinburgh and other members of the Royal Family are always special occasions, but individual engagements can range from the very formal to the informal. Members of the Royal Family wish any elements of protocol to be in tune with what is generally acceptable in Canadian society. The following guidelines are designed to help people feel comfortable and prepared; they are not rules to be applied inflexibly or prescriptively.

HOW TO ADDRESS

The Queen is called “Your Majesty” initially and “Ma’am” (rhymes with “Jam”) as the conversation continues. The Duke of Edinburgh is called “Your Royal Highness” initially and “Sir” as the conversation continues. Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother is called “Your Majesty” initially and “Ma’am” as the conversation continues. Other members of the Royal Family are called “Your Royal Highness” initially and “Sir/Ma’am” as the conversation continues.

HOST

Upon arrival at each site to be visited, the members of the Royal Family will be greeted by the host. No presentations are required as they will be aware of who the host is, having been provided with briefing notes.

When accompanying the Royal Visitor, it is appropriate for the host to walk beside the Royal Visitor. The host should make introductions as required.

CURTSY/BOW

It is up to those meeting The Queen, The Duke of Edinburgh and other members of the Royal Family to choose whether or not they wish to bow/curtsy or simply shake hands.

Description of a bow/curtsy for those who choose to make it:

Men: a neck bow - just a little more than a nod of the head;

Woman: the right foot is placed behind the left heel, and the knees bent slightly.

It is quite in order to shake hands if the opportunity presents itself and a member of the Royal Family offers to do so.

DRESS

Members of The Royal Family do not wish anyone to be put to unnecessary expense by buying special clothes, hats or gloves. The following points may, however, be of use in answering queries.

- a. There is requirement for hats to be worn, though it is entirely acceptable to do so. Hats are not normally worn at functions after 6:30 p.m.
- b. There is no requirement for gloves to be worn. However, if a woman wishes to wear gloves, they need not be white and should not be taken off before the wearer is presented.
- c. Where black tie and long evening dress are called for, cocktail dress, national dress and dark lounge suit are also acceptable.

It is not generally known in advance what colour clothes Her Majesty or other female members of the Royal Family will wear at functions.

SMOKING

Neither The Queen nor The Duke of Edinburgh smokes. However, they do not object to smoking by the guests at the end of a meal.

MEALS AND DRINKS

Meals should generally be limited to a maximum of three courses and not last too long. Not more than an hour and three-quarters should be allowed for a luncheon engagement, of which about one hour fifteen minutes should be allowed for the meal itself and the remainder for arrivals and departures, presentations, signing of visitors' book and retiring periods usually ten minutes before and five minutes

after the meal. No more than an hour and three-quarters should be spent at dinner sitting at the table, including speeches.

Serving a meal at which a Member of the Royal Family is the principal guest always imposes a strain on the catering system and almost invariably takes longer than hosts may expect. If the first course is cold, it should, if possible, be on the table before the guests sit down, including the head table. It is important to brief the caterers to make sure that there is no undue delay about removing plates from the lingerers when it is obvious that the timing of the meal is falling behind.

Where possible, the seating plan should be cleared with the Royal Party in advance. There are no firm rules but the following guidelines may be helpful:

- at public lunches or dinners where there is one "top table", the host normally has the Royal Visitor on his/her right and the Royal Visitor's spouse (if it is the case) on his/her left. The hostess normally sits on the left of the Royal Visitor's spouse;
- at informal meals, Royal couple prefers to sit at opposite sides of the table, with the Royal Visitor on the right of the host and the Royal Visitor's spouse on the right of the hostess;
- for both formal and informal occasions, the trend increasingly is that round tables are used so as to give more chance to converse. In this case, the Royal Visitor and spouse will generally sit at separate tables;
- a Lady-in-Waiting should be placed at a table near a female Member of the Royal Family's table, and in cases where the Royal Visitor is speaking, it is necessary for the Private Secretary to be seated not too far away so that he/she can pass on the speech at the appropriate time;
- it is not necessary to put other members of the Household close to the Head table. The Household prefer to be split up and placed amongst the other guests.

Where it is appropriate, the host usually asks a religious representative present to say Grace.

Members of the Royal Family like to eat the food and drink of the country/region visited. Hosts should contact the Royal Visit Office for more specific information.

F.6.1

Protocol in toasting The Queen

There is no hard and fast rule for toast, nor is there any government regulation which dictates that toasts have to be proposed or when toasts are appropriate. It is left to the organizers of an event to determine if and when toasts are proposed.

The following is the usual procedure:

- After dessert and coffee have been served, the presiding officer rises and asks for the audience's attention so that they may join in a toast to The Queen. Once the guests have risen, the presiding officer charges his/her glass and simply says: "The Queen / La Reine" without any other word or music.
- The audience responds to the toast by repeating "The Queen / La Reine" and drinking the toast. The audience then sits.
- The Loyal Toast (i.e. the toast to The Queen) is always the first one to be proposed.
- Any beverage may be used for toasts, except cocktail, although wine or water are preferred.

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.7

Royal images

ROYAL ARMS AND INSIGNIA

The royal arms, the crown, the royal cypher are personal to members of the Royal Family and cannot be used without prior consent by the members of the Royal Family.

Requests for use of such emblems should be addressed to the Chief of Correspondence and Requests, Policy, Program and Protocol Branch, Government House (1 Sussex Drive, Ottawa K1A 0A1), accompanied by a sketch or drawing showing the intended uses.

Advice will be sought from the Manager, Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion, Department of Canadian Heritage, before the request is sent to the Lord Chamberlain's Office at Buckingham Palace for final approval.

COMMERCIAL USE

The following rules govern the use of the royal arms, crest, standards, photographs, portraits, engravings, effigies and busts of The Queen and members of the Royal Family for commercial purposes.

These rules are made to avoid unfair exploitation of the Royal Family by commercial organizations for their own advantage.

Prohibitions

Royal images may not be used on the following articles:

- Medals, medallions and coins
- Adhesive seals (including commercially issued stamps)
- Trade marks and designs
- Articles of dress
- Household linen and furnishing fabrics
- Any case, container, box cover or label.

F.7 - 2

Restrictions

Should the image of The Queen or a member of the Royal Family be shown with that of another person who is not a member of the Royal Family, the permission of the Lord Chamberlain's Office must be sought in writing.

Images of members of the Royal Family under the age of 18 may not be used for any commercial purpose.

Articles for sale

Other than as detailed in paragraph 1 and 2, royal images may be used only on articles for sale that are:

- Of a permanent kind
- Free from advertisement
- In good taste
- Carry no implication that the firm concerned has received Royal Custom or that the article has been purchased by a member of the Royal Family.

Stationary

Royal images may be used for the following provided they are free from advertisement:

- Portrait postcards (which may include younger members of the Royal Family in family groups)
- Greeting cards that carry only formal greetings
- Calendars (as a special exception Trade Calendars may carry the name of the firm and its trading description).

Advertising

Except when advertising a book, newspaper, magazine article or television documentary about a member of the Royal Family, royal images may not be used for advertising purposes in any medium.

A firm's advertisement may not include photographs of members of the Royal Family visiting their works or exhibition stands, or of being publicly involved with their products. Publication of film or photographs of such visits may, however, be used for House Journals or for specifically in-house purposes.

Requests relating to the use of royal images in advertising should be addressed as follows:

- Manager, Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion
Canadian Identity Directorate
Department of Canadian Heritage
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0M5
Tel: (819) 994-1353
Fax: (819) 997-8550
Internet: jean-paul_roy@pch.gc.ca

Copyright

Any question of copyright involved in the reproduction of a royal image must be settled by the prospective user direct with the copyright holder. Nothing in these rules gives any right to the use of a particular image.

National occasions

Certain of these rules are relaxed on certain occasions when due notice is given by way of Canada Gazette.

[Based on a document issued by the Lord Chamberlain's Office, Buckingham Palace, in 1982.]

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.8

Royal emblems

F.8.1

Evolution since 1189 to the Present Day



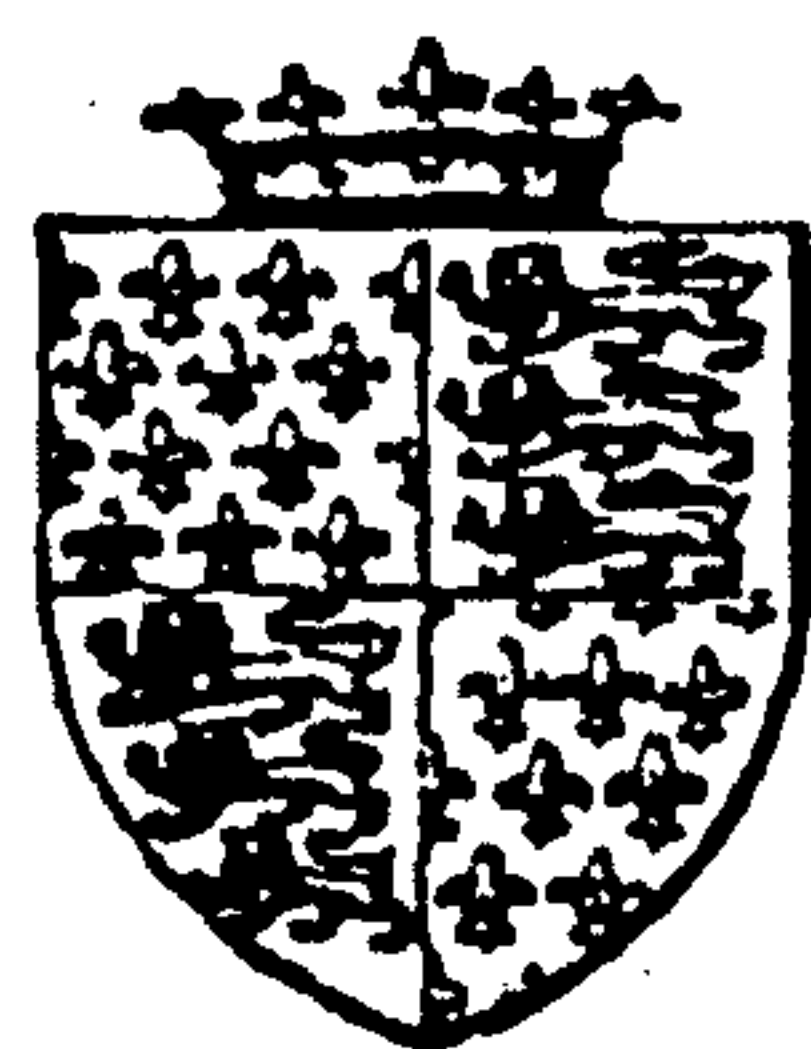
Richard I, the Lionheart: 1189 - 1199
King of England, Duke of Normandy

John: 1199 - 1216
King of England, Duke of Ireland

Henry III: 1216 - 1272
King of England, Duke of Ireland and Aquitania

Edward I: 1272 - 1307

Edward II: 1307- 1327



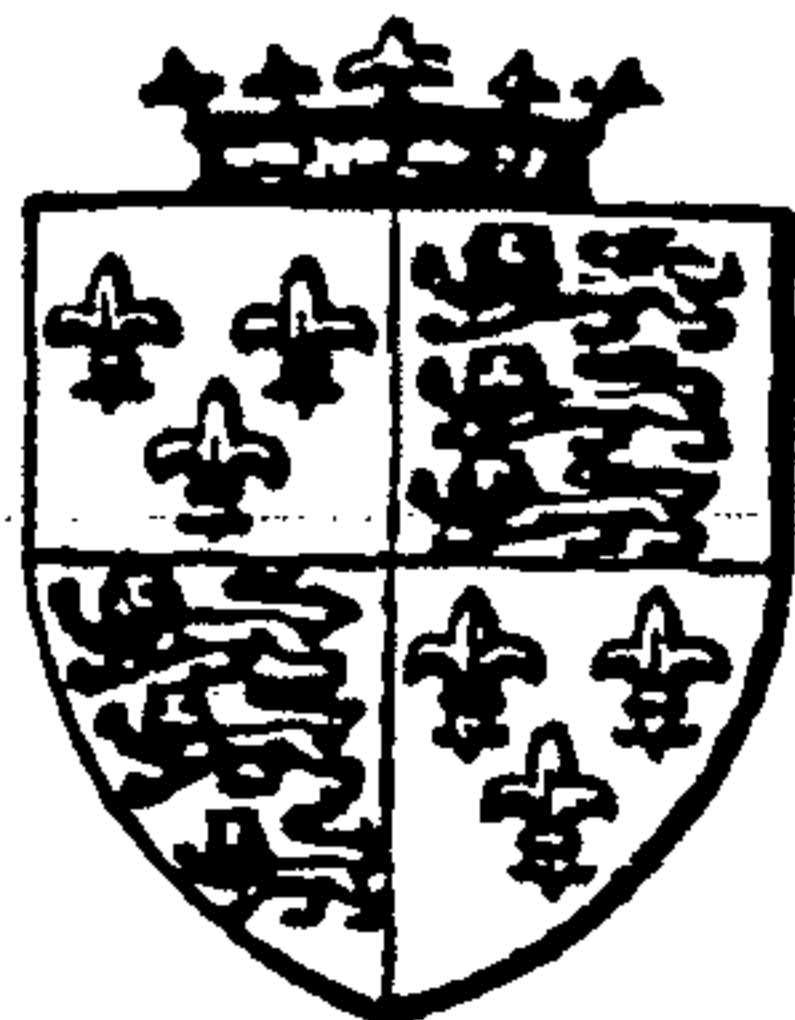
Edward III: 1327 - 1377

Richard II: 1377 - 1399

Henry IV: 1399 - 1413

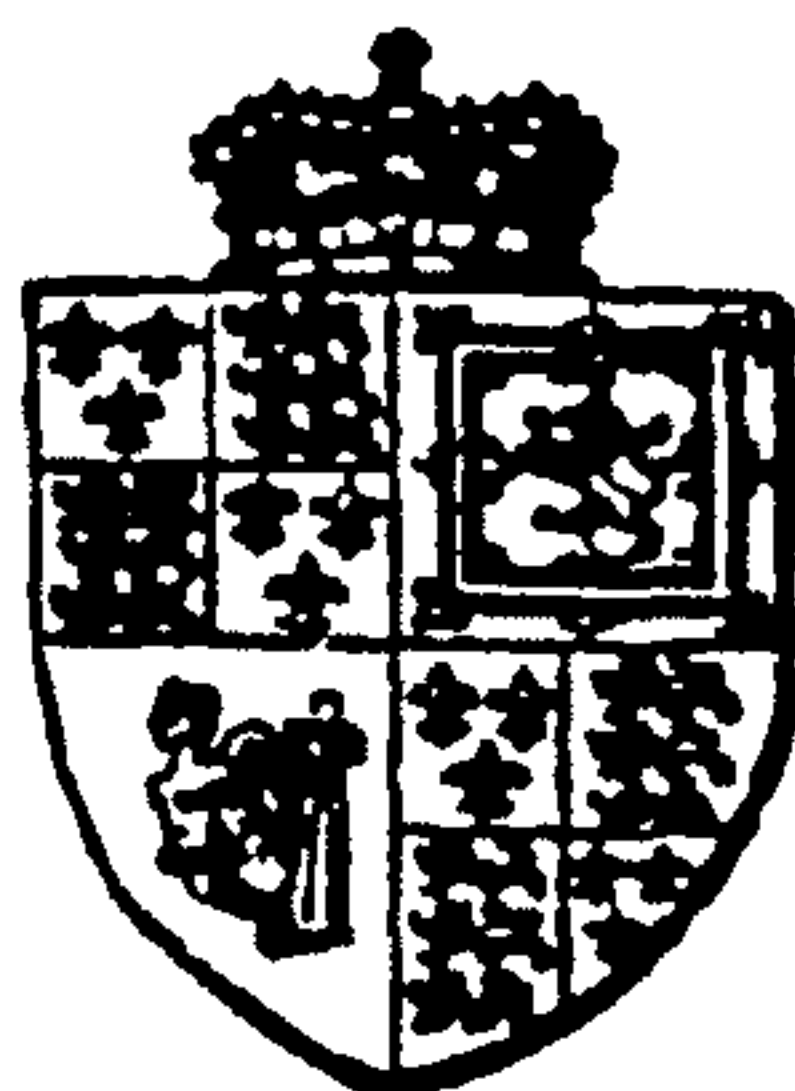
King of England
and France and Lord of Ireland

F.8 - 2



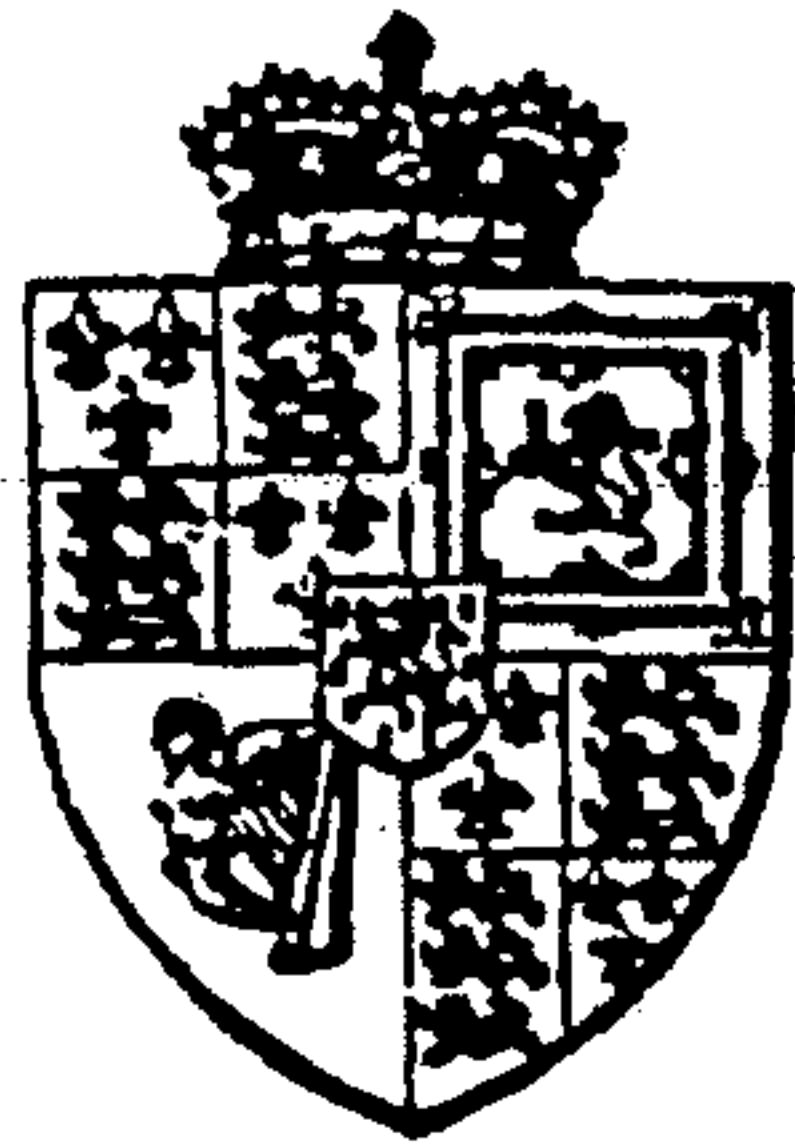
Henry V: 1413 - 1422
Henry VI: 1422 - 1461
Edward IV: 1461 - 1483
Edward V: 1483
Richard III: 1483 - 1485
Henry VII (Tudor): 1485 - 1509
Henry VIII: 1509 - 1547
Edward VI: 1547 - 1553
Mary I: 1553 - 1558
Elizabeth I: 1558 - 1603

King/Queen of
England, France and Ireland



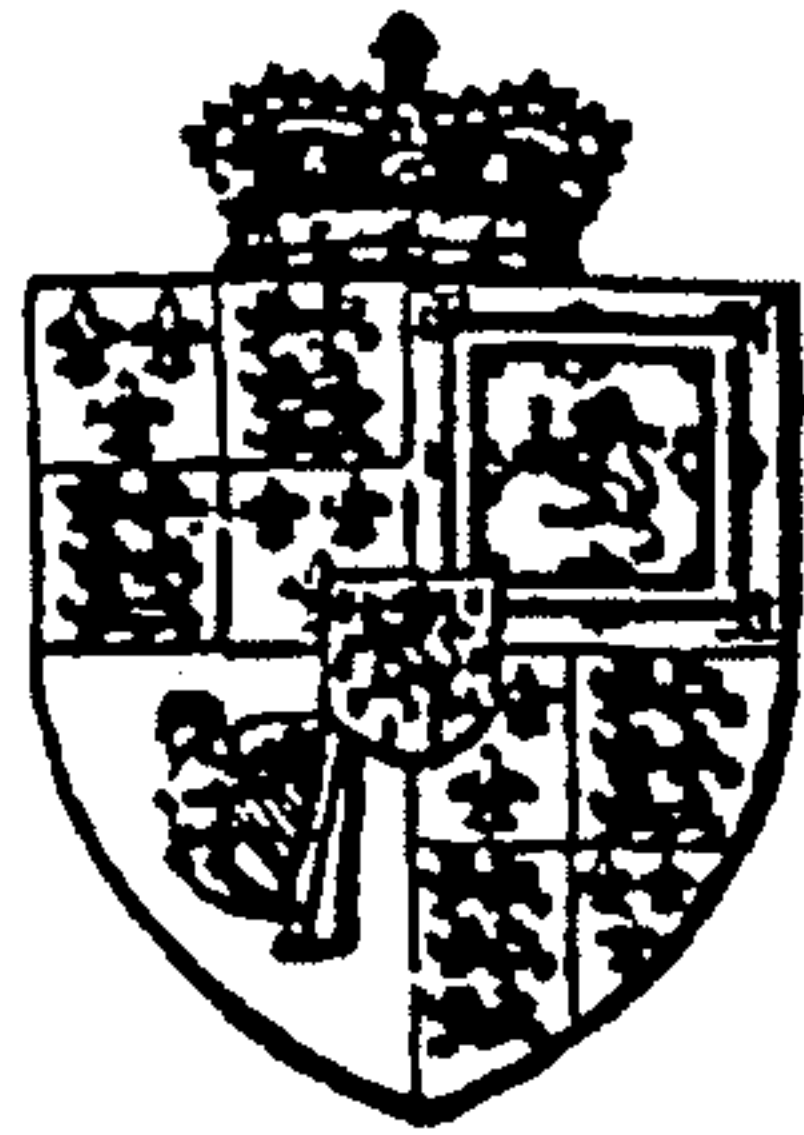
James I: 1603 - 1625
Charles I: 1625 - 1649
James II: 1685 - 1688

King of England,
Scotland, France and Ireland



William III and Mary II: 1689 - 1702

King and Queen of
England, Scotland, France and Ireland



Anne: 1702 - 1714

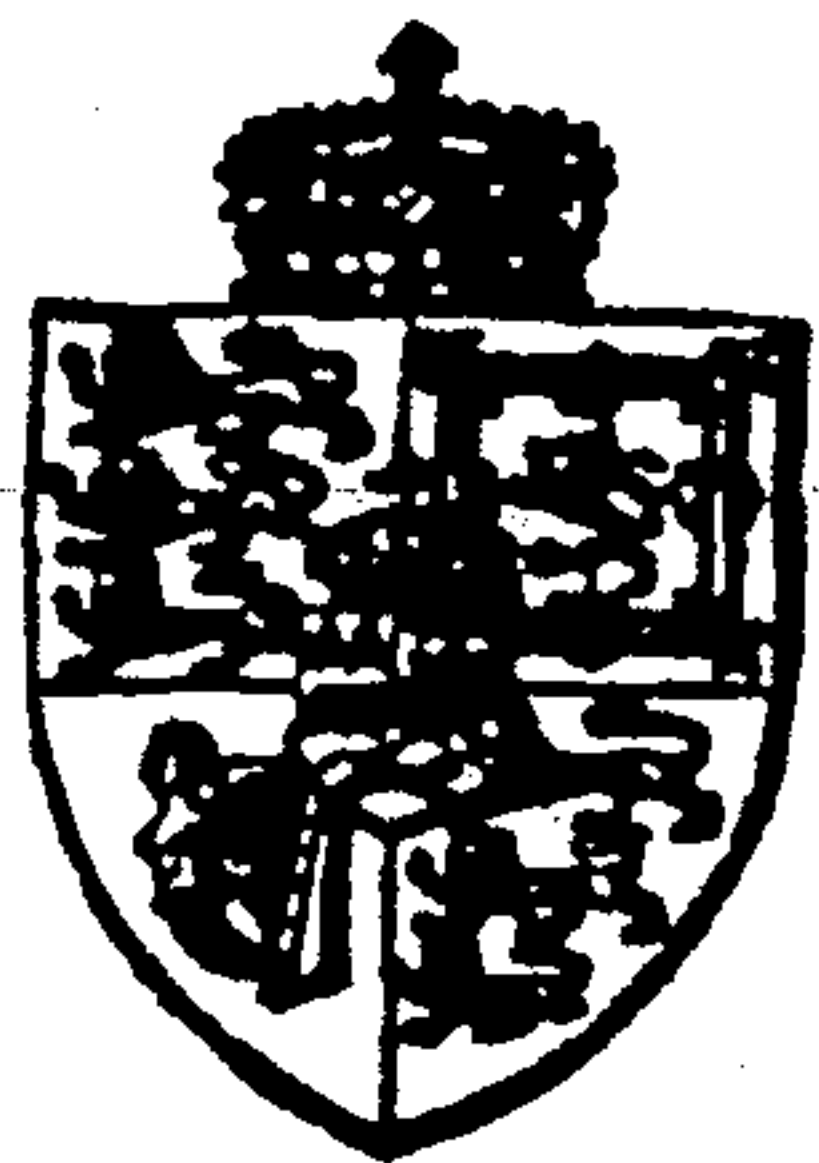
Queen of Great Britain,
France and Ireland



George I: 1714 - 1727
George II: 1727 - 1760

King of Great Britain, France and Ireland
Duke of Brunswick-Luneburg

F.8 - 4



George III: 1760 - 1820
George IV: 1820 - 1830
William IV: 1830 - 1837

King of Great Britain (France to 1801) and Ireland
Duke of Brunswick-Luneburg



Victoria: 1837 - 1901
Edward VII: 1901-1910
George V: 1910-1936
George VI: 1936-1952
Elizabeth II: 1952

King/Queen of the
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland

[for Elizabeth II: Queen of the
United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland]

F.8.2

Design of the crown



Prior to the reign of King Edward VII, there was no rule or custom regulating the design of representations of the crown when used with the royal cypher or separately for various official purposes. King Edward VII caused the arrangements to be regularized so that customarily, the design known as the Tudor crown would be shown with or without the royal cypher.

This design has varied to some extent in detail, but was in time generally used with or without the cypher in insignia or orders and decorations and medals, in coins, postage stamps, various badges of the services, rank badges, buttons, government publications, postal vans, government equipment, stores, etc.

This crown does not, however, represent any existing crown, and Queen Elizabeth II prefers the representation of the crown in designs to resemble the St. Edward's crown with which Her Majesty was crowned in the Coronation Service. This representation had already been adopted in the royal cypher. Her Majesty's wishes in regard to the representation of the crown are as follows:

- (i) The St. Edward's crown should take the place of the Tudor crown in all designs embodying a representation of the crown.
- (ii) Existing designs on decorations, medals, coins stamps, stationery, etc. should not be changed unless or until it is necessary to do so. Whenever, however, a design embodying the crown has for any reason to be changed, the St. Edward's crown should be substituted for the Tudor crown.
- (iii) No unnecessary expense should be incurred in making these changes, and where alterations in an existing design would involve such expense it should be deferred.

F.8.3

Royal cypher



The royal cypher is The Queen's monogram (Elizabeth II Regina) below a crown. It is used in insignia of Orders, in decorations and medals, on various badges, and on stationery. The use of the royal cypher denotes a close connection with the person of The Sovereign.

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.9

Royal patronage

F.9.1

Criteria

Criteria applied by the Department of Canadian Heritage in preparing the advice to the Governor General are as follows:

- an institution should have been in operation for a few years (at least five years, as a rule);
- it should be in a secure financial position;
- the patronage should not be associated with any fund raising campaign;
- the basic objectives of the institution should be worthy of encouragement, and,
- the institution should be national in scope.

F.9.2

List of Canadian organizations which have received Royal patronage

- **The Queen**
 - Canadian Cancer Society (1952);
 - Canadian Red Cross Society (1952);
 - Navy League of Canada (1952);
 - Royal Canadian Air Force Benevolent Fund (1952);
 - Royal Canadian Naval Benevolent Fund (1952);
 - Royal College of Physicians and Surgeons of Canada (1952);
 - Canadian Medical Association (1952);
 - Canadian National Exhibition Association (1952);
 - Royal Canadian Humane Association (1952);
 - Save the Children Canada (1952);
 - Imperial Order of the Daughters of the Empire (1953);
 - Royal Architectural Institute of Canada (1953);
 - Federated Women's Institutes of Canada (1953);
 - Canadian Nurses Association (1957);
 - Toronto French School (1979);
 - St. John's Ravenscourt School (1981); and
 - Canadian Naval Association (1995).

- **The Duke of Edinburgh**
 - Canadian Club (London);
 - Canadian Aeronautics and Space Institute;
 - Canadian Cutting Horse Association;
 - Canadian Power Squadrons;
 - Canadian Water Ski Association;
 - Dawson City Museum;
 - Haida Incorporated;
 - Naval Officers' Association of Canada;
 - Naval Officers' Club, Montréal;
 - Outward Bound Trust, Canada;
 - Royal Canadian Regiment Association;
 - Royal Canadian Yacht Club, Toronto;
 - Royal Nova Scotia Yacht Squadron;
 - Royal St. Lawrence Yacht Club;
 - St. James's Club, Montréal;
 - Vancouver Rowing Club;
 - World Affairs Canada;
 - Fondation de la faune du Québec (Honorary Life Member); and
 - Parksville - Qualicum Brant Festival, Qualicum, B.C.

- **Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother**
 - Canadian Mothercraft Society;
 - Canadian Red Cross Society;
 - Women's College Hospital (Toronto);
 - Law Society of Upper Canada (Honorary Member);
 - Victorian Order of Nurses in Canada (Grand President); and
 - Canadian Merchant Navy Prisoner of War Association.

- **The Prince of Wales**
 - Association of Canadian Underwater Councils;
 - Canadian Society of Painters in Water Colour (Honorary Member);
 - Royal Hamilton Yatch Club; and
 - Canadian Warplane Heritage Museum (Mount Hope).

- **The Duke of York**
 - Royal Alberta United Services Institute; and
 - Robert T. Jones, Jr Scholarship Foundation.

- **The Prince Edward**
 - Globe Theatre, Regina, Saskatchewan

- **The Princess Royal**
 - Canadian Therapeutic Riding Association.

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.10

Prefix "Royal"

F.10.1

Criteria

Criteria applied by the Department of Canadian Heritage in studying requests and preparing the advice to the Governor General:

An association or organization has to be

1. of pre-eminence in its field;
2. in a secure financial position;
3. established for 25 years (approx);
4. devoted to artistic, scientific, charitable or sport objects;
5. a non-profit organization under the Income Tax Act; and
6. its services being provided on at least a regional basis.

[Enunciated in a letter from the Under Secretary of State, dated February 7, 1980, to the Secretary of the Governor General]

F.10.2

List of civilian organizations with the prefix "Royal"

INSTITUTION	YEAR
Victoria	
Royal Halifax Yacht Club	1862
superseded by the Royal Nova Scotia Yacht Squadron in 1880	
Royal Canadian Academy of Arts	1880
Royal Nova Scotia Yacht Squadron	1880
Royal Society of Canada	1882
Royal Victoria Hospital	1887
Royal Victoria College	1888
Royal Hamilton Yacht Club	1891
filed for bankruptcy in 1983; titled reinstated in 1991	
Royal Canadian Humane Association	1894
Royal St. Lawrence Yacht Club of Montréal, QC	1894
Royal Toronto Sailing Skiff Club	1894
Royal Canadian Golf Association	1896
Royal Kennebecasis Yacht Club, Saint John, NB	1898
Edward VII	
Royal Cape Breton Yacht Club, Sydney, NS	1902
Royal Astronomical Society of Canada	1903
Royal Vancouver Yacht Club	1905
Royal Alexandra Hospital, Edmonton, AB	1907
Royal Architectural Institute	1908
Royal Edward Laurentian Sanatorium, Montréal, QC	1909
now named "Montréal Chest Hospital"	
George V	
Royal Guardians	1910
Royal Naval College of Canada	1910
Royal Victoria Yacht Club	1911
Royal Ottawa Golf Club, Aylmer, QC	1912
Royal Canadian Institute	1913
Royal Ottawa Sanatorium	1913
Royal Agricultural Winter Fair of Toronto, ON	1920
Royal Automobile Club of Canada	1923
absorbed by the Canadian Automobile Association	
Royal Lake of the Woods Yacht Club, Winnipeg, MB	1924
Royal Montréal Curling Club	1924
Royal College of Physicians and Surgeons of Canada	1929
Royal Botanical Gardens of Hamilton, Burlington, ON	1930
Royal Colwood Golf and Country Club, BC	1931
Royal Québec Golf Club	1934

George VI

Royal Canadian Sea Cadets	1942
Royal Canadian Flying Clubs Association	1944
Royal Toronto Conservatory of Music	1947

Elizabeth II

Royal Winnipeg Ballet	1953
Royal Canadian Geographical Society	1957
Royal Canadian College of Organists	1959
Royal Canadian Philatelic Society	1960
Royal Canadian Legion	1962
Royal Jubilee Hospital	1964
Royal Canadian Naval Association	1964
Royal College of Dentists of Canada	1964
Royal Newfoundland Yacht Club	1965
Royal Hamilton Conservatory of Music	1965
Royal Victoria Hospital of Barrie, ON	1966
Royal Western Nova Scotia Yacht Club	1969
Royal Manitoba Winter Fair	1970
Royal Hamilton and District Officers' Institute	1971
Royal United Services Institute of Vancouver Island, Victoria, BC	1972
Royal United Services Institute of Alberta	1975
Royal United Services Institute of Kingston, ON	1977
Royal United Services Institute of Regina, SK	1979
Royal Newfoundland Constabulary	1979
Royal Manitoba Yacht Club	1981
Royal United Services Institute of Manitoba	1982
Royal New Brunswick Rifle Association	1983
Royal Glenora Club, Edmonton, Alberta	1984
Royal Canadian Henley Regatta, St. Catharines, ON	1984
Royal British Columbia Museum, Victoria, BC	1987
Royal United Services Institute of Vancouver, BC	1989
Royal St. George's College, Toronto, ON	1989
Royal University Hospital, Saskatoon, SK	1990
Royal Tyrrell Museum of Palaeontology, Drumheller, AB	1990
Royal Hamilton Yacht Club, Hamilton, ON (first granted in 1891)	1991
Royal Saskatchewan Museum, Regina, SK	1993
Royal St. John's Regatta, St. John's, NF	1993
Royal Kingston Curling Club, Kingston, ON	1993
Royal United Services Institute of New Brunswick, Saint John, NB	1993

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.11

Royal households

- **The Queen**

The Right Honourable Sir Robert Fellowes, G.C.V.O., K.C.B.
Private Secretary to The Queen

The Right Honourable Sir Robin Janvrin, K.C.V.O., C.B.
Deputy Private Secretary

Mrs. Mary Francis
Assistant Private Secretary

Mr. Geoffrey Crawford
Press Secretary

Miss Penny Russell-Smith
Deputy Press Secretary

Mr. David Tuck
Assistant Press Secretary

- **The Duke of Edinburgh**

Brigadier Hunt Miles-Davis, C.V.O., C.B.E.
Private Secretary

- **Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother**

Captain Sir Alastair Aird, G.C.V.O.
Private Secretary

F.11 - 2

- **The Prince of Wales**

Mr. Stephen Lamport
Private Secretary and Treasurer to The Prince of Wales

Mr. Mark Bolland
Deputy Private Secretary

Mr. Nicholas Archer
Assistant Private Secretary

Mrs. Sandy Henney
Press Secretary

Mrs. Colleen Harris
Deputy Press Secretary

- **The Duke of York**

Captain (N) Neil Blair, L.V.O., R.N.
Private Secretary

- **The Prince Edward**

Lieutenant Colonel Sean O'Dwyer, L.V.O.
Private Secretary

- **The Princess Royal**

Mr. Rupert McGuigan
Private Secretary

The Honourable Mrs. Louloudis
Assistant Private Secretary

- **The Princess Margaret, Countess of Snowdon**

Viscount Ullswater
Private Secretary

- **The Duke and Duchess of Gloucester**

Major Nicholas Barnes
Private Secretary

- **The Duke and Duchess of Kent**

Mr. Nick Adamson, O.B.E.
Private Secretary

- **Prince and Princess Michael of Kent**

Lieutenant Colonel Sir Christopher Thompson, Bt
Private Secretary

- **Princess Alexandra, the Honourable Lady Ogilvy**

Captain (N) Neil Blair, L.V.O., R.N.
Private Secretary

F

ROYAL FAMILY

F.12

Offices of the royal households

- **The Queen**

Buckingham Palace
London SW1A 1AA
011-44171-930-4832

- **The Duke of Edinburgh**

Buckingham Palace
London SW1A 1AA
011-44171-930-4832

- **Queen Elizabeth The Queen Mother**

Clarence House
London SW1A 1AA
011-44171-930-3141

- **The Prince of Wales**

St. James's Palace
London SW1A 1BS
011-44171-930-4832

- **The Duke of York**

Buckingham Palace
London SW1A 1AA
011-44171-930-4832

F.12 - 2

- **The Prince Edward**

Buckingham Palace
London SW1A 1AA
011-44171-930-4832

- **The Princess Royal**

Buckingham Palace
London SW1A 1AA
011-44171-930-4832

- **The Princess Margaret, Countess of Snowdon**

Kensington Palace
London SW8 4PU
011-44171-930-3141

- **The Princess Alice, Duchess of Gloucester**

Kensington Palace
London SW8 4PU
011-44171-937-6374

- **The Duke and Duchess of Gloucester**

Kensington Palace
London SW8 4PU
011-44171-937-6374

- **The Duke and Duchess of Kent**

York House
St. James's Palace
London SW1A 1BS
011-44171-930-4872

- **Prince and Princess Michael of Kent**

Kensington Palace
London SW8 4PU
011-44171-937-9774

- **Princess Alexandra, the Honourable Lady Ogilvy**

22, Friary Court
St. James's Palace
London SW1A 1BS
011-44171-930-1860



Chapter G

Governor General



GOVERNOR GENERAL

G.1

List of governors general since 1867

	Date of installation
Sir Charles Stanley, Viscount Monck of Ballytrammon (1819-1894)	1867.07.01
Sir John Young, Baron Lisgar of Lisgar and Baillieborough (1807-1876)	1869.02.02
Frederick Temple Hamilton Blackwood, Earl of Dufferin (later Marquess of Dufferin and Ava) (1826-1902)	1872.06.25
John Douglas Sutherland Campbell, Marquess of Lorne (later Duke of Argyll) (1845-1914)	1878.11.20
Henry Charles Keith Petty-Fitzmaurice, Marquess of Lansdowne (1845-1927)	1883.10.23
Frederick Arthur Stanley, Baron Stanley of Preston (later Earl of Derby) (1841-1908)	1888.06.11
John Campbell Hamilton-Gordon, Earl of Aberdeen (later Marquess of Aberdeen and Temair) (1847-1934)	1893.11.18
Gilbert John Elliott Murray-Kynynmound, Earl of Minto (1845-1914)	1898.11.12
Albert Henry George Grey, Earl Grey (1851-1917)	1904.12.10

G.1 - 2

His Royal Highness The Prince Arthur, Duke of Connaught (1850-1942)	1911.10.13
Victor Christian William Cavendish, Duke of Devonshire (1868-1938)	1916.11.11
General Julian Byng, Baron Byng of Vimy and of Thorpe (1862-1935)	1921.08.11
Freeman Freeman-Thomas, Baron Willingdon of Ratton (later Earl of Willingdon) (1866-1941)	1926.11.02
Vere Brabazon Ponsonby, Earl of Bessborough (1880-1956)	1931.04.04
John Buchan, Baron Tweedsmuir (1875-1940)	1935.11.02
Major General Alexander George Cambridge, Earl of Athlone (1874-1957)	1940.06.21
Field Marshall Sir Harold George Alexander, Viscount Alexander of Tunis (later Earl Alexander of Tunis) (1891-1969)	1946.04.18
The Right Honourable Vincent Massey (1887-1967)	1952.02.22
General the Right Honourable Georges P. Vanier (1888-1967)	1959.09.15
The Right Honourable Daniel Roland Michener (1900-1991)	1967.04.15
The Right Honourable Jules Léger (1913-1980)	1974.01.14
The Right Honourable Edward Richard Schreyer (1935 -)	1979.01.22

The Right Honourable Jeanne Sauvé
(1922-1993)

1984.05.14

The Right Honourable Ramon John Hnatyshyn
(1934-)

1990.01.21

The Right Honourable Roméo LeBlanc
(1927-)

1995.02.08

G

GOVERNOR GENERAL

G.2

List of governors, governors general and administrators since Samuel de Champlain

- **Canada (1612-1760)**

Samuel de Champlain	1612-1629
Louis Kirke	1629-1632
Eméry de Caen	1632-1633
Duplessis Bochart	1632-1633
Samuel de Champlain (*1635)	1633-1635
<u>adm.</u> Marc-Antoine Bras-de-Fer de Chateaufort	1635-1636
Charles Huault de Montmagny	1636-1648
Louis d'Ailleboust de Coulonge	1648-1651
Jean de Lauzon (*1666)	1651-1657
<u>adm.</u> Louis d'Ailleboust de Coulonge (*1660)	1657-1658
Pierre Voyer, Viscount of Argenson (*1710)	1658-1661
Pierre Dubois, Baron of Avaugour (*1664)	1661-1663
Augustin de Saffray Mézy (*1665)	1663-1665
<u>adm.</u> Jacques LeNeuf de LaPotherie	1665
Daniel de Rémy de Courcelles (*1693)	1665-1672
Louis de Buade, Count of Palluau and of Frontenac	1672-1682

(*Year of death)

G.2 - 2

Lefebvre de La Barre (*1688)	1682-1685
Jacques-René de Brisay, Marquess of Denonville	1685-1689
Louis de Buade, Count of Palluau and of Frontenac (*1698)	1689-1698
<u>adm.</u> Louis-Hector de Callières	1698-1699
Louis-Hector de Callières (*1703)	1699-1703
<u>adm.</u> Philippe de Rigaud, Marquess of Vaudreuil	1703-1705
Philippe de Rigaud, Marquess of Vaudreuil (*1725)	1705-1725
<u>adm.</u> Claude de Ramesay	1714-1716
<u>adm.</u> Charles LeMoyne, Baron of Longueuil	1725-1726
Charles de Beauharnois (*1749)	1726-1747
<u>adm.</u> Roland Michel Barrin, Marquess of LaGalissonnière	1747-1749
Jacques-Pierre de Taffanel, Marquess of La Jonquière (*1752)	1749-1752
<u>adm.</u> Charles LeMoyne, Baron of Longueuil	1752
Marquess Michel-Ange de Duquesne of Menneville	1752-1755
Pierre de Rigaud, Marquess of Vaudreuil-Cavagnal (*1778)	1755-1760
• Military Governor	
Sir Jeffery Amherst	1759-1763
• Province of Quebec	
General James Murray	1764-1768
<u>adm.</u> Colonel Paulus Aemilius Irving (*1796)	1766
<u>adm.</u> Sir Guy Carleton	1766-1768
Sir Guy Carleton	1768-1778
<u>adm.</u> Hector Theophilus Cramahe	1770-1774

(*Year of death)

General Sir Frederick Haldimand (*1791)	1778-1786
<u>adm.</u> Henry Hamilton	1784-1785
<u>adm.</u> Henry Pope	1795-1786
Sir Guy Carleton, Baron of Dorchester	1786-1791
• Canada	
Sir Guy Carleton, Baron of Dorchester	1791-1796
<u>adm.</u> Alured Clarke	1791-1793
<u>adm.</u> General Robert Prescott	1796-1797
General Robert Prescott	1797-1807
<u>adm.</u> Robert Shore Milner	1799-1805
<u>adm.</u> Thomas Dunn	1805-1807
Sir James Henry Craig	1807-1811
<u>adm.</u> Thomas Dunn	1811
<u>adm.</u> Sir George Prevost	1811-1812
<u>adm.</u> Major General Isaac Brock	1812
Sir George Prevost	1812-1815
<u>adm.</u> Baron Francis deRottenburg	1813
<u>adm.</u> Major General George Glasgow	1813
<u>adm.</u> Baron Francis deRottenburg	1814
<u>adm.</u> Sir Gordon Drummond	1815-1816
<u>adm.</u> Major General John Wilson	1816
Sir John Coope Sherbrooke	1816-1818
Charles Lennox, Duke of Richmond (*1819)	1818-1819
<u>adm.</u> James Monk	1819
<u>adm.</u> George Ramsey, Earl of Dalhousie	1819
<u>adm.</u> Sir Peregrine Maitland	1820
George Ramsey, Earl of Dalhousie	1820-1828
<u>adm.</u> Sir F.N. Burton	1824-1825
<u>adm.</u> Sir James Kempt	1828-1830
Matthew Whitworth, Baron Aylmer	1831-1835

(*Year of death)

G.2 - 4

Archibald Acheson, Earl of Gosford <u>adm.</u> Sir John Colborne	1835-1838
John George Lambton, Earl of Durham (*1838)	1838
Sir John Colborne, Baron Seaton (*1863)	1838-1839
Sir Charles Edward Poulett-Thomson, Baron Sydenham (*1841) <u>adm.</u> Sir Richard Downes Jackson	1839-1841 1841-1842
Sir Charles Bagot (*1843)	1842-1843
Sir Charles Theophilus Baron Metcalfe (*1846) <u>adm.</u> Charles Murray, Baron Cathcart	1843-1845 1845-1846
Charles Murray, Baron Cathcart (*1859)	1846-1847
James Bruce, Earl of Elgin (*1863) <u>adm.</u> William Rowan	1847-1854 1853-1854
Sir Edmund W. Head <u>adm.</u> Lt. General Sir William Eyre <u>adm.</u> Sir William F. Williams <u>adm.</u> Sir Charles Stanley, Viscount Monck	1854-1861 1857 1860-1861 1861
Sir Charles Stanley, Viscount Monck <u>adm.</u> Lt. General Sir John Michell <u>adm.</u> Lt. General Sir John Michell	1861-1867 1865-1866 1867
• Confederation	
Sir Charles Stanley, Viscount Monck of Ballytrammon (*1894) <u>adm.</u> Sir John Windham <u>adm.</u> Sir John Young	1867-1868 1868 1868-1869
Sir John Young, Baron Lisgar of Lisgar and Baillieborough (*1876) <u>adm.</u> Lt. General Sir Charles H. Doyle	1869-1872 1872
Frederick Temple Hamilton Blackwood, Earl of Dufferin (*1902)	1872-1878

(*Year of death)

John Douglas Sutherland Campbell, Marquess of Lorne (*1914)	1878-1883
Henry Charles Keith Petty-Fitzmaurice, Marquess of Lansdowne (*1927)	1883-1888
Frederick Arthur Stanley, Baron Stanley of Preston (*1908)	1888-1893
John Campbell Hamilton-Gordon, Earl of Aberdeen	1893-1898
Gilbert John Elliott Murray-Kynynmound, Earl of Minto (*1914)	1898-1904
Albert Henry George Grey, Earl Grey (*1917)	1902-1911
His Royal Highness The Prince Arthur, Duke of Connaught	1911-1916
Victor Christian William Cavendish, Duke of Devonshire	1916-1921
General Julian Hedworth George Byng, Earl Byng of Vimy and of Thorpe	1921-1926
Freeman Freeman-Thomas, Baron Willingdon of Ratton	1926-1931
Vere Brabazon Ponsonby, Earl of Bessborough	1931-1935
John Buchan, Baron Tweedsmuir (*1940) <u>adm.</u> The Right Honourable Thibaudeau Rinfret	1935-1940 1940
Major General Alexander George Cambridge, Earl of Athlone (*1957)	1940-1946
Marshall Sir George Alexander, Viscount Alexander of Tunis (*1964) <u>adm.</u> The Right Honourable Thibaudeau Rinfret	1936-1952 1952
The Right Honourable Vincent Massey (*1967)	1952-1959
General the Right Honourable Georges P. Vanier (*1967) <u>adm.</u> The Honourable Patrick Kerwin <u>adm.</u> The Honourable Patrick Kerwin <u>adm.</u> The Honourable Robert Taschereau <u>adm.</u> The Right Honourable Robert Taschereau	1959-1967 1960 1961 1963 1967

(*Year of death)

G.2 - 6

The Right Honourable Daniel Roland Michener (*1991)	1967-1974
The Right Honourable Jules Léger (*1980)	1974-1979
<u>adm.</u> The Right Honourable Bora Laskin	1974
The Right Honourable Edward Richard Schreyer	1979-1984
The Right Honourable Jeanne Sauvé (*1993)	1984-1990
The Right Honourable Ramon J. Hnatyshyn	1990-1995
The Right Honourable Roméo LeBlanc	1995-

(*Year of death)

G

GOVERNOR GENERAL

G.3

Letters Patent

No. 31

LETTERS PATENT CONSTITUTING THE OFFICE OF GOVERNOR GENERAL OF CANADA

Effective October 1, 1947

"GEORGE R."

CANADA

George the Sixth, by the Grace of God, of Great Britain, Ireland and the British Dominions beyond the Seas King, Defender of the Faith.

[SEAL]

To All To Whom these Presents shall come,

GREETING:

Whereas by certain Letters Patent under the Great Seal bearing date at Westminster the Twenty-third day of March, 1931, His late Majesty King George the Fifth did constitute, order, and declare that there should be a Governor General and Commander-in-Chief in and over Canada, and that the person filling the office of Governor General and Commander-in-Chief should be from time to time appointed by Commission under the Royal Sign Manual and Signet:

And whereas at St. James's on the Twenty-third day of March, 1931, His late Majesty King George the Fifth did cause certain Instructions under the Royal Sign Manual and Signet to be given to the Governor General and Commander-in-Chief:

And whereas it is Our Will and pleasure to revoke the Letters Patent and Instructions and to substitute other provisions in place thereof:

Now therefore We do by these presents revoke and determine the said Letters Patent,

Preamble
Recites Letters
Patent of 23rd
March, 1931

Revokes Letters
Patent of 23rd
March, 1931,
and Instruc-
tions

N° 31.

LETTRES PATENTES CONSTITUANT LA CHARGE DE GOUVERNEUR GÉNÉRAL DU CANADA

Applicables à partir du 1er octobre 1947

«GEORGE R.»

CANADA

George VI, par la grâce de Dieu, roi de Grande-Bretagne, d'Irlande et des territoires britanniques au-delà des mers, défenseur de la foi.

[SCEAU]

A tous ceux qui les présentes verront,

SALUT:

Considérant que, par certaines lettres patentes sous le Grand Sceau, datées, à Westminster, du vingt-troisième jour de mars 1931, feu Sa Majesté le roi George V a constitué, ordonné et déclaré qu'il devrait y avoir un gouverneur général et commandant en chef dans et sur le Canada, et que la personne remplissant ladite charge de gouverneur général et commandant en chef devrait être nommée, à l'occasion, par une commission sous les seing et sceau royaux;

Considérant qu'à Saint-James, le vingt-troisième jour de mars 1931, feu Sa Majesté le roi George V a fait remettre sous les seing et sceau royaux certaines instructions au gouverneur général et commandant en chef;

Et considérant qu'il Nous plaît de révoquer lesdites lettres patentes et instructions et de les remplacer par d'autres dispositions;

A ces causes, Nous révoquons et terminons, par les présentes, lesdites lettres patentes et tout ce qu'elles renferment, ainsi que toutes leurs modifications, et lesdites instructions,

Preamble.
Énonciation des
lettres patentes
du 23 mars
1931

Révocation des
lettres patentes
du 23 mars
1931 et des ins-
tructions

G.3-2

2

No. 31

Letters Patent, Governor General, 1947

and everything therein contained, and all amendments thereto, and the said Instructions, but without prejudice to anything lawfully done thereunder:

And We do declare Our Will and pleasure as follows:

Office of Governor General and Commander-in-Chief constituted

I. We do hereby constitute, order, and declare that there shall be a Governor General and Commander-in-Chief in and over Canada, and appointments to the Office of Governor General and Commander-in-Chief in and over Canada shall be made by Commission under Our Great Seal of Canada.

His powers and authorities

II. And We do hereby authorize and empower Our Governor General, with the advice of Our Privy Council for Canada or of any members thereof or individually, as the case requires, to exercise all powers and authorities lawfully belonging to Us in respect of Canada, and for greater certainty but not so as to restrict the generality of the foregoing to do and execute, in the manner aforesaid, all things that may belong to his office and to the trust We have reposed in him according to the several powers and authorities granted or appointed him by virtue of the Constitution Acts, 1867 to 1940 and the powers and authorities hereinafter conferred in these Letters Patent and in such Commission as may be issued to him under Our Great Seal of Canada and under such laws as are or may hereinafter be in force in Canada.

[Note: The original text mentioned the "British North America Acts, 1867 to 1946". The B.N.A. Acts, 1943 and 1946 were repealed by the *Constitution Act, 1982* (No. 44 *infra*).]

Great Seal

III. And We do hereby authorize and empower Our Governor General to keep and use Our Great Seal of Canada for sealing all things whatsoever that may be passed under Our Great Seal of Canada.

Appointment of Judges, Justices, etc.

IV. And We do further authorize and empower Our Governor General to constitute and appoint, in Our name and on Our behalf, all such Judges, Commissioners, Justices of the Peace, and other necessary Officers (including diplomatic and consular officers) and Ministers of Canada, as may be lawfully constituted or appointed by Us.

Suspension or removal from Office

V. And We do further authorize and empower Our Governor General, so far as We lawfully may, upon sufficient cause to him appearing, to remove from his office, or to suspend from the exercise of the same, any person

mais sans préjudice des actes valablement accomplis sous leur régime:

Et Nous déclarons qu'il Nous plaît de mander ce qui suit:

I. Nous constituons, ordonnons et déclarons, par les présentes, qu'il doit exister un gouverneur général et commandant en chef dans et sur le Canada et que les nominations à la charge de gouverneur général et commandant en chef dans et sur le Canada doivent être faites par commission sous Notre Grand Sceau du Canada.

Constitution de la charge de gouverneur général et commandant en chef

II. Et, par les présentes, Nous autorisons Notre gouverneur général, sur l'avis de Notre Conseil Privé pour le Canada, ou de tous membres dudit Conseil ou individuellement, selon l'exigence du cas, à exercer tous les pouvoirs et attributions dont Nous sommes valablement investi à l'égard du Canada, et, pour plus de certitude, mais sans restreindre la portée générale de ce qui précède, à faire et exécuter, de la manière susdite, tout ce qui peut ressortir à sa charge et à la confiance que nous avons mise en lui en conformité des divers pouvoirs et attributions qui lui ont été accordés ou destinés en vertu des Lois constitutionnelles de 1867 à 1940, et des pouvoirs et attributions ci-après conférés par les présentes lettres patentes et dans toute commission qui pourra lui être décernée sous Notre Grand Sceau du Canada et sous le régime des lois qui sont ou pourront être en vigueur au Canada.

Ses pouvoirs et attributions

[Note: Le texte original mentionnait les «Actes de l'Amérique du Nord britannique, de 1867 à 1946». Les lois de 1943 et de 1946 ont été abrogées par la *Loi constitutionnelle de 1982* (n° 44 *infra*).]

III. Et Nous autorisons, par les présentes, Notre gouverneur général à garder et employer Notre Grand Sceau du Canada pour sceller tout ce qui pourra être établi sous Notre Grand Sceau du Canada.

Grand Sceau

IV. Et Nous autorisons en outre Notre gouverneur général à créer et nommer, en Notre nom et pour Nous, tous les juges, commissaires, juges de paix et autres fonctionnaires et officiers nécessaires (y compris les fonctionnaires diplomatiques et consulaires) et ministres du Canada qui pourront être valablement créés ou nommés par Nous.

Nomination de juges, etc.

V. Et Nous autorisons en outre Notre gouverneur général, dans la mesure où cela Nous est valablement possible, pour une raison lui apparaissant suffisante, à démettre de ses fonctions, ou à suspendre de l'exercice de celles-ci,

Suspension ou destitution

exercising any office within Canada, under or by virtue of any Commission or Warrant granted, or which may be granted, by Us in Our name or under Our authority.

Summoning, proroguing, or dissolving the Parliament of Canada

VI. And We do further authorize and empower Our Governor General to exercise all powers lawfully belonging to Us in respect of summoning, proroguing or dissolving the Parliament of Canada.

Power to appoint Deputies

VII. And Whereas by the Constitution Acts, 1867 to 1940, it is amongst other things enacted that it shall be lawful for Us, if We think fit, to authorize Our Governor General to appoint any person or persons, jointly or severally, to be his Deputy or Deputies within any part or parts of Canada, and in that capacity to exercise, during the pleasure of Our Governor General, such of the powers, authorities, and functions of Our Governor General as he may deem it necessary or expedient to assign to such Deputy or Deputies, subject to any limitations or directions from time to time expressed or given by Us: Now We do hereby authorize and empower Our Governor General, subject to such limitations and directions, to appoint any person or persons, jointly or severally, to be his Deputy or Deputies within any part or parts of Canada, and in that capacity to exercise, during his pleasure, such of his powers, functions, and authorities as he may deem it necessary or expedient to assign to him or them: Provided always, that the appointment of such a Deputy or Deputies shall not affect the exercise of any such power, authority or function by Our Governor General in person.

[Note: See the note to clause II.]

Succession

VIII. And We do hereby declare Our pleasure to be that, in the event of the death, incapacity, removal, or absence of Our Governor General out of Canada, all and every the powers and authorities herein granted to him shall, until Our further pleasure is signified therein, be vested in Our Chief Justice for the time being of Canada, (hereinafter called Our Chief Justice) or, in the case of the death, incapacity, removal or absence out of Canada of Our Chief Justice, then in the Senior Judge for the time being of the Supreme Court of Canada, then residing in Canada and not being under incapacity; such Chief Justice or Senior Judge of the Supreme Court of Canada, while the said powers and authorities are vested in him, to be known as Our Administrator.

toute personne remplissant une charge au Canada, sous le régime ou en vertu d'une commission ou d'un brevet accordé, ou qui pourra être accordé, par Nous en Notre nom ou sous Notre autorité.

VI. Et Nous autorisons en outre Notre gouverneur général à exercer tous les pouvoirs que Nous possédons valablement en ce qui concerne la convocation, la prorogation ou la dissolution du Parlement du Canada.

Convocation, prorogation ou dissolution du Parlement du Canada

VII. Et considérant que, par les Lois constitutionnelles de 1867 à 1940, il est prévu, entre autres choses, qu'il Nous sera loisible, si Nous le jugeons à propos, d'autoriser Notre gouverneur général à nommer une ou plusieurs personnes, conjointement ou séparément, pour agir comme son ou ses suppléants dans quelque partie ou toutes parties du Canada, et exercer, en cette qualité, durant le plaisir de Notre gouverneur général, les pouvoirs, attributions et fonctions de Notre gouverneur général que celui-ci jugera nécessaire ou opportun d'assigner à ce ou ces suppléants, sous réserve de toutes restrictions ou instructions formulées ou communiquées, au besoin, par Nous: A ces causes, Nous autorisons par les présentes Notre gouverneur général, sous réserve des restrictions et instructions susmentionnées, à nommer une ou plusieurs personnes, conjointement ou séparément, pour agir comme son ou ses suppléants, dans quelque partie ou toutes parties du Canada et exercer en cette qualité, durant son plaisir, les pouvoirs, attributions et fonctions de Notre gouverneur général que celui-ci jugera nécessaire ou opportun d'assigner à ce ou ces suppléants. Toutefois, la nomination de ce ou ces suppléants ne doit pas porter atteinte à l'exercice de l'un quelconque de ces pouvoirs, attributions ou fonctions par Notre gouverneur général en personne.

Pouvoir de nommer des suppléants

[Note : Voir la note de l'article II.]

VIII. Et Nous déclarons, par les présentes, qu'il Nous plaît que, en cas de décès, incapacité, renvoi ou absence de Notre gouverneur général hors du Canada, tous et chacun des pouvoirs et attributions qui lui sont ici accordés doivent, jusqu'à ce que Notre nouveau plaisir y soit signifié, être dévolus à Notre juge en chef du Canada à l'époque considérée (ci-après désigné comme Notre juge en chef), ou, en cas de décès, d'incapacité, de renvoi ou d'absence hors du Canada, de Notre juge en chef, ensuite au juge alors le plus ancien de la Cour suprême du Canada, résidant à l'époque au Canada et

Succession

Provided always, that the said Senior Judge shall act in the administration of the Government only if and when Our Chief Justice shall not be present within Canada and capable of administering the Government.

Proviso.
Administrator
to take oaths of
office before
administering
the Government

Provided further that no such powers or authorities shall vest in such Chief Justice, or other judge of the Supreme Court of Canada, until he shall have taken the Oaths appointed to be taken by Our Governor General.

Provided further that whenever and so often as Our Governor General shall be temporarily absent from Canada, with Our permission, for a period not exceeding one month, then and in every such case Our Governor General may continue to exercise all and every the powers vested in him as fully as if he were residing within Canada, including the power to appoint a Deputy or Deputies as provided in the Seventh Clause of these Our Letters Patent.

Officers and
others to obey
and assist the
Governor Gen-
eral

IX. And We do hereby require and command all Our Officers and Ministers, Civil and Military, and all the other inhabitants of Canada, to be obedient, aiding, and assisting unto Our Governor General, or, in the event of his death, incapacity, or absence, to such person as may, from time to time, under the provisions of these Our Letters Patent administer the Government of Canada.

Publication of
Governor Gen-
eral's Commis-
sion

X. And We hereby declare Our Pleasure to be that Our Governor General for the time being shall, with all due solemnity, cause Our Commission under Our Great Seal of Canada, appointing Our Governor General for the time being, to be read and published in the presence of Our Chief Justice, or other Judge of the Supreme Court of Canada, and of members of Our Privy Council for Canada, and that Our Governor General shall take the Oath of Allegiance in the form following:— "I, do swear that I will be faithful and bear true allegiance to His Majesty King George the Sixth, His Heirs and successors, according to law. So Help me God"; and likewise he shall take the usual Oath for the due execution of the Office of Our Governor General and Commander-in-Chief in and over Canada, and for the due and impartial administration of justice; which Oaths Our Chief Justice, or, in his absence, or in the event of his being otherwise incapacitated, any Judge of the Supreme Court of Canada shall, and he is hereby required to, tender and administer unto him.

Oaths to be
taken by Gover-
nor General,
etc.

n'étant pas frappé d'incapacité. Ledit juge en chef ou juge le plus ancien de la Cour suprême du Canada, tant qu'il sera investi desdits pouvoirs et attributions, sera appelé Notre administrateur.

Toutefois, ce juge le plus ancien ne doit agir dans l'administration du Gouvernement que si Notre dit juge en chef ne se trouve pas au Canada et n'est pas capable d'administrer le Gouvernement.

Cependant, aucun de ces pouvoirs ou attributions ne devra être dévolu audit juge en chef ou autre juge de la Cour suprême du Canada tant qu'il n'aura pas prêté les serments destinés à être prêtés par Notre gouverneur général.

En outre, chaque fois et aussi souvent que Notre gouverneur général s'absentera temporairement du Canada, avec Notre permission, pour une période n'excédant pas un mois, Notre gouverneur général pourra alors et dans chacun de ces cas continuer à exercer tous et chacun des pouvoirs à lui dévolus aussi complètement que s'il résidait au Canada, y compris le pouvoir de nommer un ou des suppléants ainsi qu'il est prévu à l'Article VII de Nos présentes lettres patentes.

IX. Et Nous mandons et ordonnons, par les présentes, à tous Nos officiers, fonctionnaires et ministres, civils et militaires, et à toutes les autres personnes qui habitent le Canada, d'obéir, d'aider et de prêter leur concours à Notre gouverneur général, ou, advenant son décès, son incapacité ou son absence, à la personne qui peut, à l'occasion, administrer le Gouvernement du Canada, sous le régime de Nos présentes lettres patentes.

X. Et Nous déclarons par les présentes qu'il Nous plaît que Notre gouverneur général du jour fasse, avec toute la solennité voulue, lire et publier Notre commission sous Notre Grand Sceau du Canada, nommant Notre gouverneur général du jour en présence de Notre juge en chef, ou autre juge de la Cour suprême du Canada, et de membres de Notre Conseil privé pour le Canada, et que Notre gouverneur général prête le serment d'allégeance selon la formule suivante: «Je, jure d'être fidèle et de porter une sincère allégeance à Sa Majesté le roi George VI, à Ses héritiers et à Ses successeurs, en conformité de la loi. Ainsi Dieu me soit en aide»; et que, de même, il prête le serment ordinaire pour l'accomplissement régulier des fonctions de Notre gouverneur général et commandant en chef dans et sur le

Réserve:
prestation de
serment d'office,
par le lieute-
nant-gouver-
neur, etc., avant
d'administrer le
Gouvernement

Les officiers,
fonctionnaires
et ministres doi-
vent obéir et
prêter leur con-
cours au gou-
verneur général

Publication de
la commission
du gouverneur
général

G.3-5

Gouverneur général (1947)

N° 31

Oaths to be
administered by
the Governor
General

XI. And We do authorize and require Our Governor General from time to time, by himself or by any other person to be authorized by him in that behalf, to administer to all and to every person or persons, as he shall think fit, who shall hold any office or place of trust or profit in Canada, that said Oath of Allegiance, together with such other Oath or Oaths as may from time to time be prescribed by any Laws or Statutes in that behalf made and provided.

Grant of Par-
dons.
Remission of
Fines.
Regulations of
Power of Par-
don

XII. And We do further authorize and empower Our Governor General, as he shall see occasion, in Our name and on Our behalf, when any crime or offence against the laws of Canada has been committed for which the offender may be tried thereunder, to grant a pardon to any accomplice, in such crime or offence, who shall give such information as shall lead to the conviction of the principal offender, or of any one of such offenders if more than one; and further to grant to any offender convicted of any such crime or offence in any Court, or before any Judge, Justice, or Magistrate, administering the laws of Canada, a pardon, either free or subject to lawful conditions, or any respite of the execution of the sentence of any such offender, for such period as to Our Governor General may seem fit, and to remit any fines, penalties, or forfeitures which may become due and payable to Us. And We do hereby direct and enjoin that Our Governor General shall not pardon or reprieve any such offender without first receiving in capital cases the advice of Our Privy Council for Canada and, in other cases, the advice of one, at least, of his Ministers.

Power to issue
Exequaturs

XIII. And We do further authorize and empower Our Governor General to issue Exequaturs, in Our name and on Our behalf, to Consular Officers of foreign countries to whom Commissions of Appointment have been issued by the Heads of States of such countries.

Governor Gen-
eral's absence

XIV. And whereas great prejudice may happen to Our Service and to the security of Canada by the absence of Our Governor General, he shall not quit Canada without having first obtained leave from Us for so doing through the Prime Minister of Canada.

Power reserved
to His Majesty
to revoke, alter
or amend the
present Letters
Patent

XV. And We do hereby reserve to Ourselves, Our heirs and successors, full power and authority from time to time to revoke, alter, or amend these Our Letters Patent as to Us or them shall seem meet.

Canada, et pour l'administration convenable et impartiale de la justice; lesquels serments Notre juge en chef ou, en son absence ou s'il est autrement frappé d'incapacité, tout juge de la Cour suprême du Canada, doit lui déférer et faire prêter, et il en est requis par les présentes.

XI. Et Nous autorisons et obligeons Notre dit gouverneur général, par lui-même ou par toute autre personne devant être autorisée par lui à cette fin, à déférer, au besoin, à toutes et à chacune des personnes qui occuperont une charge ou un poste de confiance ou comportant une rémunération au Canada, ledit serment d'allégeance, ainsi que tout autre ou tous autres serments qui peuvent être prescrits, à l'occasion, par des lois ou statuts établis à cette fin.

Serments
devant être
déférés par le
gouverneur
général

XII. Et Nous autorisons en outre Notre gouverneur général, selon qu'il le jugera opportun, en Notre nom et pour Nous, lorsqu'un crime ou une infraction aux lois du Canada a été commise pour laquelle le délinquant peut subir un procès en vertu desdites lois, à gracier tout complice, à l'égard de ce crime ou de cette infraction, qui fournira des renseignements pouvant amener la condamnation du délinquant principal, ou de l'un quelconque de ces délinquants, s'il y en a plusieurs; et de plus à accorder à tout délinquant déclaré coupable de tel crime ou infraction devant n'importe quel tribunal, ou devant n'importe quel juge, juge de paix ou magistrat administrant les lois du Canada, un pardon, soit libre, soit sujet à des conditions licites, ou un sursis à l'exécution de la sentence de ce délinquant, pendant la période que Notre gouverneur général pourra juger pertinente, et à faire remise de toute amende, peine ou confiscation qui peut Nous devenir due et payable. Et Nous mandons et ordonnons que Notre gouverneur général n'accorde aucune grâce ni aucun sursis à un tel délinquant sans avoir préalablement obtenu, dans les cas de peine de mort, l'avis de Notre Conseil privé pour le Canada et, dans d'autres cas, l'avis d'au moins un de ses ministres.

Grâces

XIII. Et Nous autorisons en outre Notre gouverneur général à délivrer des exequatur, en Notre nom et de Notre part, aux représentants consulaires des pays étrangers, à qui des commissions de nomination ont été délivrées par les chefs d'Etat desdits pays.

Pouvoir de déli-
vrer des exe-
quatur

XIV. Et considérant que l'absence de Notre gouverneur général peut causer un tort considérable à Notre service et à la sécurité du Canada, il ne doit pas quitter le Canada sans

Absence du
gouverneur
général

G.3-6

6

No. 31

Letters Patent, Governor General, 1947

Publication of
Letters Patent

XVI. And We do further direct and enjoin that these Our Letters Patent shall be read and proclaimed at such place or places within Canada as Our Governor General shall think fit.

Coming into
effect of Letters
Patent

XVII. And We do further declare that these Our Letters Patent shall take effect on the first day of October, 1947.

In witness whereof We have caused these Our Letters to be made Patent, and for the greater testimony and validity thereof, We have caused Our Great Seal of Canada to be affixed to these presents, which We have signed with Our Royal Hand.

Given the eighth day of September in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Forty-Seven and in the Eleventh Year of Our Reign.

BY HIS MAJESTY'S COMMAND,

W. L. MACKENZIE KING,
Prime Minister of Canada

que Nous le lui ayons permis par l'entremise du premier ministre du Canada.

XV. Et, par les présentes, Nous Nous réservons, ainsi qu'à Nos héritiers et successeurs, le plein pouvoir et la pleine faculté, au besoin, de révoquer, changer ou modifier Nos présentes lettres patentes selon qu'il semblera Nous convenir ou leur convenir.

XVI. Et Nous mandons et ordonnons en outre que Nos présentes lettres patentes soient lues et proclamées à l'endroit ou aux endroits au Canada que Notre gouverneur général jugera appropriés.

XVII. Et Nous déclarons en outre que Nos présentes lettres patentes entreront en vigueur le premier jour d'octobre 1947.

EN FOI DE QUOI Nous avons fait émettre les présentes à titre de lettres patentes et, en vue d'en rendre plus grandes l'attestation et la validité, Nous avons fait apposer Notre Grand Sceau du Canada aux présentes, que Nous avons revêtues de Notre seing royal.

Donné ce huitième jour de septembre en l'an de grâce mil neuf cent quarante-sept, onzième année de Notre règne.

D'ORDRE DE SA MAJESTÉ,

W. L. MACKENZIE KING,
Premier Ministre du Canada

Pouvoirs réservés à Sa Majesté de révoquer, changer ou modifier les présentes lettres patentes

Publication des lettres patentes

Entrée en vigueur des lettres patentes

G

GOVERNOR GENERAL

G.4

Role and responsibilities of the Governor General

G.4.1

Introduction

Canada is a constitutional monarchy. Basically, that type of government means that the laws which govern Canada (the Constitution) recognize Queen Elizabeth II as Canada's Head of State.

The Canadian Constitution dates back to Confederation. In 1867, the British Parliament passed the *British North America Act*, the founding document of Canada as an independent nation. Drafted by Canadians who became known as the Fathers of Confederation, the document stated that "The Executive Government and Authority of and over Canada is hereby declared to continue and be vested in The Queen".

In 1982, the Canadian Parliament passed the *Constitution Act*, 1982, which provided, for the first time in our country's history, a way of "amending" or changing the Constitution without having to obtain the approval of the British Parliament each time a change was required. This "patriation" or "bringing home" of the Canadian Constitution did not alter The Queen's status in Canada as Head of State. Her personal representative in Canada remains the Governor General, whose powers and authorities are detailed in the "Letters Patent Constituting the Office of the Governor General of Canada" (1 October 1947).

As in many constitutional monarchies, there is a clear separation in roles between the Head of State and the Head of Government. Canada's Head of State is The Queen who is represented by the Governor General. The Governor General is appointed by The Queen on the advice of the Canadian Prime Minister; Canada's Head of Government is the Prime Minister who is an elected representative.

G.4.2

The themes of the Governor General

The Office of the Governor General includes a number of responsibilities which are constitutional and traditional in nature. These responsibilities fall under six major themes: The Crown in Canada, Canadian Sovereignty, Recognition of Excellence, National Identity, National Unity and Moral Leadership.

The Governor General fulfills a number of obligations associated with "The Crown in Canada" (the legal entity which embodies the Government). The Parliament of Canada is made up of three elements -- The Queen, an appointed Upper House called the Senate, and an elected Lower House called the House of Commons. The consent of all three elements is needed for the passage of legislation. The Queen, represented by the Governor General or an appointed deputy, gives "Royal Assent" to bills passed by the House of Commons and the Senate, thereby establishing the bills as Acts of Parliament (the laws of Canada). The Governor General also summons, prorogues (ends a session) and dissolves Parliament (ends Parliament until a new one is sworn in after an election); delivers the Speech from the Throne at the opening of sessions (outlining the Government's plans for legislation); signs State documents (documents requiring and authorizing particular appointments and actions) such as orders in council, commissions and pardons; and presides over the swearing-in of the Prime Minister, the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of Canada, Cabinet Ministers and many other members of the Privy Council.

By constitutional convention, the Governor General has the right to be consulted, to encourage and to warn. One of the Governor General's most important responsibilities is to ensure that Canada always has a Prime Minister. Should this position become vacant through death, resignation, parliamentary stalemate or party dissension, the Governor General must identify a replacement.

In addition to the above responsibilities, the Governor General receives The Queen and other members of the Royal Family on royal visits to Canada.

The theme "Canadian Sovereignty" includes duties which reinforce the concept of Canada at home and abroad as a sovereign (independent) and unified country. As well as receiving visiting Heads of State and foreign dignitaries in Canada, the Governor General makes State visits to foreign countries. State visits by the Governor General are an important instrument of Canadian foreign policy and an effective means by which to further Government policies on economic, cultural, industrial or humanitarian affairs.

The Governor General is also Commander-in-Chief of the Canadian Forces. As such, the Governor General works with the Department of National Defence to carry out a number of other military ceremonial duties. The Governor General also receives Letters of Credence of newly-appointed ambassadors to Canada and Letters of Commission of high commissioners to Canada (both types of Letters are formal accreditation papers).

Another important theme is the "Recognition of Excellence" through honours. In the national context, "honours" are defined as orders, decorations and medals granted or awarded by the Governor General on behalf of The Queen.

Honours are considered the highest distinctions Canada can bestow. In addition, they are seen as a strong force for national identity, unity and pride. Appointments to Orders and awards of decorations and medals are always on the advice of special Councils or Committees. The Canadian Honours System currently comprises orders, decorations and medals which recognize achievement, bravery or exemplary service over a broad range of activity.

Appointment to the Order of Canada is the highest honour for service or achievement that Canada bestows on its citizens. The Governor General is Chancellor and Principal Companion of the Order of Canada. As Chancellor of the Order of Military Merit, the Governor General recognizes exceptional merit and service by members of the Canadian Forces, both Regular and Reserve. The Governor General also awards the Decorations for Bravery to citizens who have risked their lives to save or protect others.

Outside of the Canadian Honours System, the Governor General encourages the pursuit of excellence by Canadians in other ways. A number of trophies and prizes for achievements in such disciplines as the arts, social sciences, humanities and sports are awarded in the name of the Governor General -- the Stanley Cup for professional hockey and the Governor General's Literary Awards for books by Canadian authors, illustrators and translators are two such examples. As well, the Governor General's Academic Medal is awarded annually to students who have achieved scholastic excellence at high school, college and university levels.

The Canadian Heraldic Authority promotes "national identity". "Armorial bearings" or coats of arms are expressions of authority, ownership and identity -- they express our history, geography and character through rich and powerful symbols. In keeping with the ancient practice that heraldry (the study, use and regulation of coats of arms) flows from The Queen, the Governor General heads the Canadian Heraldic Authority. Since its creation in 1988, the Authority has granted arms to corporations, governments, academic, cultural and religious institutions as well as individuals.

The many social and traditional duties of the Governor General help heighten the nation's awareness of national identity and of Canada's cultural richness and diversity. The Governor General attends aboriginal and ethnic events and participates in a wide range of cultural programs.

Other activities include receiving Canadians from every walk of life. The Governor General meets the general public at the annual New Year's Levee and the summer Garden Party, and officiates at numerous events, including presentations of awards and prizes, openings of buildings, and the unveiling of works of art and plaques. In addition, the Governor General participates in regional and national celebrations such as Canada Day and Remembrance Day.

Travel is an essential activity, and an effective means by which to promote "national unity". The Governor General visits the provinces and the territories on a regular basis, meeting with the Lieutenant Governors (The Queen's provincial representatives), participating in events ranging from international conferences to civic receptions, giving speeches and interviews, dedicating public buildings such as schools and hospitals and participating in events held by the organizations of which the Governor General is Patron.

The Governor General demonstrates "moral leadership" through association with numerous national service organizations, youth groups and humanitarian endeavours. For example, the Governor General is Chief Scout of Canada, Honorary President of the Canadian Red Cross Society and Patron of many organizations and events.

On taking office (at a ceremony usually held in the Senate Chamber), the Governor General is accorded the title "Right Honourable" for life, and "His Excellency" or "Her Excellency" for the period in office. The Governor General's spouse is also given the title "Excellency". The period in office has no fixed term and the Governor General remains in office until a successor is appointed and installed, usually about five years.

The Governor General has two official residences -- Rideau Hall in Ottawa and La Citadelle in Québec City. The Governor General's personal standard flies whenever the incumbent is in residence, and takes precedence over all other flags in Canada, except The Queen's Canadian flag. The standard is dark blue with, at its centre, a crowned lion carrying a red, stylized maple leaf in its right paw. The symbol of the lion also appears on the crest of the coat of arms of Canada..

The tradition of choosing Canadians as Governors General began in 1952 with the appointment of Vincent Massey followed by the appointment of Georges Vanier in 1959. At the same time, a custom of alternating persons from English and French speaking backgrounds developed.

The Right Honourable Jeanne Sauvé (Governor General 1984-1990) was the first woman named to the post.

His Excellency the Right Honourable Roméo LeBlanc was appointed Governor General of Canada on 22 November 1994 and was sworn into office on 8 February 1995. He is the twenty-fifth Governor General since Confederation.

(Information prepared by the Public Information Directorate at Rideau Hall, February 1995).

G

GOVERNOR GENERAL

G.5

The Administrator of the Government of Canada

At the federal level, in the absence of the Governor General, the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of Canada or another judge of the same court, performs the duties of Deputy Governor General.

The Administrator of the Government of Canada (normally the Chief Justice of the Supreme Court) is only on duty during the illness, inability or death of the Governor General. The Administrator will also be on duty during the absence of the Governor General for more than 30 days.

If the Chief Justice is unable to carry out the duties, the most senior puisne judge of the Supreme Court replaces him/her and so on.

When performing the duties of the Governor General, the Administrator is entitled to the same honours as those accorded to the Governor General: the courtesy titles "His/Her Excellency", the standard, the honours and salutes.



Chapter H

Prime Ministers

H

PRIME MINISTERS

H.1

List of prime ministers since 1867

The Right Honourable Sir John A. Macdonald (Conservative) (1815-1891)	1867-1873
The Honourable Alexander Mackenzie (Liberal) (1822-1892)	1873-1878
The Right Honourable Sir John A. Macdonald (Conservative) (1815-1891)	1878-1891
The Honourable Sir John J. Abbott (Conservative) (1821-1893)	1891-1892
The Right Honourable Sir John S.D. Thompson (Conservative) (1845-1894)	1892-1894
The Honourable Sir Mackenzie Bowell (Conservative) (1823-1917)	1894-1896
The Right Honourable Sir Charles Tupper (Conservative) (1821-1915)	1896
The Right Honourable Sir Wilfrid Laurier (Liberal) (1841-1919)	1896-1911
The Right Honourable Sir Robert L. Borden (Conservative) (1854-1937)	1911-1920
The Right Honourable Arthur Meighen (Conservative) (1874-1960)	1920-1921
The Right Honourable William Lyon Mackenzie King (Liberal) (1874-1950)	1921-1926
The Right Honourable Arthur Meighen (Conservative) (1874-1960)	1926

H.1 - 2

The Right Honourable William Lyon Mackenzie King (Liberal) (1874-1950)	1926-1930
The Right Honourable Richard B. Bennett (Conservative) (1870-1947)	1930-1935
The Right Honourable William Lyon Mackenzie King (Liberal) (1874-1950)	1935-1948
The Right Honourable Louis S. St-Laurent (Liberal) (1882-1973)	1948-1957
The Right Honourable John G. Diefenbaker (Progressive Conservative) (1895-1979)	1957-1963
The Right Honourable Lester B. Pearson (Liberal) (1897-1972)	1963-1968
The Right Honourable Pierre Elliott Trudeau (Liberal) (1919-)	1968-1979
The Right Honourable Joe Clark (Progressive Conservative) (1939-)	1979-1980
The Right Honourable Pierre Elliott Trudeau (Liberal) (1919-)	1980-1984
The Right Honourable John N. Turner (Liberal) (1929-)	1984
The Right Honourable Brian Mulroney (Progressive Conservative) (1939-)	1984-1993
The Right Honourable Kim Campbell (Progressive Conservative) (1947-)	1993
The Right Honourable Jean Chrétien (Liberal) (1934-)	1993-

Before 1968, when Her Majesty The Queen approved a revision to the Table of Titles to be used in Canada to provide for the Prime Minister of Canada to be styled "Right Honourable" for life, the title "Right Honourable" was attached to membership in the United Kingdom Privy Council.



Chapter I

Lieutenant Governors

I

LIEUTENANT GOVERNORS

I.1

List and addresses of lieutenant governors

I.1.1

List of lieutenant governors

	Sworn in
MANITOBA - Winnipeg	
W. Yvon Dumont	1993.03.05
SASKATCHEWAN - Regina	
John E.N. Wiebe	1994.05.31
NOVA SCOTIA - Halifax	
John James Kinley, C.D., S.M., D.Eng., P.Eng., F.E.I.C.	1994.06.23
BRITISH COLUMBIA - Victoria	
Garde B. Gardom, Q.C., B.A., LL.D.	1995.04.21
PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND - Charlottetown	
Gilbert R. Clements	1995.08.30
ALBERTA - Edmonton	
Horace Andrew Olson, P.C.	1996.04.17
ONTARIO - Toronto	
Hilary Weston	1997.01.24

I.1 - 2

QUEBEC - Quebec

Lise Thibault

1997.01.30

NEWFOUNDLAND - St. John's

~~Arthur M. House, C.M., M.D., F.C.R.P.C.~~

~~1997.02.05~~

NEW BRUNSWICK - Fredericton

Marilyn Trenholme Counsell, M.D.

1997.04.18

I.1.2

Addresses of lieutenant governors

ONTARIO - Toronto

Her Honour
the Honourable Hilary Weston
Lieutenant Governor of Ontario
Legislative Building, Room 131
Queen's Park
Toronto, Ontario
M7A 1A1

Telephone No.: 416-325-7780
Fax No.: 416-325-7787

QUEBEC - Quebec

Her Honour
the Honourable Lise Thibault
Lieutenant Governor of Quebec
1050 St-Augustin Street
Québec, Quebec
G1A 1A1

Telephone No.: 418-643-5385
Fax No.: 418-644-4677

NOVA SCOTIA - Halifax

His Honour
the Honourable John James Kinley,
C.D., S.M., D. Eng., P.Eng., F.E.I.C.
Lieutenant Governor of Nova Scotia
Government House
1451 Barrington Street
Halifax, Nova Scotia
B3J 1Z2

Telephone No.: 902-425-6300
Fax No.: 902-424-0537

I.1 - 4

NEW BRUNSWICK - Fredericton

Her Honour
the Honourable Marilyn Trenholme Counsell, M.D.
Lieutenant Governor of New Brunswick
P.O. Box 6000
Fredericton, New Brunswick
E3B 5H1

Telephone No.: 506-453-2505
Fax No.: 506-444-5280

MANITOBA - Winnipeg

His Honour
the Honourable W. Yvon Dumont
Lieutenant Governor of Manitoba
Legislative Building, Room 235
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3C 0V8

Telephone No.: 204-945-2753
Fax No.: 204-945-4329

BRITISH COLUMBIA - Victoria

His Honour
the Honourable Garde B. Gardom, Q.C., B.A., LL.D.
Lieutenant Governor of British Columbia
Government House
1401 Rockland Avenue
Victoria, British Columbia
V8S 1V9

Telephone No.: 250-387-2080
Fax No.: 250-387-2077

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND - Charlottetown

His Honour
the Honourable Gilbert R. Clements
Lieutenant Governor of Prince Edward Island
Government House
P.O. Box 846
Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island
C1A 7L9

Telephone No.: 902-368-5480
Fax No.: 902-368-5481

SASKATCHEWAN - Regina

His Honour
the Honourable John E.N. Wiebe
Lieutenant Governor of Saskatchewan
Government House
4607 Dewdney Avenue
Regina, Saskatchewan
S4P 3V7

Telephone No.: 306-787-4070
Fax No.: 306-787-7716

ALBERTA - Edmonton

His Honour
the Honourable Horace Andrew Olson, P.C.
Lieutenant Governor of Alberta
Legislature Building, 3rd floor
Edmonton, Alberta
T5K 2B6

Telephone No.: 403-427-7243
Fax No.: 403-422-5134

I.1 - 6

NEWFOUNDLAND - St. John's

His Honour
the Honourable Arthur M. House,
C.M., M.D., F.C.R.P.C.
Lieutenant Governor of Newfoundland
Government House
P.O. Box 5517
St. John's, Newfoundland
A1C 5W4

Telephone No.: 709-729-4494
Fax No.: 709-729-2234

I

LIEUTENANT GOVERNORS

I.2

List and addresses of secretaries

ONTARIO - Toronto

Mr. Richard A. Berthelsen
Executive Assistant to Lieutenant Governor
Lieutenant Governor's Office
Legislative Building, Room 131
Queen's Park
Toronto, Ontario
M7A 1A1

Telephone No.: 416-325-7781
Fax No.: 416-325-7787
Cell No: 416-879-3087
Internet: berther@mbs.gov.on.ca

Ms. Kimberley Soane
Her Honour's Personal Assistant
Internet: gwlkcs@weston.ca

Mr. Joe Schratz
Community Events Coordinator
Events Outside Queen's Park
Internet: schratj@mbs.gov.on.ca

Ms. Jennifer Gough, Secretary
Special Projets

Mrs. Shelley Barr, Secretary
Events at Queen's Park

Mrs. Laura Berardo, Coordinator
Internet: berardl@mbs.gov.on.ca

Mr. Anthony Hylton, Scheduling Coordinator
Internet: hyltona@mbs.gov.on.ca

Ms. Carol Klaren,
Invitations and Correspondence Coordinator
Internet: klarenc@mbs.gov.on.ca

Mr. Ernie Dennis, Chief Steward

Mr. James Pong, Steward

QUÉBEC / QUÉBEC - Québec

Le lieutenant-colonel Jean-François Provençal, C.D., A. de C.
Chef de cabinet
Cabinet du Lieutenant-gouverneur
1050, rue des Parlementaires
Québec (Québec)
G1A 1A1

n° de téléphone: 418-643-5385

n° du télécopieur: 418-644-4677

Internet: jean-francois.provençal@cex.gouv.qc.ca

M^{me} Marie-Claude Harvey
Secrétaire du Lieutenant-gouverneur

M^{me} Marlene Lowe
Secrétaire du Chef de cabinet

M. Marcel Guillemette
Attaché à l'administration

NOVA SCOTIA / NOUVELLE-ÉCOSSE - Halifax

Mrs. Mary McGrath
Executive Assistant
to the Lieutenant Governor
Government House
1451 Barrington Street
Halifax, Nova Scotia
B3J 1Z2

Telephone No.: 902-425-6300

Fax No.: 902-424-0537

Mrs. Elsie M. Collins
Secretary

NEW BRUNSWICK / NOUVEAU-BRUNSWICK - Fredericton

Mr. Wendell Fulton
Principal Secretary
Office of the Lieutenant Governor
Post Office Box 6000
Fredericton, New Brunswick
E3B 5H1

Office:
736 King Street
Fredericton, New Brunswick
E3B 1G2

Telephone No.: 506-453-2505

Fax No.: 506-444-5280

Internet: <http://gov.nb.ca/LG>

M^{me} Sharon J. Noël
Administrative Assistant

Miss. Lori Hicks
Events and Protocol Assistant

MANITOBA - Winnipeg

Ms. Georgina Buddick
Executive Assistant
Office of the Lieutenant Governor
235 Legislative Building
Winnipeg, Manitoba
R3C 0V8

Telephone No.: 204-945-2753
Fax No.: 204-945-4329
Internet: gbuddick@leg.gov.mb.ca

Mrs. Bea Mendella
Secretary

BRITISH COLUMBIA / COLOMBIE-BRITANNIQUE - Victoria

Mr. Herb LeRoy
Private Secretary to the Lieutenant Governor
and Director, Government House
1401 Rockland Avenue
Victoria, British Columbia
V8S 1V9

Telephone No.: 250-387-2080
Fax No.: 250-387-2077

Mrs. Christine Diemer
Operations Manager

Mrs. Suzanne Creighton
Secretary

Miss Alison Collins
Secretary to the Director and
Social Secretary

Mrs. Caroline McAndrews
Mrs. Anne Grieve (job share)
Secretary to the Managers

PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND / ÎLE-DU-PRINCE-ÉDOUARD - Charlottetown

Ms. Judy Burke
Private Secretary to the Lieutenant Governor
Government House
P.O. Box 846
Charlottetown, Prince Edward Island
C1A 7L9

Telephone Nos.: (Gov't House) 902-368-5480
Fax No.: (Gov't House) 902-368-5481
Telephone Nos: (Ms. Burke's Home) 902-892-9543
(Ms. Burke's Office) 902-368-5224

Mrs. Virginia Flood
Secretary

SASKATCHEWAN - Regina

Mrs. Irene White, M.V.O.
Private Secretary to the Lieutenant Governor
Government House
4607 Dewdney Avenue
Regina Saskatchewan
S4P 3V7

Telephone No.: 306-787-4070
Fax No.: 306-787-7716
Internet Address: irene.white.ia0@govmail.gov.sk.ca

Mrs. Patricia Langston
Secretary

Ms. Carolyn Speirs
Secretary

ALBERTA - Edmonton

Mrs. Astrid Casavant
Private Secretary to the Lieutenant Governor
Legislature Building, 3rd floor
Edmonton, Alberta
T5K 2B6

Telephone No.: 403-427-7243
Fax No.: 403-422-5134

NEWFOUNDLAND / TERRE-NEUVE - St. John's

Mr. D. Wayne Mitchell
Private Secretary
Government House
P.O. Box 5517
St. John's, Newfoundland
A1C 5W4

Telephone No.: 709-729-4494

Fax No.: 709-729-2234

Ms. Leona Harvey
Secretary

COMMISSIONERS' OFFICES

NORTHWEST TERRITORIES/TERRITOIRES DU NORD-OUEST - Yellowknife

Mr. Anthony Whitford
Secretary to the Commissioner of the Northwest Territories
Government of the Northwest Territories
P.O. Box 1320
Yellowknife, Northwest Territories
X1A 2L9

Telephone No.: 867-873-7400

Fax No.: 867-873-0223

Internet: doris_franceschi@gov.nt.ca

Mrs. Doris Franceschi
Secretary

YUKON TERRITORY/TERRITOIRE DU YUKON - Whitehorse

Ms. Eileen Fry
Secretary to the Commissioner of the Yukon Territory
211 Hawkins Street
Whitehorse, Yukon
Y1A 1X3

Telephone No.: 867-667-5121

Fax No.: 867-393-6201

Internet: eileen.fry@gov.yk.ca

I

LIEUTENANT GOVERNORS

I.3

Notes on the office

- **Role and Responsibilities of the office**

The office of the Lieutenant Governor may be briefly described as follows:

The office of the Lieutenant Governor combines the monarchical and federal principles in the government of the Canadian provinces. As the chief executive officer in the provinces the Lieutenant Governor in his office if not in his person is the representative of the Crown and by statute, custom and legal decisions exercises many of the monarchical powers essential to the practical and theoretical working of constitutional monarchy, parliamentary government, or cabinet government, whichever the term - or combination of terms - one chooses to use. At the same time he is a federal officer charged with some specific tasks on behalf of the central government.¹

Some of the principal powers and responsibilities of the Lieutenant Governor are set out in sections 53 to 57, with Section 90, and Sections 58 to 62 of the Constitution Act 1867. Section 55, read in conjunction with section 90, reserves the power in the Lieutenant Governor to assent to, withhold assent to, or reserve bills of the provincial Legislature.

In carrying out this responsibility, the Lieutenant Governor represents the Sovereign and acts in her stead. The Lieutenant Governor also is an essential part of the legislative process, for his/her assent is required to transform a government bill into provincial law. Of course, all these powers and authorities are exercised in accordance with the constitutional conventions. Normally a Lieutenant Governor acts on the advice of his/her ministers, but there are potential exceptional situations.

¹ John T. Saywell, The Office of the Lieutenant Governor (Toronto: University of Toronto Press, 1957) p.3

The authority of the Lieutenant Governor may, however, be superseded by that of the Governor General. The framers of the Constitution Act, 1867 (formerly British North America Act) wished to ensure that the legislative enactments of the Provinces would remain subject to the superintendence of the Federal Government; accordingly, several sections of the Act provide for the overruling of the Lieutenant Governor's assent by the Governor General through the use of disallowance or reservation.

Sections 56 and 90 permit the Governor General to disallow an Act that has received the Lieutenant Governor's assent, within a year of receipt of the Act by the Minister of Canadian Heritage. If an Act is disallowed, the Lieutenant Governor must communicate this fact to the provincial Legislature; and on receipt of such notice, the Act is annulled.

The use of reservation is summarized in the following extract from an Order in Council approved in 1882:

The Lieutenant Governor is not warranted in reserving any measures for the assent of the Governor General on the advice of his (provincial) ministers. He should do so in his capacity of a Dominion Officer only and on instructions from the Governor General. It is only in a case of extreme necessity that a Lieutenant Governor should without such instructions exercise his discretion as a Dominion Officer in reserving a Bill. In fact with the facility of communication between the Federal and Provincial Governments such a necessity can seldom if ever arise.

In the event that a bill is reserved by the Lieutenant Governor, it will have no force unless and until the Lieutenant Governor declares that the Governor General's assent has been received; and such assent must be given within one year from the day on which the bill was presented to the Lieutenant Governor.

To the extent that the Lieutenant Governor performs a dual role - as representative of the Sovereign and as an appointed officer of the Federal Government by the Governor General in Council - the office is constitutionally ambiguous. It must, however, be recognized that in recent years the powers of disallowance and reservation have seldom been used, and the occasions for recourse to these powers in the future will probably be few.

The procedures to be followed by the Lieutenant Governor in giving assent to provincial bills are outlined in the formal instructions issued at the time of the swearing in. Within six months after prorogation of each session of the provincial Legislature, the Lieutenant Governor must transmit to the Department of Canadian Heritage authentic copies of all Acts to which assent has been given during that session. The Department of Canadian Heritage subsequently forwards copies of

these Acts to the Department of Justice, which may prepare an opinion for consideration by Cabinet if the constitutionality of an Act is in question. Following a decision by Cabinet, the Lieutenant Governor is advised of any disallowance of an Act or Acts to which he/she has assented. An Order of the Governor General in Council is issued to confirm the disallowance of passage of provincial Acts.

I

LIEUTENANT GOVERNORS

I.4

Titles

The Lieutenant Governor takes office after having subscribed the oaths of office and, at this time, assumes the title "His/Her Honour", which is retained for the duration of the term. The title "Honourable", which is held for life, is also accorded to the Lieutenant Governor.

Since May 1985, the spouse of a Lieutenant Governor is styled "Her/His Honour" during the term of office.

I

LIEUTENANT GOVERNORS

I.5

Term of office

The *Constitution Act 1867* (section 59) provides that a lieutenant governor holds office during the pleasure of the Governor General. Section 59 also stipulates that a lieutenant governor cannot be removed from office within five years of his appointment, except for cause.

The practice has developed that a term of office is usually five years (from the time of swearing in), with possible extensions after discussions between the Prime Minister of Canada and the incumbent.

I

LIEUTENANT GOVERNORS

I.6

Salary

By the authority of section 60 of the *Constitution Act, 1867*, the Parliament of Canada fixes and pays the salary of the lieutenant governors. As of January 1, 1998, the salary is \$96,100.00; it is adjusted annually according to the lesser of the Industrial Aggregate Index and 7 percent.

The salary is paid in monthly instalments, the cheques are being sent to the Lieutenant Governor by the Manager, Ceremonial and Canadian Symbols Promotion.

A statement is attached to the pay cheques explaining the earnings and the deductions.

I

LIEUTENANT GOVERNORS

I.7

Pension plan

The *Lieutenant Governors Superannuation Act*, adopted in 1975, provides for a pension to be paid to lieutenant governors, upon retirement after having reached 65 years of age. Participation in the scheme is voluntary; a lieutenant governor may, within six months of taking office, elect not to contribute and in this event any deductions made from the salary to cover contributions will be returned. A deduction of 6% is made directly from the salary of any contribution for the first five years in office.

Under the provisions of the *Supplementary Retirement Benefits Act*, every contributor is required to pay an extra one per cent per annum to offset the effects of inflation when the pension becomes payable; this contribution is deducted for as long as the Lieutenant Governor is in office.

On retirement and after reaching age 65, a contributor to the pension plan receives annually three-tenths of the average salary during the last five years of service as lieutenant governor. Upon the death of a retired Lieutenant Governor, the surviving spouse receives one half of the annual amount payable.

I

LIEUTENANT GOVERNORS

I.8

Personal standard

Starting in 1980, the Governor General has approved a new personal standard which bears the shield of arms of the Province, circled with ten gold maple leaves and surmounted by a royal crown, on a field of blue. This design had been agreed upon at a lieutenant governors' conference and each Province requested in turn that the design be authorized by the Governor General. Quebec and Nova Scotia have not adopted the new design.

The personal standard is flown at the residence and from the flagpoles of buildings wherein official duties are carried out (it is not flown inside a building, in a dining hall for example, but outside to indicate the presence of the Lieutenant Governor on the premises). However, it is customary to place the personal standard in the Lieutenant Governor's study.

The standard is flown from the Legislative Building when the lieutenant governor is present for the opening of the Legislature, the granting of royal assent, and the prorogation of the session; the standard also flies on the Legislative Building when the Lieutenant Governor has his/her office in that building.

The standard is never flown on a church or inside a church.

The standard is never lowered to half-mast. On the death of a lieutenant governor, the standard is taken down, until a successor is sworn in.

The standard of the Lieutenant Governor has precedence over any other flags, including the national flag of Canada. The Queen's Personal Canadian flag has precedence over the Lieutenant Governor's standard; the Lieutenant Governor's personal standard will have precedence over the Governor General's personal standard when the Governor General is a guest of the Province. The Lieutenant Governor being The Queen's representative at the head of the Province, the Lieutenant Governor's standard has precedence over the standard of a member of the Royal Family (other than The Queen).

The Administrator of the Government of the province is entitled to fly the standard when performing the duties of the office.

I

LIEUTENANT GOVERNORS

I.9

Aides-de-camp

Aides-de-camp serve as assistants to and representatives of the Lieutenant Governor on appropriate occasions. They may provide a retinue for special functions, such as the opening of the provincial Legislature, state funerals, balls, and other important social and political events. The Lieutenant Governor may appoint, for example, aides-de-camp from each of the province's ethnic communities, thereby obtaining a direct point of contact with these communities. Guidance on other functions of aides-de-camp can be obtained from Rideau Hall in Ottawa.

Aides-de-camp may be civilians, police officers, reserve officers or members of the regular Armed Forces. Their service is unpaid, except for the members of the regular Forces, for whom a salary is paid by the Department of National Defence. Normally, the position carries the title "honorary", signifying that the appointment is for part-time service.

Appointments are made by the Lieutenant Governor. When asking for candidates to be considered by the Lieutenant Governor for military aides-de-camp, the Secretary should write to the Regional Commander so that the appointment process is initiated at the appropriate level. Military aides-de-camp usually are officers of the rank of Lieutenant-Colonel or Major. There is no formal restriction on the number of appointments that may be made, but typically the complement of aides-de-camp ranges between five and twenty. The appointing of female aides-de-camp, whether military or civilian, is now accepted as normal practice.

The specific duties of an aide-de-camp are prescribed by the Lieutenant Governor. Military aides-de-camp are subject to current dress regulations for the Canadian Forces. In 1973 the Governor General authorized the use of the initials "A. de C." after the names of all aides-de-camp for the duration of their terms of office.



Chapter J

Provincial Matters

J

PROVINCIAL MATTERS

J.1

Names of provinces and territories

- **Ontario**

The name was first applied to the lake (1641) and is traceable to Amerindian sources. It may be a corruption of *Onitariio*, meaning “beautiful lake” (Johnson Papers, PAC), or *Kanadario*, variously translated as “sparkling” or “beautiful” water. Later European settlers gave the name to the land along the lakeshore and then to an ever extending area. “Old Ontario” was a term sometimes loosely applied to the southern portion of the province.

- **Quebec**

The name was applied first to the region of the modern city and the word is of undoubted Algonquin origin. Early spellings: Québec (Levasseur, 1601); Kébec (Lescarbot, 1609); Québec (Champlain, 1613). Champlain wrote of the location in 1632: [translation] “It ... is a strait of the river, so called by the Indians” – a reference to the Algonquin word for “narrow passage” or “strait” to indicate the narrowing of the river at Cape Diamond. The term is common to the Algonquin, Cree, and Micmac languages and signifies the same in each dialect.

- **Nova Scotia**

Although applied first on September 29, 1621, when Sir William Alexander (1567-1640) received a grant of “the lands lying between New England and Newfoundland ... to be known as Nova Scotia, or New Scotland”, the name **did** not become fixed on the map until after the signing of the Treaty of Utrecht in 1713.

Prior to this, the name *Acadie* was generally used by the French to denote the Maritime provinces along with adjacent portions of New England and Quebec. The origin of the word Acadia is in dispute. It is generally accepted to be from Archadia (Acadia), assigned by Giovanni da Verrazano in 1524 and suggested by the classical name for a land of rustic peace (Rayburn). The claim that **it** is of Micmac origin is probably coincidental. The Micmac word *Quoddy* or *Cady* was rendered by the French as *cadie* and meant “a piece of land or territory” (Clark).

- **New Brunswick**

Originally the territory included in modern New Brunswick was part of Nova Scotia. The American Revolution from 1775 to 1783 resulted in a large influx of Loyalist settlers, and agitation arose for the creation of a new province. On September 10, 1784, the partition took place and the name was chosen as a compliment to King George III (1760-1820) who was descended from the House of Brunswick. Earlier proposals for naming the new province were: New Ireland (suggested by William Knox, Under-Secretary of State, but rejected "because Ireland was out of royal favour"), and Pittsylvania, for William Pitt.

- **Manitoba**

Created as a province in 1870, the name was probably first applied to Lake Manitoba. Some sources suggest that the name is of Assiniboine origin: *Mini* and *tobow* meaning "Lake of the Prairie", or in French "Lac des Prairies", the name used by La Vérendrye. The more probable source is the Cree *manito-wapow* "the strait of the spirit or *manitobau*". This refers to the roaring sound produced by pebbles on a beach on Manitoba Island in Lake Manitoba. The noise gave rise to the superstition among the Indians that a *manito* or spirit beats a drum.

- **British Columbia**

Much of the mainland region was originally known as New Caledonia; however, this name (duplicated in the South Pacific) was discarded in favour of British Columbia. The designation appears to have originated with Queen Victoria and was officially proclaimed in 1858. Columbia (after the Columbia River which was named by the American Captain Robert Gray from his ship *Columbia*) had previously been loosely applied to the southern portion of the colony.

- **Prince Edward Island**

The island appears under the name Île de Saint Jean in Champlain's narrative (1604) and on his map (1632); however, according to Ganong, the name is of earlier origin. After its acquisition by the British in 1759 the island was known as St. John's Island until the name was changed in 1798 to honour His Royal Highness The Prince Edward, Duke of Kent (1767-1820), father of Her Majesty Queen Victoria, then in command of the British forces at Halifax. Separated from Nova Scotia in 1769, Prince Edward Island was a separate colony until it entered into Confederation on July 1, 1873.

- **Saskatchewan**

The name is derived from which was first applied to the Saskatchewan River. In the Cree language it was known as *Kisiskatchwani Sipi*, or "swift-flowing river". Henday's spelling was *Keiskatchewan*, with the modern rendering, *Saskatchewan*, being officially adopted in 1882 when a portion of the present-day province was designated a provisional district of the North West Territories.

- **Alberta**

The district of Alberta was created in 1882, and enlarged to become a province of Canada on September 1, 1905. The name was suggested by the Marquess of Lorne, Governor General of Canada from 1878 to 1883, in honour of his wife, Her Royal Highness The Princess Louise Caroline Alberta, daughter of Her Majesty Queen Victoria.

- **Newfoundland**

Although Newfoundland is one of the oldest place names on the eastern seaboard, its evolution may be easily followed. It was the "new founde island" of John Cabot who sailed westward from Bristol in 1497, although Norsemen, Basques, and Bretons (among others) had undoubtedly preceded him. By 1502 "New found launde" was being used in official English documents with the French version "Terre Neuve" appearing as early as 1510 - a clear indication of the acceptance of the designation. Giovanni da Verrazano used the term "Terra Nova" on his map of 1529.

There remains an element of uncertainty, but most authorities credit the origin of the name Labrador to Joao Fernandes, a Portuguese explorer and *lavrador*, or "landholder", in the Azores. It was probably first applied to a section of the coast of modern Greenland and later transferred by cartographers to the northeastern coast of the continent. The Dictionary of Canadian Biography, Volume I, quotes an inscription (near Greenland) on the Weimar map of 1530: "... And as the one who first gave notice of it was a labrador of the Azores [Joao Fernandes], they gave it the name."

- **Northwest Territories**

Historically, the term was loosely applied to the vast lands north and west of Lake Superior; later it signified the administrative district which predated Saskatchewan and Alberta, and from January 1, 1920, it has meant "that part of Northern Canada between the Yukon Territory and Hudson Bay, including Baffin Island, the islands in James Bay, Hudson Bay, Hudson Strait, and the Arctic Archipelago."

J.1 - 4

- **Yukon Territory**

The territory was established on June 13, 1898, although the name, of Amerindian origin, was first applied to the river and is from *Yu-kun-ah*, meaning "great river". It was first noted in 1846 by John Bell (1799-1868), an employee of the Hudson's Bay Company, who called it by what he understood to be its Indian appellation.

J

PROVINCIAL MATTERS

J.2

Official abbreviation of names of provinces and territories

- **Bilingual accepted abbreviations**

Ontario	- ON
Quebec	- QC
Nova Scotia	- NS
New Brunswick	- NB
Manitoba	- MB
British Columbia	- BC
Prince Edward Island	- PE
Saskatchewan	- SK
Alberta	- AB
Newfoundland	- NF
Northwest Territories	- NT
Yukon	- YT

J

PROVINCIAL MATTERS

J.3

Precedence of provinces and territories

The relative precedence of the provinces is established according to the date of entry into Confederation; the precedence of the territories is established according to the date of the creation of the territory.

- **Provinces**

Ontario	- 1867
Quebec	- 1867
Nova Scotia	- 1867
New Brunswick	- 1867
Manitoba	- 1870
British Columbia	- 1871
Prince Edward Island	- 1873
Saskatchewan	- 1905
Alberta	- 1905
Newfoundland	- 1949

- **Territories**

Northwest Territories	- 1870
Yukon	- 1898

J

PROVINCIAL MATTERS

J.4

Queen's Commission for police officers

The basis for a Queen's Commission is founded on employment in the service of the Crown and represents a position of authority in that service. The only police forces which currently are issued Queen's Commissions are the Royal Canadian Mounted Police, the Ontario Provincial Police, the Royal Newfoundland Constabulary, and the Quebec Police Force, although the latter force does not issue them at this time. The Canadian Forces also are issued Queen's Commissions, at the level of 2nd Lieutenant and Sub-Lieutenant in the Navy.

Queen's Commissions are issued by lieutenant governors for provincial police forces, and by the Governor General for the Royal Canadian Mounted Police and the Canadian Forces.



Chapter K

Patron Saints

K

PATRON SAINTS

K.1

Patron saints of Canada

The Canadian Conference of Catholic Bishops has provided the following information on Canada's patron saints:

- **Patron saint of Canada - Saint Joseph**

Saint Joseph has been considered by Canadians as their patron saint since 1624. At this time, the first missionaries, the Jesuits, who had a great devotion for Saint Joseph, wanted to place the very fragile colony under the protection of the Head of the Holy Family.

In 1670, Saint Joseph was officially declared, by order of the Holy See, as patron saint of Canada.

- **Patron saint of Quebec - Saint Anne**

Saint Anne has been considered as the patron saint of Quebec as early as 1660, when the first miracles were reported at Sainte-Anne de Beaupré.

Saint Anne was officially proclaimed patron saint of the ecclesiastical and civil province of Quebec on May 7, 1876 by His Holiness Pope Pius IX.

- **Patron saint of French Canadians - Saint John the Baptist**

Officially proclaimed patron saint of French Canadians by His Holiness Pope Pius X in 1908, Saint John the Baptist was considered as such since 1834 when the Société Saint-Jean-Baptiste de Montréal was founded.



Chapter L

Bibliography for Protocol, Precedence, Etiquette

L

BIBLIOGRAPHY FOR PROTOCOL, PRECEDENCE, ETIQUETTE

L.1

Bibliography for protocol, precedence, etiquette

Precedence of Canadian dignitaries and officials, published annually by the
Department of Canadian Heritage.

Guide du protocole et des usages, Jean Gandouin, Éditions Stock, 1972,
491 pp.

Manuel pratique de protocole, Jean Serres, Éditions de l'Arquebuse, Vitry-le-
François, 1965, 543 pp.

Diplomatic Ceremonial and Protocol, Principles, Procedures and Practice,
John Wood, Jean Serres, Columbia University Press.

A Guide to Diplomatic Practice, The Right Honourable Sir Ernest Satow,
Longman's Green and Co. Limited, London, 1964, 510 pp.

The Complete Handbook of Diplomatic, Official and Social Usage,
Mary Jane McCasree and Pauline Innis. Prentice Hall Inc.

Styles of Address (A Manual of Usage in Writing and in Speech), Howard
Measures, MacMillan Co. of Canada, 1969, 161 pp.

Le savoir-vivre d'aujourd'hui, Marcelle Fortin-Jacques, Éditions de l'Homme,
Montréal, 1977, 187 pp.

La correspondance pratique, J.Y. Dournon. Le livre de poche, Hachette,
1974, 437 pp.

L'Art de la table, Marguerite du Coffre, Éditions de l'Homme, 1975, 190 pp.

Les joies de l'hospitalité, Charles Bordeleau, Éditions Héritage, Montréal,
150 pp.

L.1 - 2

Diplomatic and Consular Relations and Protocol, External Affairs, 1985,
34 pp.

The Book of Etiquette, Lady Laura Troubridge, Richard Clay (The Chaucer
Press), Limited, Suffolk, Great Britain, 1965, 475 pp.

Le Nouveau Savoir-Vivre, Hachette, 1987, 307 pp.

Emily Post's Etiquette, A Guide to Modern Manners, Elizabeth L. Post,
Harper and Row Publishers, N.Y. 1984, 982 pp.

Le livre d'Or du savoir-vivre, Dictionnaire illustré de la politesse,
Stauffacher-Publishers Limited, Zurich 1971, 339 pp.

New completed Book of Etiquette (The Guide to Gracious Living),
Amy Vanderbilt's Double Day and Company, Inc. N.Y., 1972, 929 pp.

The Rituals of Dinner, Margaret Visser, Harper Collins, Toronto 1991,
432 pp.

Le Protocole Instrument de communication, Louis Dussault, Protos et Louis
Dussault, 1^{er} trimestre 1995

Index

A

- Act of Settlement, The F.4 - 10
- Addresses of lieutenant governors I.1 - 3
- Administrator of the Government
of Canada, The G.5 - 1
-
- Aides-de-camp I.9 - 1
- Anthems B.3 - 1
- Anthems and patriotic songs B.3 - 1
- Anthems B.3 - 1
- Patriotic songs B.3 - 5
- Regional songs B.3 - 7
- Arms of Canada, The B.1 - 1
- Description B.1 - 3
- The crest B.1 - 5
- The four floral emblems B.1 - 6
- The helm and the mantling B.1 - 5
- The imperial crown B.1 - 7
- The motto B.1 - 6
- The proclamation B.1 - 3
- The ribbon B.1 - 5
- The royal grant B.1 - 1
- The shield B.1 - 3
- The supporters B.1 - 6
- The use of the arms B.1 - 8

B

- Beaver B.8 - 1
- Bibliographies for protocol, precedence,
etiquette L.1 - 1
- Birth of the Canadian flag, The B.5 - 1
- Boxing Day D.9 - 1

C

- Canada Badge A.12 - 1
- Canada Day D.3 - 1
- Background D.3 - 1
- Dominion Day D.3 - 3
- Canada's national colours —
- red and white B.8 - 5
- Canadian Heraldic Authority, The C-2 - 1
- Canadian honours systems, The E.1 - 1
- Canadian order of precedence of orders,
decorations and medals, The E.3 - 1
- Colour specifications (Canadian flag) B.5 - 7
- Commercial use and protection of
Canadian symbols and emblems B.8 - 5
- Commercial use of "O Canada"
and of "God Save The Queen" B.2 - 15
- Commercial use of the national flag B.5 - 14
- Commonwealth Day D.4 - 1
- Commonwealth flag B.7 - 1
- Convention for the Protection of
Industrial Property B.9 - 4
- Crest, The (arms of Canada) B.1 - 5

D

- Description (emblems) B.1 - 3
- Dietary restrictions (receptions) A.8 - 1
- Dipping the flag B.5 - 7
- Dominion Day D.3 - 3
- Dress code A.6 - 1

Index

E

- Elements of the national flag of Canada B.5 - 4
- Emblems B.1 to B.10
 - Anthems and patriotic songs B.3 - 1
 - Arms of Canada, The B.1 - 1
 - Commonwealth flag B.7 - 1
 - Emblems of the provinces
 - and territories B.10 - 1
 - National anthem: O Canada B.2 - 1
 - National flag B.5 - 1
 - Other national emblems B.8 - 1
 - Protection of emblems outside
 - Canada B.9 - 1
 - Royal anthems "God Save
 - The Queen" B.4 - 1
 - Royal Union flag, The B.6 - 1
- Emblems of the provinces and
 - territories B.10 - 1
 - Arms B.10 - 1
 - Flags B.10 - 3
 - Other emblems B.10 - 4
- Etiquette during the playing of the
 - national anthem B.2 - 15
- Evolution since 1189 to the Present Day
 - (Royal emblems) F.8 - 1

F

- First Canadian flags, The B.5 - 3
- Flying of flags on federal
 - establishments B.5 - 8
- Flying on marine-type mast B.5 - 8
- Four floral emblems, The B.1 - 6
 - (The arms of Canada)

G

- Gift bank A.13 - 1
 - Inventory A.13 - 1
 - Purchases A.13 - 1
- Governor General G.1 to G.5
 - Letters patent G.3 - 1
 - List of governors-general
 - since 1867 G.1 - 1
 - List of governors, governors general
 - and administrators since
 - Samuel de Champlain G.2 - 1
 - Role and responsibilities of the
 - Governor General G.4 - 1
 - The Administrator of the
 - Government of Canada G.5 - 1
- Grace / benediction A.3 - 1
- Great Seal of Canada, The B.8 - 17
- Guard of honour A.11 - 3
- Guidance notes for meeting
 - The Sovereign and members of the
 - Royal Family F.6 - 1
 - Curtsy/bow F.6 - 2
 - Dress code F.6 - 2
 - Guidelines F.6 - 1
 - Host F.6 - 1
 - How to address F.6 - 1
 - Meals and drinks F.6 - 2
 - Protocol in toasting The Queen F.6 - 4
 - Smoking F.6 - 23

H

- Half-masting of flag B.5 - 10
- Head table A.4 - 1
- Helm and the mantling, The
 - (The arms of Canada) B.1 - 5
- Heraldry C-1 - 1
 - Development of heraldry C-1 - 1
 - The Canadian Heraldic Authority C-2 - 1

Index

History of "O Canada"	B.2 - 1
History of "God Save The Queen" . . .	B.4 - 1
Holidays Act	D.1 - 1
Holidays/Special Holidays	D.1 to D.9
Boxing Day	D.9 - 1
Canada Day	D.3 - 1
Commonwealth Day	D.4 - 1
Dominion Day	D.3 - 3
International days, weeks, years and decades as declared by the United Nations	D.5 - 1
National days, weeks and months .	D.6 - 1
Public holidays	D.2 - 1
Thanksgiving and Remembrance Day	D.7 - 1
Victoria Day	D.8 - 1

Honours and salutes	A.11 - 1
Background	A.11 - 1
Considerations	A.11 - 1
Definition	A.11 - 1
Guard of honour	A.11 - 3
Military salute	A.11 - 4
Musical salute	A.11 - 4
Salute to the Governor General / Lieutenant Governor	A.11 - 5
When are they accorded	A.11 - 2
Who is entitled	A.11 - 2

I

Imperial crown, The (The arms of Canada)	B.1 - 7
International days, weeks, years and decades as declared by the United Nations	D.5 - 1
International days	D.5 - 1
International decades and years .	D.5 - 4
International weeks	D.5 - 4
Invitations	A.9 - 1
Invitation cards	A.9 - 1
Notes on invitations cards	A.9 - 2

Place cards	A.9 - 4
Times of arrival and departure at receptions	A.9 - 6
Use of post-nominal letters	A.9 - 5

L

Lavallée, Calixa	B.2 - 4
Letters patent	G.3 - 1
Lieutenant Governors	I.1 to I.9
Aides-de-camp	I.9 - 1
List and addresses of lieutenant governors	I.1 - 1
List and addresses of secretaries . .	I.2 - 1
Notes on the Office	I.3 - 1
Pension plan	I.7 - 1
Personal standard	I.8 - 1
Salary	I.6 - 1
Term of Office	I.5 - 1
Titles	I.4 - 1
Line of succession	F.2 - 6
List and addresses of lieutenant governors	I.1 - 1
List of lieutenant governors	I.1 - 1
Addresses of lieutenant governors .	I.1 - 3
List and addresses of secretaries to the lieutenant governors	I.2 - 1
List of Canadian organizations which have received royal patronage . . .	F.9 - 2
List of civilian organizations with the prefix "Royal"	F.10 - 2
List of governors general since 1867 .	G.1 - 1
List of governors, governors general and administrators since Samuel de Champlain	G.2 - 1
List of lieutenant governors	I.1 - 1
List of members of the Royal Family	F.2 - 1

Index

- List of protocol offices A.10 - 1
- List of prime ministers since 1867 . . . H.1 - 1
- Lyrics ("God Save The Queen") B.4 - 2

M

- Maple leaf B.8 - 4
- Maple tree, The B.8 - 3
- Military salute A.11 - 4
- Motto, The
(The arms of Canada) B.1 - 6
- Music and lyrics
(national anthem) B.2 - 11
- Musical salute A.11 - 4

N

- Names of provinces and territories . . . J.1 - 1
- National anthem: O Canada B.2 - 1
 - Commercial use B.2 - 15
 - Etiquette during the playing of
the national anthem B.2 - 15
 - History of "O Canada" B.2 - 1
 - Music and lyrics B.2 - 11
 - Playing of anthems at events B.2 - 15
- National days, weeks and months . . . D.6 - 1
 - National days D.6 - 1
 - National months D.6 - 14
 - National weeks D.6 - 7
- National flag B.5 - 1
 - Birth of the Canadian flag, The . . B.5 - 1
 - Colour specifications B.5 - 7
 - Commercial use B.5 - 14
 - Dipping the flag B.5 - 7
 - Elements of the national flag
of Canada B.5 - 4
 - First Canadian flags, The B.5 - 3
- Flying of flags on federal
establishments B.5 - 8
- Flying on marine-type mast B.5 - 8
- Half-masting of flag B.5 - 10

- Pledge to the Canadian flag B.5 - 9
- Sources for flags, banners and pins B.5 - 14
- symbol of Canadian identity, A . . . B.5 - 1
- You were asking B.5 - 5

- Numbering our sovereigns F.4 - 1

O

- "O Canada" (history) B.2 - 1
- Offices of the royal households F.12 - 1
- Official abbreviation of names of
provinces and territories J.2 - 1
- Official precedence list
of Nova Scotia A.15 - 7
- Order of precedence / Government of
Newfoundland and Labrador A.15 - 25
- Order of precedence for the Province
of Manitoba A.15 - 12
- Order of precedence of the authorities
individually convened to public
ceremonies organized by the
Government of Quebec A.15 - 4
- Orders, Decorations and Medals . . . E.1 to E.5
 - Provincial orders and medals E.5 - 1
 - Royal Victorian Order E.2 - 1
 - The Canadian honours system E.1 - 1
 - The Canadian order of precedence of
orders, decorations and medals . . E.3 - 1
 - Wearing of orders, decorations
and medals E.4 - 1
- Other emblems
(provinces and territories) B.10 - 4

Other national emblems B.8 - 1
 Beaver B.8 - 1
 Canada's national colour -
 red and white B.8 - 5
 Commercial use and protection of
 Canadian symbols and emblems B.8 - 5
 Maple leaf B.8 - 4
 maple tree, The B.8 - 3
 Personal flags and standards B.8 - 14
 Tartans B.8 - 10
 The Great Seal of Canada B.8 - 7

P

Patriotic songs B.3 - 5
 Patron saints of Canada K.1 - 1
 Peerages of other members of the
 Royal Family F.4 - 6
 Pension plan (lieutenant governors) . I.7 - 1
 Personal information on members of
 the Royal Family F.2 - 2
 Personal flags and standards B.8 - 14
 Personal standard
 (lieutenant governors) I.8 - 1
 Place cards A.9 - 4
 Playing of anthems at events B.2 - 15
 Playing of "God Save The Queen"
 at events B.4 - 2
 Pledge to the Canadian flag B.5 - 9
 Post-nominal letters A.9 - 5
 Precedence A.2 - 1
 Precedence accorded to
 representatives of dignitaries . A.2 - 6
 Precedence at activities involving
 representatives of the Government
 of Canada and a provincial
 government A.2 - 4
 Table of precedence for Canada . A.2 - 1

Precedence accorded to representatives
 of dignitaries A.2 - 6
 Precedence list for Government of
 Ontario officials A.15 - 1
 Precedence of provinces and territories J.3 - 1
 Prefix "Royal" F.10 - 1
 Criteria F.10 - 1
 List of civilian organizations with
 the prefix "Royal" F.10 - 2
 Prime Ministers H.1 - 1
 List of prime ministers since 1867 H.1 - 1
 Private and official visits F.5 - 5
 Procedure for Invitations F.5 - 1
 Proclamation, The (arms of Canada) . B.1 - 3
 Proclamation of 1917 D.3 - 7
 Proclamation of 1921 B.1 - 2
 Proclamation of 1953 F.3 - 3
 Proclamation of 1957 D.8 - 4
 Protection of emblems
 outside Canada B.9 - 1
 Convention for the Protection of
 Industrial Property B.9 - 4
 Use of "Canada" and derivation
 thereof and Canadian
 symbols abroad B.9 - 1
 Protocol/organizations of events . A.1 to A.15
 Check list A.14 - 1
 Dietary restrictions A.8 - 1
 Dress (code) A.6 - 1
 Gift bank A.13 - 1
 Grace / Benediction A.3 - 1
 Honours and salutes A.11 - 1
 Introduction A.1 - 1
 Invitations cards A.9 - 1
 Notes for preparation of
 "Canada Badge" A.12 - 1
 Place cards Lyrics A.9 - 4
 Post-nominal letters A.9 - 5
 Precedence A.2 - 1
 Protocol offices A.10 - 1

Index

Provincial and territorial orders of precedence	A.15 - 1
Receptions	A.8 - 1
Styles of address	A.7 - 1
Table plans	A.4 - 1
Titles	A.5 - 1
Protocol in toasting The Queen	F.6 - 4
Protocol offices	A.10 - 1
List	A.10 - 1
<hr/>	
Provincial and territorial orders of precedence	A.15 - 1
Official precedence list of	
Nova Scotia	A.15 - 7
Order of precedence for the province of Manitoba	A.15 - 12
Order of precedence of the authorities individually convened to public ceremonies organized by the Government of Quebec	A.15 - 4
Order of precedence/ Government of Newfoundland and Labrador	A.15 - 25
Precedence list for Government of Ontario officials	A.15 - 1
Table of precedence for Alberta	A.15 - 22
Table of precedence for British Columbia	A.15 - 14
Table of precedence for New Brunswick	A.15 - 9
Table of precedence for Prince Edward Island	A.15 - 17
Table of precedence for Saskatchewan	A.15 - 19
Table of precedence for the Yukon	A.15 - 27
Provincial Matters	J.1 to J.4
Names of provinces and territories	J.1 - 1
Official abbreviation of names of provinces and territories	J.2 - 1
Precedence of provinces and territories	J.3 - 1
Queen's Commission for police officers	J.4 - 1
Provincial orders and medals	E.5 - 1
Alberta	E.5 - 20
British Columbia	E.5 - 9
Newfoundland	E.5 - 21

Ontario	E.5 - 1
Prince Edward Island	E.5 - 10
Quebec	E.5 - 5
Saskatchewan	E.5 - 12

Public holidays	D.2 - 1
---------------------------	---------

Q

Queen's Commission for police officers	J.4 - 1
--	---------

R

Receptions	A.8 - 1
Dietary restrictions	A.8 - 1
Regional songs	B.3 - 7
Remembrance Day	D.7 - 1
Ribbon, The (The arms of Canada)	B.1 - 5
Role and responsibilities of the Governor General	G.4 - 1
Introduction	G.4 - 1
The themes of the Governor General	G.4 - 2
Routhier, Sir Adople-Basile	B.2 - 6
Royal anthems	
"God Save The Queen"	B.4 - 1
Commercial use	B.4 - 2
History of "God Save The Queen"	B.4 - 1
Lyrics	B.4 - 2
Playing of "God Save The Queen" at events	B.4 - 2
Royal cypher	F.8 - 5
Royal emblems	F.8 - 1
Design of the crown	F.8 - 5
Evolution since 1189 to the Present Day	F.8 - 1
Royal cypher	F.8 - 5

Index

Royal Family F.1 to F.12
Guidance notes for meeting
The Sovereign and members of
the Royal Family F.6 - 1
Offices of the Royal households . . F.12 - 1
Prefix "Royal" F.10 - 1
Royal emblems F.8 - 1
Royal Family F.2 - 1
Royal Family, The F.4 - 1
Royal households F.11 - 1
Royal images F.7 - 1
Royal statute and titles F.3 - 1
Royal patronage F.9 - 1
Royal visits since 1952 F.5 - 6
Royal visits from 1789 to 1951 . . . F.5 - 39
Sovereigns,
since Confederation (1867) . . . F.1 - 1

Royal Family F.2 - 1
Line of succession F.2 - 6
List of members of the
Royal Family F.2 - 1
Personal information on members
of the Royal Family F.2 - 2

Royal Family, The F.4 - 1
Numbering our Sovereigns F.4 - 1
Peerages of other members of the
Royal Family F.4 - 6
The Act of Settlement F.4 - 10
The Royal Marriages Act F.4 - 11
The Royal surname F.4 - 2
The Titles and styles of members of
The Royal Family F.4 - 9
The Sovereign's official Name . . F.4 - 1
Titles and peerages of
The Prince of Wales F.4 - 5

Royal grant, The
(The arms of Canada) B.1 - 1

Royal households F.11 - 1

Royal images F.7 - 1
Commercial use F.7 - 1
Royal Arms and Insignia F.7 - 1

Royal Marriages Act, The F.4 - 11

Royal patronage F.9 - 1
Criteria F.9 - 1
List of Canadian organizations which
have receive Royal patronage . . F.9 - 2

Royal statute and titles F.3 - 1

Royal surname, The F.4 - 2

Royal Union flag, The B.6 - 1

Royal visits F.5 - 1
Coordination F.5 - 2
Execution phase F.5 - 4
Private and official visits F.5 - 5
Procedure for invitations F.5 - 1

Royal statute and titles F.3 - 1
Statute F.3 - 1
Proclamation of 1953 F.3 - 3

Royal Victorian Order E.2 - 1

S

Salary (lieutenant governors) I.6 - 1

Salute to the Governor General /
Lieutenant Governor A.11 - 5

Seating plans A.4 - 1

Shield, The (The arms of Canada) . . . B.1 - 3

Special events (how to conduct) . . . A.14 - 1

Sources for flags, banners and pins . . B.5 - 14

Sovereign's official name, The F.4 - 1

Sovereigns, since the Confederation
(1867) F.1 - 1

Styles of address A.7 - 1

Supporters, The
(The arms of Canada) B.1 - 6

Symbol of Canadian identity, A B.5 - 1

Index

T

- Table of precedence for Canada . . . A.2 - 1
- Table of precedence for Alberta . . . A.15 - 22
- Table of precedence for
British Columbia A.15 - 14
- Table of precedence for
New Brunswick A.15 - 9
- Table of precedence for
Prince Edward Island A.15 - 17
- Table of precedence for Saskatchewan A.15 - 19
- Table of precedence for the Yukon A.15 - 25
- Table of titles to be used in Canada . A.5 - 1
- Table plans A.4 - 1
- Tartans B.8 - 10
- Thanksgiving Day Remembrance Day D.7 - 1
- Confederation D.7 - 4
- Lower Canada D.7 - 2
- Province of Canada D.7 - 3
- Upper Canada D.7 - 3
- Themes of the Governor General, The G.4 - 2
- Times of arrival and departure
at receptions A.9 - 6
- Titles and peerages of
The Prince of Wales F.4 - 5
- Titles and styles of members of
the Royal Family, The F.4 - 9

U

- Use of "Canada" and derivation thereof
and Canadian symbols abroad . . . B.9 - 1
- Use of the arms, The B.1 - 8

- Victoria Day D.8 - 1
- Proclamation of 1957 D.8 - 4

W

- Weir, The Hon. Robert Stanley B.2 - 6
- Wearing of orders, decorations
and medals E.4 - 1
- Dinner jacket E.4 - 2
- Full evening dress E.4 - 1
- Lapel badges E.4 - 6
- Lounge suit E.4 - 4
- Morning dress E.4 - 3
- Overcoats E.4 - 6
- Uniforms E.4 - 5